

# SURFEX SCIENTIFIC DOCUMENTATION

P. Le Moigne

August 3, 2012

Editor : P. Le Moigne

Contributing authors :

A. Boone <sup>(1)</sup>, S. Belamari <sup>(1)</sup>, E. Brun <sup>(1)</sup>, J.-C. Calvet <sup>(1)</sup>, B. Decharme <sup>(1)</sup>,  
S. Faroux <sup>(1)</sup>, A.-L. Gibelin <sup>(1)</sup>, H. Giordani <sup>(1)</sup>, S. Lafont <sup>(1)</sup>, C. Lebeaupin <sup>(2)</sup>,  
P. Le Moigne <sup>(1)</sup>, J.-F. Mahfouf <sup>(1)</sup>, E. Martin <sup>(1)</sup>, V. Masson <sup>(1)</sup>, D. Mironov <sup>(3)</sup>,  
S. Morin <sup>(4)</sup>, J. Noilhan <sup>(1)</sup>, P. Tulet <sup>(1)</sup>, B. Van Den Hurk <sup>(5)</sup>, V. Vionnet <sup>(1)</sup>

<sup>(1)</sup> : CNRM/GAME, Météo-France/CNRS, Toulouse, France

<sup>(2)</sup> : Laboratoire de Météorologie Dynamique, Ecole Polytechnique, Palaiseau, France

<sup>(3)</sup> : German Weather Service, Offenbach am Main, Germany

<sup>(4)</sup> : CNRM/GAME, Météo-France/CNRS, Grenoble, France

<sup>(5)</sup> : KNMI, The Netherlands

*Dissemination Level* : public

---

ISSUE No	DATE	PAGES	DESCRIPTION OF CHANGE
1	11 MAY 2009	1 - 211	ORIGINAL
2	01 MARCH 2012	1 - 235	Description of Crocus, Isba-CC, Teb-Veg Bibliography references by chapter

# SURFEX

<b>I</b>	<b>SURFACE PROCESSES SCHEME</b>	<b>9</b>
<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction: a brief description of the SURFEX system</b>	<b>11</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>Water surfaces</b>	<b>15</b>
2.1	Simple parameterization . . . . .	16
2.1.1	Free water surfaces . . . . .	16
2.1.2	Sea ice . . . . .	16
2.2	Sea surface turbulent fluxes . . . . .	17
2.2.1	Bulk equations . . . . .	17
2.2.2	Louis (1979)'s parameterization . . . . .	18
2.2.3	Iterative parameterizations . . . . .	19
	The COARE parameterization . . . . .	19
	The ECUME parameterization . . . . .	22
2.3	Coupling with a 1D TKE oceanic model . . . . .	26
2.3.1	Coupling objectifs and principles . . . . .	26
2.3.2	Description of the 1D oceanic model in TKE equation . . . . .	27
	Prognostic equations for T, S, u and v . . . . .	27
	Prognostic equation for turbulent kinetic energy . . . . .	28
	Discretization . . . . .	29
2.4	Inland Water: Lake Model FLake . . . . .	31
2.4.1	Equation of State . . . . .	31
2.4.2	The Water Temperature . . . . .	34
	Parameterization of the Temperature Profile and the Heat Budget . . . . .	34
	The Mixed-Layer Depth . . . . .	35
2.4.3	The Water–Bottom Sediment Interaction . . . . .	38
2.4.4	Ice and Snow Cover . . . . .	39
2.4.5	Empirical Relations and Model Constants . . . . .	42
2.4.6	Conclusions . . . . .	45
<b>3</b>	<b>Urban and artificial areas</b>	<b>53</b>
3.1	Introduction . . . . .	53
3.2	Presentation of the Town Energy Budget scheme . . . . .	54
3.2.1	Objectives . . . . .	54
3.2.2	Town geometry description . . . . .	55
3.2.3	Temperature evolution equations . . . . .	56
3.2.4	Water reservoirs evolution . . . . .	58

3.2.5	Snow effects . . . . .	59
3.2.6	Longwave budget . . . . .	59
3.2.7	Solar radiation . . . . .	60
	Direct solar radiation . . . . .	60
	Solar radiation reflections . . . . .	61
3.2.8	Anthropogenic fluxes . . . . .	62
3.2.9	Turbulent fluxes . . . . .	62
	Treatment of the urban roughness sublayer, momentum fluxes . . . . .	62
	Considerations on the turbulent transfer of moisture . . . . .	63
	Roughness length for momentum fluxes . . . . .	63
	Heat fluxes between roofs and atmosphere . . . . .	64
	Wind inside the Canyon . . . . .	64
	Sensible and latent heat fluxes in the canyon . . . . .	65
	Canyon temperature and humidity . . . . .	66
	Averaged fluxes at town scale . . . . .	67
	Solar radiation reflections . . . . .	67
<b>4</b>	<b>Soil and vegetation</b>	<b>75</b>
4.1	ISBA surface scheme . . . . .	76
4.1.1	Force restore approach . . . . .	76
	Treatment of the soil heat content . . . . .	76
	Treatment of the soil water . . . . .	78
	Treatment of soil ice . . . . .	83
4.1.2	Diffusive approach . . . . .	85
	Governing Equations . . . . .	85
	Surface and soil heat transfer . . . . .	85
	Liquid Soil Water . . . . .	93
	Soil ice . . . . .	101
4.1.3	Treatment of the intercepted water . . . . .	104
4.1.4	Spatial variability of precipitation intensities . . . . .	105
4.1.5	Treatment of the snow . . . . .	106
	One-layer snow scheme option . . . . .	106
	Multi-layer snow scheme options . . . . .	107
	Additional features of the Crocus scheme . . . . .	110
4.1.6	The surface fluxes . . . . .	115
4.1.7	Summary of Useful Parameters . . . . .	118
4.1.8	Appendix A: Continuous formulation of the soil secondary parameters . . . . .	119
4.1.9	Appendix B: Gaussian formulation for the $C_1$ coefficient . . . . .	120
4.2	ISBA-A-gs surface scheme . . . . .	121
4.2.1	The Model . . . . .	121
	Introduction . . . . .	121
	Background information . . . . .	121
	Photosynthesis Model (no water stress) . . . . .	122
	Soil moisture stress parameterization . . . . .	125

	From leaf to canopy . . . . .	129
	Biomass evolution . . . . .	130
	Respiration . . . . .	134
	$CO_2$ fluxes . . . . .	135
4.2.2	Vegetation parameters . . . . .	135
4.2.3	Discussion . . . . .	136
	Respiration . . . . .	136
	Soil moisture stress parameterization . . . . .	137
	Temperature response of $g_m$ for $C_3$ plants . . . . .	137
	Radiative transfer within the vegetation . . . . .	137
	Representation of crops . . . . .	138
	Representation of nitrogen dilution . . . . .	139
	Annex 1: Description of the Fortran routine used to calculate the $CO_2$ flux . . . . .	139
4.3	The ISBA-CC model . . . . .	140
4.3.1	Introduction . . . . .	140
4.3.2	Allocation scheme . . . . .	141
	Evolution of the biomass compartments . . . . .	141
	Respiration . . . . .	142
	Decline term . . . . .	143
	Allocation . . . . .	143
	Mortality . . . . .	145
4.3.3	Coupling with the soil organic matter scheme . . . . .	145
	Overview . . . . .	146
	Supply of litter compartments . . . . .	147
	Decomposition of the soil organic matter . . . . .	147
	Carbon fluxes . . . . .	150
4.3.4	Description of a simulation with ISBA-CC . . . . .	152
4.3.5	Conclusion . . . . .	153
<b>5</b>	<b>Surface boundary layer scheme</b>	<b>163</b>
5.1	Introduction . . . . .	163
5.2	Theory . . . . .	165
	5.2.1 Atmospheric equations . . . . .	165
	5.2.2 Atmospheric equations modified by canopy obstacles . . . . .	166
	5.2.3 Implementation of the SBL equations into a surface scheme . . . . .	167
	5.2.4 Boundary conditions . . . . .	169
	5.2.5 Turbulence scheme . . . . .	170
5.3	conclusion . . . . .	170
5.4	<b>Appendix: Vertical and temporal discretization</b> . . . . .	<b>172</b>
	5.4.1 Vertical discretization . . . . .	172
	5.4.2 Temporal discretization . . . . .	172
	5.4.3 Implicit coupling with the atmospheric model . . . . .	172
<b>6</b>	<b>Chemistry and aerosols</b>	<b>177</b>
6.1	Dust aerosols . . . . .	177

6.1.1	Implementation in the Externalized surface . . . . .	178
6.1.2	Features of the model . . . . .	178
	Emission process . . . . .	178
	Parameterization of the friction velocity . . . . .	179
	Friction velocity threshold . . . . .	180
	Influence of soil moisture on friction velocity threshold . . . . .	180
	Aerodynamical roughness height . . . . .	181
	Surface flux . . . . .	181
	Mass flux repartition . . . . .	181
6.2	Sea Salt emission . . . . .	182
6.3	Dry deposition of gaseous species . . . . .	182
6.3.1	Resistances for dry deposition . . . . .	182
6.3.2	Dry deposition velocity formulation . . . . .	190
6.4	Dry deposition of aerosols . . . . .	191
6.5	Biogenic VOC fluxes . . . . .	192
<b>II</b>	<b>LAND COVER: ECOCLIMAP</b>	<b>197</b>
<b>7</b>	<b>Introduction</b>	<b>199</b>
<b>8</b>	<b>Ecoclimap characteristics</b>	<b>203</b>
8.1	Surface parameters definition . . . . .	203
8.2	Aggregation method . . . . .	203
8.3	Writing of parameters in a latex file . . . . .	204
<b>9</b>	<b>Ecoclimap-II realization</b>	<b>211</b>
9.1	The Ecoclimap-II map . . . . .	211
9.1.1	The initial map . . . . .	211
9.1.2	NDVI satellite data . . . . .	212
9.1.3	The automatic classification process . . . . .	213
9.1.4	To the resulting map . . . . .	214
9.1.5	Short description of covers . . . . .	215
9.2	Translation of covers in tiles and vegetation types . . . . .	216
9.3	Initialization of LAI profiles and other parameters . . . . .	217
9.3.1	Initialization of heights of trees, ground depths, irrigation and town parameters . . . . .	217
9.3.2	Initialization of LAI . . . . .	217
	LAI by cover . . . . .	217
	Disaggregation of LAI by vegtype inside covers . . . . .	218
9.4	Study of the discontinuity at the limits of the domain . . . . .	219
<b>10</b>	<b>Validation elements for Ecoclimap-II</b>	<b>221</b>
<b>11</b>	<b>Conclusion</b>	<b>223</b>

---

<b>III LAND SURFACE ANALYSIS</b>	<b>225</b>
<b>12 Extended Kalman Filter</b>	<b>227</b>
12.1 Introduction . . . . .	227
12.2 Source code - creation of the binary . . . . .	227
12.3 The EKF scheme . . . . .	228
12.4 The namelist . . . . .	229
12.5 Link with EKF equations . . . . .	230
12.6 Run script . . . . .	231
12.7 Management of dates . . . . .	232
12.8 Directory structure . . . . .	232
12.9 Matrix inversion using Cholesky decomposition . . . . .	233
12.9.1 Introduction . . . . .	236
12.9.2 Extended Kalman filter without patches . . . . .	236
12.9.3 Extended Kalman Filter with patches . . . . .	236
12.9.4 Conclusion . . . . .	237

**Part I**

**SURFACE PROCESSES SCHEME**



# Chapter 1

## Introduction: a brief description of the SURFEX system

Surface modelling in numerical weather prediction has always held an important place in the activities of the Centre National de Recherches Météorologiques (CNRM hereafter). In the late 80's, Isba (Noilhan and Planton (1989); Mahfouf and Noilhan (1996)), a soil vegetation atmosphere transfer scheme (Interaction between Soil Biosphere and Atmosphere) has been developed and it aimed to better simulate the exchanges of energy and water between the land surface and the atmosphere just above. Isba model has been designed to be simple and efficient in order to be put into operations at Météo-France. Isba scheme computes the exchanges of energy and water between the continuum soil-vegetation-snow and the atmosphere above. In its genuine version, the evapotranspiration of the vegetation is controlled by a resistance like proposed by Jarvis (1976) . A more recent version of the model named Isba-A-gs (Calvet *et al.* (1998)) accounts for a simplified photosynthesis model where the evaporation is controlled by the aperture of the stomates, the component of the leaves that regulates the balance between the transpiration and the assimilation of CO<sub>2</sub>. Nowadays, Isba land surface scheme is used in the French operational and research forecast models. Thanks to the efforts made by the research community at CNRM, French numerical weather prediction models have always been at the forefront of research in terms of surface modelling. More recently, the modelling of urban areas has began to be of great interest in the research community. In 2000, TEB (Town Energy Balance) model, specially designed to represent the exchanges between a town and the atmosphere has enabled advanced studies in this direction (Masson (2000)). The TEB model is based on the canyon concept, where a town is represented with a roof, a road and two facing walls with characteristics playing a key role in the town energy budget. More especially, the ability, of the canyon to trap a fraction of the incoming solar and infrared radiation is taken into account in the model. A special effort has been made this last years to externalize the surface scheme from the embedded surface-atmosphere Meso-NH model. The main idea was to gather all the developments and improvements made in surface schemes in order to make them available for as many people as possible. Not only physical parameterizations have been externalized, but also the preparation of specific surface parameters needed by physical schemes and the initialization of all state variables of the different models: SURFEX (stands for surface externalisée) system was born. Moreover, the surface representation has been improved and thus Surfex system has been enhanced with the specific treatment for water surfaces. Indeed, up to now, the exchanges of energy between water surfaces and the atmosphere were treated in a very simple way, while now a physically based model have been introduced to build a more complex but accurate surface model, available for all atmospheric models. There are two possibilities to compute fluxes over marine surfaces. The simplest one consists in using Charnock's approach to compute the roughness length and fluxes with a constant water surface temperature. Secondly,

a one-dimensional ocean mixing layer model has been introduced (Lebeaupin (2007)) in order to simulate more accurately the sea surface temperature (SST hereafter) and the fluxes at the sea/air interface. This model based on Gaspar (1990) , will be very helpful especially at meso-scale to better represent diurnal cycle of SST. At meso-scale, a good representation of lakes is of great interest especially for Northern countries. In order to improve the treatment of lake areas, the simple but robust Flake model (Mironov (2010)) has been implemented within Surfex system. It allows to have an evolving lake surface temperature and a good description of the energy exchanges within water.

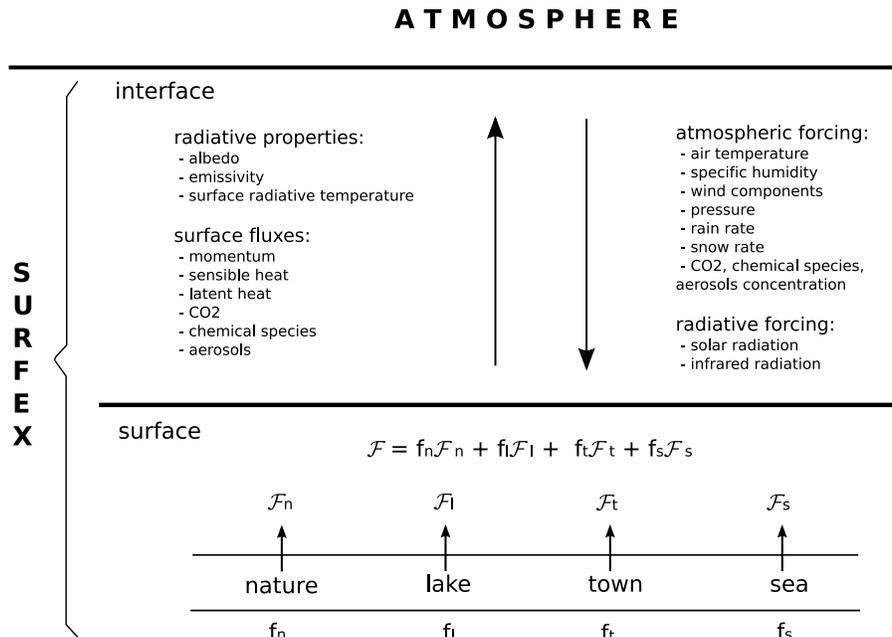


Figure 1.1: Description of the exchanges between an atmospheric model sending meteorological and radiative fields to the surface and Surfex composed of a set of physical models that compute tiled variables  $\mathcal{F}_*$  covering a fraction  $f_*$  of a unitary grid box and an interface where the averaged variables  $\mathcal{F}$  are sent back to the atmosphere

In Surfex, the exchanges between the surface and the atmosphere are realized by mean of a standardized interface (Polcher *et al.* (1998); Best *et al.* (2004)) that proposes a generalized coupling between the atmosphere and surface. During a model time step, each surface grid box receives the upper air temperature, specific humidity, horizontal wind components, pressure, total precipitation, long-wave radiation, short-wave direct and diffuse radiations and possibly concentrations of chemical species and dust. In return, Surfex computes averaged fluxes for momentum, sensible and latent heat and possibly chemical species and dust fluxes and then sends these quantities back to the atmosphere with the addition of radiative terms like surface temperature, surface direct and diffuse albedo and also surface emissivity.

All this information is then used as lower boundary conditions for the atmospheric radiation and turbulent schemes. In Surfex, each grid box is made of four adjacent surfaces: one for nature, one for urban areas, one for sea or ocean and one for lake. The coverage of each of these surfaces is known through the global ECOCLIMAP database (Masson *et al.* (2003)) , which combines land cover maps and satellite information. The Surfex fluxes are the average of the fluxes computed over nature, town, sea/ocean or lake, weighted by their respective fraction.

## Bibliography

- [1] M. J. Best, A. Beljaars, J. Polcher, and P. Viterbo. A proposed structure for coupling tiled surfaces with the planetary boundary layer. *J. Hydrometeorol.*, 5(6):1271–1278, December 2004.
- [2] J. C. Calvet, J. Noilhan, J. L. Roujean, P. Bessemoulin, M. Cabelguenne, A. Olioso, and J. P. Wigneron. An interactive vegetation svat model tested against data from six contrasting sites. *Agric. and For. Meteorol.*, 92(2):73–95, July 1998.
- [3] Philippe Gaspar, Yves Grgoris, and Jean-Michel Lefevre. A simple eddy kinetic energy model for simulations of the oceanic vertical mixing: Tests at station papa and long-term upper ocean study site. *J. Geophys. Res.*, 95(C9):16179–16193, 1990.
- [4] P. G. Jarvis. The interpretation in the variations of leaf water potential and stomatal conductance found in canopies in the field. *Philos. Trans. R. Soc. London*, B. 273:593–610, 1976.
- [5] C. Lebeau-pin. *Etude du couplage ocan-atmosphre associ aux pisodes de pluies intenses en rgon mditerranenne*. PhD thesis, University Paul Sabatier, Toulouse, France, 2007.
- [6] J. F. Mahfouf and J. Noilhan. Inclusion of gravitational drainage in a land surface scheme based on the force-restore method. *J. Appl. Meteorol.*, 35(6):987–992, June 1996.
- [7] V. Masson. A physically-based scheme for the urban energy budget in atmospheric models. *Bound.-Layer Meteorol.*, 94(3):357–397, March 2000.
- [8] Valry Masson, Jean-Louis Champeaux, Fabrice Chauvin, Christelle Meriguet, and Roselyne Lacaze. A global database of land surface parameters at 1-km resolution in meteorological and climate models. *J. Clim.*, 16(9):1261–1282, 2003.
- [9] D. Mironov, E. Heise, E. Kourzeneva, B. Ritter, N. Schneider, and A. Terzhevik. Implementation of the lake parameterisation scheme flake into the numerical weather prediction model cosmo. *Boreal Env. Res.*, 15:218–230, 2010.
- [10] J. Noilhan and S. Planton. A simple parameterization of land surface processes for meteorological models. *Mon. Weather Rev.*, 117(3):536–549, 1989.
- [11] J. Polcher, B. McAvaney, P. Viterbo, M. A. Gaertner, A. Hahmann, J. F. Mahfouf, J. Noilhan, T. Phillips, A. Pitman, C. A. Schlosser, J. P. Schulz, B. Timbal, D. Verseghy, and Y. Xue. A proposal for a general interface between land surface schemes and general circulation models. *Glob. and Planet. Change*, 19(1-4):261–276, December 1998.



# Chapter 2

## Water surfaces

### Contents

---

<b>2.1</b>	<b>Simple parameterization</b>	<b>16</b>
2.1.1	Free water surfaces	16
2.1.2	Sea ice	16
<b>2.2</b>	<b>Sea surface turbulent fluxes</b>	<b>17</b>
2.2.1	Bulk equations	17
2.2.2	Louis (1979)'s parameterization	18
2.2.3	Iterative parameterizations	19
	The COARE parameterization	19
	The ECUME parameterization	22
<b>2.3</b>	<b>Coupling with a 1D TKE oceanic model</b>	<b>26</b>
2.3.1	Coupling objectifs and principles	26
2.3.2	Description of the 1D oceanic model in TKE equation	27
	Prognostic equations for T, S, u and v	27
	Prognostic equation for turbulent kinetic energy	28
	Discretization	29
<b>2.4</b>	<b>Inland Water: Lake Model FLake</b>	<b>31</b>
2.4.1	Equation of State	31
2.4.2	The Water Temperature	34
	Parameterization of the Temperature Profile and the Heat Budget	34
	The Mixed-Layer Depth	35
2.4.3	The Water–Bottom Sediment Interaction	38
2.4.4	Ice and Snow Cover	39
2.4.5	Empirical Relations and Model Constants	42
2.4.6	Conclusions	45

---

## 2.1 Simple parameterization

### 2.1.1 Free water surfaces

For ocean surfaces and over inland waters, all the prognostic variables are kept constant.

The surface fluxes are calculated using Eqs. 4.138, 4.139, 4.141 and Eqs. 4.164, 4.165, 4.166 of Isba, taking the relative humidity of the ocean  $hu = 1$ , and  $veg = p_{sn} = 0$ . The roughness length is given by Charnock's relation:

$$z_{0sea} = 0.015 \frac{u_*^2}{g} \quad (2.1)$$

### 2.1.2 Sea ice

Sea ice is detected in the model when sea surface temperature (SST) is two degrees below 0°C (i.e. 271.15 K). In this case, in order to avoid an overestimation of the evaporation flux, the calculations are performed with the roughness length of flat snow surfaces:

$$z_{0ice} = 10^{-3} m \quad (2.2)$$

In the same manner, the sea ice albedo is set equal to the fresh snow albedo instead of the free water albedo. This leads to a much brighter surface. This has no effect on the sea ice cover (since there is no evolution of the sea surface parameters), but modifies the lower boundary shortwave flux input for the atmospheric radiative scheme.

## 2.2 Sea surface turbulent fluxes

In this section, we introduce the various sea surface fluxes parameterizations available in the SURFEX surface scheme. In addition to the direct parameterization from Louis (1979), we present two iterative parameterizations: the COARE3.0 (Fairall *et al.* (2003)) and ECUME (Belamari, 2005) parameterizations.

### 2.2.1 Bulk equations

Bulk parameterizations estimate the surface fluxes from mean meteorological gradients in the atmospheric boundary layer. This method's aim is to determine the transfer coefficients that directly link the surface flux with the meteorological gradients between the surface and a "measurement's height" (Liu *et al.* (1979)).

The surface turbulent fluxes, *i.e.* the stress or the momentum flux  $\tau_{sea}$ , the sensible heat flux  $H_{sea}$  and the latent heat flux  $LE_{sea}$  are expressed by:

$$\begin{cases} |\vec{\tau}|_{sea} = \rho_a \overline{w' u'} = -\rho_a u_*^2 \\ H_{sea} = \rho_a c_{p_a} \overline{w' \theta'} = -\rho_a c_{p_a} u_* \theta_* \\ LE_{sea} = \rho_a \mathcal{L}_v \overline{w' q'} = -\rho_a \mathcal{L}_v u_* q_* \end{cases} \quad (2.3)$$

where  $u'$ ,  $\theta'$  and  $q'$  are the vertical perturbations of wind, temperature potential and specific humidity,  $u_*$ ,  $\theta_*$  and  $q_*$  are the characteristic scale parameters from Monin-Obukhov.

Considering the bulk parameterizations using transfer coefficients:

$$\begin{cases} |\vec{\tau}|_{sea} = -\rho_a C_D U^2 \\ H_{sea} = \rho_a c_{p_a} C_H U (\theta_s - \theta_a) \\ LE_{sea} = \rho_a \mathcal{L}_v C_E U (q_s - q_a) \end{cases} \quad (2.4)$$

$s$  indicates sea surface variables whereas  $a$  indicates atmospheric variables at first level.  $U$  is the mean value of the relative wind. Here, we choose the atmospheric convention, *i. e.* fluxes are defined positive in case of energy benefit for the atmosphere.

From equations (2.3) and (2.4), we can write:

$$\begin{cases} C_D = \left(\frac{u_*}{U}\right)^2 \\ C_H = \frac{u_* \theta_*}{U(\theta_a - \theta_s)} \\ C_E = \frac{u_* q_*}{U(q_a - q_s)} \end{cases} \quad (2.5)$$

In a general way, the transfer coefficient for the  $X$  variable is:

$$C_X = \frac{\overline{w' x'}}{U \Delta X} \quad (2.6)$$

with  $X$  equal  $D$  for drag,  $H$  for heat and  $E$  for evaporation and  $\Delta X$  is the gradient of  $x$  ( $= u, \theta$  or  $q$ ) between the ocean surface and the atmospheric low level.

Each coefficient is divided in two components:

$$C_X = c_x^{\frac{1}{2}} c_d^{\frac{1}{2}} \quad (2.7)$$

that could be expressed following the Monin-Obukhov's similitude theory as a function of the first atmospheric level height  $z$ , of atmospheric stratification with a parameter  $\zeta$ , of roughness lengths ( $z_0$ ,  $z_{0_t}$  and  $z_{0_q}$ ) and of the Von Karman's constant  $\kappa$ :

$$c_x^{\frac{1}{2}}(\zeta) = C_{x10n}^{\frac{1}{2}} F_x(\zeta, \kappa, C_{x10n}^{\frac{1}{2}}) \quad (2.8)$$

$$C_{x10n}^{\frac{1}{2}} = \frac{\kappa}{\ln\left(\frac{z}{z_{0x}}\right)} \quad (2.9)$$

Roughness lengths are generally computed thanks to the Smith's (1988) relationship:

$$z_0 = \frac{\alpha u_*^2}{g} + \frac{\beta \nu}{u_*} \quad (2.10)$$

where  $\alpha$  (also called the Charnock's constant) and  $\beta$  are numerical constants and  $\nu$  is the dynamical viscosity.

Each of the following parameterizations uses its own closure hypothesis with a theoretical method or resulting from experimentation to determine the exchange coefficients from neutral transfer coefficients at 10m  $C_{D10n}$ ,  $C_{H10n}$  and  $C_{E10n}$  (*i.e.* for  $\zeta = 0$ ) and from a stability function  $F_x$  and roughness lengths (Lebeaupin 2007).

## 2.2.2 Louis (1979)'s parameterization

The closure relationship allows to determine the exchanges coefficients at the air-sea interface from the neutral transfer coefficients at 10 meters and the Louis (1979)'s functions that depend on the stability evaluates from the Richardson number  $Ri$ . According to the equation 2.8, exchanges coefficients  $C_D$  and  $C_H$  are:

$$\begin{aligned} C_D &= C_{D10n} \times \mathcal{F}_D^2(Ri, z, z_0) \\ C_H &= C_{D10n}^{\frac{1}{2}} C_{H10n}^{\frac{1}{2}} \times \mathcal{F}_D(Ri, z, z_0) \mathcal{F}_H(Ri, z_t, z_{0t}) = C_{D10n}^{\frac{1}{2}} C_{H10n}^{\frac{1}{2}} \times (\mathcal{F}'_H(Ri, z, z_t, z_0, z_{0t}))^2 \end{aligned} \quad (2.11)$$

The exchange coefficient for evaporation  $C_E$  is here equal to the heat coefficient  $C_H$ .

Louis's functions  $\mathcal{F}_D$  and  $\mathcal{F}'_H$  are:

$$\mathcal{F}_X(Ri, z, z_t, z_0, z_{0t}) = \begin{cases} \left( \mathcal{A} - \frac{b_X Ri}{1+c_X \sqrt{-Ri}} \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} & \text{for } Ri \leq 0 \\ \left( \frac{\mathcal{A}}{1+b'_X \frac{Ri}{\sqrt{1+c'_X Ri}}} \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} & \text{for } Ri > 0 \end{cases} \quad (2.12)$$

Numerical values of constants  $\mathcal{A}$ ,  $b$ ,  $b'$ ,  $c$ ,  $c'$  for  $\mathcal{F}_D$  are (Mascart *et al.* (1995); Giordani *et al.* (1996)) :

$$\begin{cases} \mathcal{A} = 1 \\ b_D = b'_D = 10 \\ c'_D = 5 \\ c_D = b_D C_{D10n} C M_* \left( \frac{z}{z_0} \right)^{PM} \\ C M_* = 6.8741 + 2.6933 \ln \left( \frac{z_0}{z_{0t}} \right) - 0.3601 \ln \left( \frac{z_0}{z_{0t}} \right)^2 + 0.0154 \ln \left( \frac{z_0}{z_{0t}} \right)^3 \\ PM = 0.5233 - 0.0815 \ln \left( \frac{z_0}{z_{0t}} \right) + 0.0135 \ln \left( \frac{z_0}{z_{0t}} \right)^2 - 0.0010 \ln \left( \frac{z_0}{z_{0t}} \right)^3 \end{cases} \quad (2.13)$$

and for  $\mathcal{F}'_H$  are:

$$\begin{cases} \mathcal{A} = \frac{\ln(z/z_0)}{\ln(z_t/z_0)} \\ b_H = b'_H = 15 \\ c'_H = 5 \\ c_H = b_H C_{D10n} C H_* \left( \frac{z_t}{z_{0t}} \right)^{PH} \\ C H_* = 3.2165 + 4.3431 \ln \left( \frac{z_{0t}}{z_0} \right) + 0.5360 \ln \left( \frac{z_{0t}}{z_0} \right)^2 - 0.0781 \ln \left( \frac{z_{0t}}{z_0} \right)^3 \\ PH = 0.5802 - 0.1571 \ln \left( \frac{z_{0t}}{z_0} \right) + 0.0327 \ln \left( \frac{z_{0t}}{z_0} \right)^2 - 0.0026 \ln \left( \frac{z_{0t}}{z_0} \right)^3 \end{cases} \quad (2.14)$$

Neutral transfer coefficients at 10m ( $C_{D_{10m}}$  and  $C_{H_{10m}}$ ) are given by Eq. 2.9, where roughness lengths  $z_0$  and  $z_{0t}$  are estimated with a distinction between the free sea water and the sea ice by a temperature criterion with a threshold at  $-2C$  (Tab. 2.1). In sea ice case, roughness length are the same than for the snow. Over free seawater, roughness lengths are reduce to the Charnock (1955)'s relationship (*i.e.*  $\alpha = 0.015$  and  $\beta = 0$  in Eq (2.10)).

	$z_0$ (m)	$z_{0t} = z_{0q}$ (m)
$T \leq -2C$	$z_{0_{seaice}} = z_{0_{snow}} = 10^{-3}$	$z_{0_{T_{seaice}}} = z_{0_{T_{snow}}} = 10^{-4}$
$T > -2C$	$0.015 \frac{u_*^2}{g}$	$0.015 \frac{u_*^2}{g}$

(2.15)

Table 2.1: Roughness lengths in Louis's parameterization.

The Richardson's number is defined for a layer  $\Delta z$  as the fraction of its potential energy and its kinetic energy:

$$Ri = \frac{g\mathcal{B}\Delta T\Delta z}{U^2} = \frac{g\mathcal{B}(T_s - T_a)z_t}{U^2} \quad (2.16)$$

where  $g$  is the gravity and  $\mathcal{B} = -\frac{1}{\rho_a} \frac{\partial \rho_a}{\partial T}$  is the thermal expansion coefficient.

### 2.2.3 Iterative parameterizations

Bulk equations could be resolve with iterative methods on the stability parameter and the characteristic scale parameters from Monin-Obukhov. Convergence criteria vary according to the parameterizations. They also differ in the representation of various processes as waves effects, sea spray, seawater salinity effect on evaporation, wind gusts and especially in the calculation of the roughness lengths or of the transfer coefficients (Brunke *et al.* (2003)).

The Liu *et al.* (1979)'s algorithm is the most used iterative algorithm for the turbulent air-sea fluxes computation and was also a base for new parameterizations developments [for example, COARE (Fairall *et al.* (1996b); Mondon and Redelsperger (1998)) or the ECUME parameterization (Belamari 2005).

#### The COARE parameterization

The COARE (Coupled Ocean-Atmosphere Response Experiment) algorithm development was developed during the TOGA (Tropical Ocean and Global Atmosphere) experiment and several versions were produced since then. The 2.5b version (Fairall *et al.* (1996b)) in particular was successfully used during several measurement campaigns in several location overall the globe.

The COARE parameterization is based on the LKB model. The details of equations could be found in Fairall *et al.* (1996b,a) and Gosnell *et al.* (1995) for the 2.5b version. The Mondon and Redelsperger (1998)'s parameterization available in SURFEX sea scheme is a declination of this COARE algorithm version with different numerical values for the Businger's functions and in the gustiness correction computation.

Taking into account air-sea interaction data from the NOAA/ETL dataset and the HEXMAX data reanalysis, the algorithm validation had been extended leading to the last version 3.0 of the COARE algorithm (Fairall *et al.* (2003)) that is available in the SURFEX sea surface scheme (Lebeaupin Brossier *et al.* (2009)).

The COARE 3.0 parameterization main characteristic are:

1. Functions  $F_X$  in Eq. 2.8 are defined by:

$$F_X(\zeta) = \frac{1}{\left(1 - \frac{c_x^{\frac{1}{2}} c_d^{\frac{1}{2}} \psi_x(\zeta)}{\kappa}\right)} \quad (2.17)$$

$$\zeta = z/L$$

with similitude functions from Monin-Obukhov:

$$C_X = \frac{u_* X_*}{U \Delta X}$$

$$C_X = c_x^{\frac{1}{2}} c_d^{\frac{1}{2}} = C_{x10n}^{\frac{1}{2}} F_x C_{D10n}^{\frac{1}{2}} F_d$$

so

$$\frac{u_* X_*}{U \Delta X} = \frac{\kappa^2}{\ln\left(\frac{z}{z_{0x}}\right) \ln\left(\frac{z}{z_0}\right)} F_x F_d$$

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \frac{u_*}{U} = \frac{\kappa}{\ln\left(\frac{z}{z_0}\right) - \psi_m(z/L)} \\ \frac{\theta_*}{\theta_s - \theta_a} = \frac{\kappa}{\ln\left(\frac{z}{z_{0t}}\right) - \psi_h(z/L)} \\ \frac{q_*}{q_s - q_a} = \frac{\kappa}{\ln\left(\frac{z}{z_{0q}}\right) - \psi_q(z/L)} \end{array} \right. \quad (2.18)$$

where  $\psi_m$ ,  $\psi_h$  and  $\psi_q = \psi_h$  are modified Businger's stability functions that depend on Monin-Obukhov parameter  $\zeta = \frac{z}{L}$  and that correct the logarithmic wind, temperature and humidity profiles in the atmospheric boundary layer according to its stability.

$\zeta = \frac{z}{L}$	$\psi_m(\zeta) =$	$\psi_h(\zeta) =$
stable ( $\zeta \geq 0$ )	$-(1 + \zeta) - \frac{2}{3} \frac{(\zeta - 14.28)}{\exp(\Gamma)} - 8.525$	$-(1 + \frac{2}{3}\zeta)^{1.5} - \frac{2}{3} \frac{(\zeta - 14.28)}{\exp(\Gamma)} - 8.525$
	$\Gamma = \min(50, 0.35\zeta)$	
unstable: ( $\zeta < 0$ ) Kansas	$(1 - f)\psi_{mK} + f\psi_{mC}$ $\psi_{mK} = 2\ln\left(\frac{1+x}{2}\right) + \ln\left(\frac{1+x^2}{2}\right) - 2\arctan(x) + \frac{\pi}{2}$ with $x = (1 - 15\zeta)^{\frac{1}{4}}$	$(1 - f)\psi_{hK} + f\psi_{hC}$ $\psi_{hK} = 2\ln\left(\frac{1+x}{2}\right)$ with $x = (1 - 15\zeta)^{\frac{1}{2}}$
Convective	$\psi_{mC} = \frac{3}{2}\ln\left(\frac{y^2+y+1}{3}\right) - \sqrt{3}\arctan\left(\frac{2y+1}{\sqrt{3}}\right) + \frac{\pi}{\sqrt{3}}$ with $y = (1 - 10.15\zeta)^{\frac{1}{3}}$	$\psi_{hC} = \frac{3}{2}\ln\left(\frac{y^2+y+1}{3}\right) - \sqrt{3}\arctan\left(\frac{2y+1}{\sqrt{3}}\right) + \frac{\pi}{\sqrt{3}}$ with $y = (1 - 34.15\zeta)^{\frac{1}{3}}$

and

$$L^{n+1} = \frac{T}{\kappa g} \frac{u_*^{n2}}{\theta_*^n + 0.61Tq_*^n}$$

2. Transfer coefficients are estimated from characteristic scale parameters of Monin-Obukhov ( $u_*$ ,  $\theta_*$  and  $q_*$ ) and from atmospheric gradients according to Eq. 2.5. Scale parameters and roughness lengths are computed by iterations.

$$u_*^{n+1} = \frac{\kappa S}{\ln\left(\frac{z}{z_0}\right) - \psi_m(\zeta^{n+1})} \quad (2.19)$$

$$\theta_*^{n+1} = \frac{\kappa(\theta_a - \theta_s)}{\ln\left(\frac{z}{z_0}\right) - \psi_h(\zeta^{n+1})} \quad (2.20)$$

$$q_*^{n+1} = \frac{\kappa(q_a - q_s)}{\ln\left(\frac{z}{z_0}\right) - \psi_h(\zeta^{n+1})} \quad (2.21)$$

The iterations number is reduced to three due to a better background of the stability parameter with a bulk Richardson's number  $Ri_b$  (Grachev and Fairall, 1997) (Eq. 2.16).

3. In  $z_0$  expression (Eq.2.10),  $\beta$  is 0.11 and the Charnock's parameter is a wind dependent parameter (Hare *et al.* (1999)) :

$$\begin{aligned} \alpha &= 0.011 && \text{if } U \leq 10 \text{ m.s}^{-1} \\ \alpha &= 0.011 + (0.018 - 0.011)(U - 10) && \text{if } U \leq 18 \text{ m.s}^{-1} \\ \alpha &= 0.018 && \text{if } U > 18 \text{ m.s}^{-1} \end{aligned} \quad (2.22)$$

Then,  $z_{0_q}$  and  $z_{0_t}$  are directly obtained by the formulae:

$$z_{0_q} = z_{0_t} = \text{MIN} \left( 1.15 \cdot 10^{-4}, 5.5 \cdot 10^{-5} \left( \frac{\nu}{z_0 u_*} \right)^{0.6} \right)$$

4. A reduction of 2% of the specific humidity at saturation is applied due to a reduction of saturated vapor pressure linked to the seawater salinity [i. e. 34 ppt Kraus (1972)]:

$$q_s = 0.98 \times q_{sat}(\theta_s) \quad (2.23)$$

where  $q_{sat}$  is the specific humidity at saturation.

5. The relative wind could be increased by a correction due to gustiness  $w_g$ :

$$U = \sqrt{|\vec{v}|^2 + w_g^2} \quad (2.24)$$

where

$$w_g = \beta_{gust} (bf \cdot z_{bl})^{\frac{1}{3}} \quad (2.25)$$

$$bf = \text{MAX} \left( 0, \frac{g u_* T_{v*}}{T} \right)$$

$$T_{v*} = T_* \left\{ 1 + q \left( \frac{R_v}{R_a} - 1 \right) \right\} + \left( \frac{R_v}{R_a} - 1 \right) T q_*$$

$z_{bl}$  is the atmospheric boundary layer height (fixed to 600 meters).  $\beta_{gust}$  is a constant equal to 1.2.  $R_v$  and  $R_a$  are ideal gas constants for the water vapor and air, respectively.

6. As rainfall contribute to cool the ocean and add a supplementary drag in surface, two corrections  $\tau_p$  (Fairall *et al.* (1996b)) and  $H_p$  (Gosnell *et al.* (1995)) could be added to turbulent fluxes:

$$\tau_p = \frac{\mathcal{R}U}{3600} \quad (2.26)$$

$$H_p = \tilde{\mathcal{R}} c_{pr} \epsilon (T_s - T_a) \left( 1 + \frac{1}{B} \right) \quad (2.27)$$

$\mathcal{R}$  the precipitation rate in mm h<sup>-1</sup>, and  $\tilde{\mathcal{R}}$  in kg s<sup>-1</sup>;  $c_{pr}$  is the water specific heat (4186 J kg<sup>-1</sup>K<sup>-1</sup>);  $B = \frac{c_p \Delta T}{\mathcal{L} \Delta q}$  is the Bowen's fraction and  $\epsilon$  is the dew point factor:

$$\epsilon = 1 / \left( 1 + \frac{R_a \mathcal{L} d_v}{R_v d_h c_p} \frac{dq_s}{dT} \right)$$

with  $\mathcal{L}$  the water latent heat of vaporization,  $c_p$  the air specific heat,  $d_v$  and  $d_h$  are vapor and heat diffusivities.

7. Roughness length  $z_0$  could also be calculated with schemes that take waves effects on roughness into account :

$$Oost \text{ et al.}, 2002 : \begin{cases} z_0 = \frac{50}{2\pi} L_{wv} \left( \frac{u_*}{C_{wv}} \right)^{4.5} + 0.11 \frac{\nu}{u_*} \\ L_{wv} = \frac{g}{2\pi} (0.729U)^2 \\ C_{wv} = \frac{g}{2\pi} (0.729U) \end{cases} \quad (2.28)$$

$$Taylor \text{ and Yelland}, 2001 : \begin{cases} z_0 = 1200 H_{wv} \left( \frac{H_{wv}}{L_{wv}} \right)^{4.5} + 0.11 \frac{\nu}{u_*} \\ L_{wv} = \frac{g}{2\pi} (0.729U)^2 \\ H_{wv} = 0.018U^2 \times (1 + 0.015U) \end{cases} \quad (2.29)$$

### The ECUME parameterization

The unified parameterization or ECUME (Exchange Coefficients from Unified Multi-campaigns Estimates) is a bulk iterative parameterization developed in order to obtain an optimized parameterization covering a wide range of atmospheric and oceanic conditions (Weill *et al.* (2003)) .

Based on the LKB algorithm, ECUME includes an estimation of neutral transfer coefficients at 10m from a multi-campaign calibration derived from the ALBATROS database that collects data from five flux measurement campaigns:

- POMME “Programme Océanique Multidisciplinaire à Moyenne Echelle”,
- FETCH “Flux, Etat de la mer et Télédetection en Condition de Fetch”,
- SEMAPHORE “Structure des Echanges Mer-Atmosphère, Propriétés des Hétérogénéités Océaniques : Recherche Expérimentale”,
- CATCH “Couplage avec l’ATmosphère en Conditions Hivernales”,
- EQUALANT99.

A more detailed description of each campaign could be found in Weill *et al.* (2003) and Belamari (2005) .

A similar post-treatment was applied to the five campaigns data to derive the drag coefficient  $C_{D_{10m}}$ , the heat coefficient  $C_{H_{10m}}$  and the evaporation coefficient  $C_{E_{10m}}$  as neutral 10m-wind functions (Figures 2.1, 2.2 and 2.3).

The ECUME parameterization main characteristic are:

1. An important effort was done on the ECUME algorithm in order to assure the convergence in maximum 20 iterations for every kind of conditions (Belamari (2005)) . The iterative sequence is stopped when the difference between the scale parameters between two iterations is inferior to prescribed threshold that are  $2.10^{-4}$  m s<sup>-1</sup> for  $u_*$ ,  $2.10^{-4}$  K for  $\theta_*$  and  $2.10^{-7}$  kg/kg for  $q_*$ .

The closure relationship is the multi-campaign calibration of the neutral transfer coefficients at 10 meters.

2. The stability functions are Businger ’s functions with different coefficients than COARE3.0:  $\psi_m$  and  $\psi_h$  depend on the Monin-Obukhov’s length  $\zeta = \frac{z}{L}$  which is computed as described in the following equations:

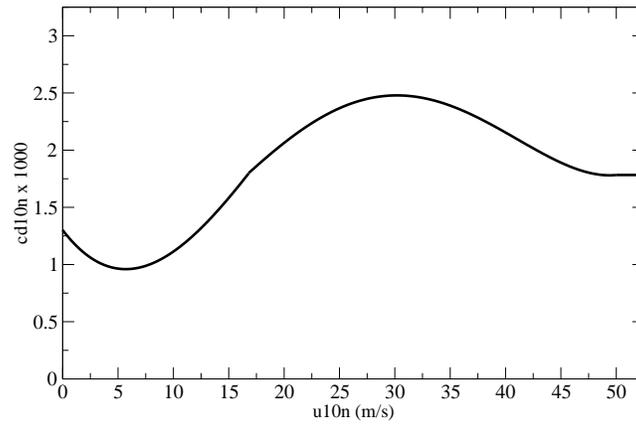


Figure 2.1: Multi-campaign calibration of the neutral drag coefficient at 10 meters  $C_{D_{10n}}$ .

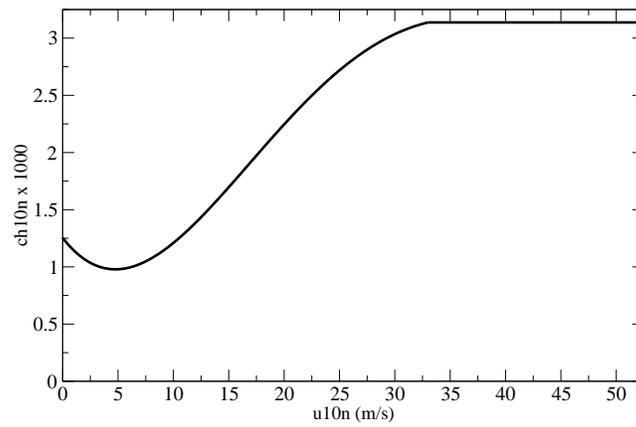


Figure 2.2: Multi-campaign calibration of the neutral heat coefficient at 10 meters  $C_{H_{10n}}$ .

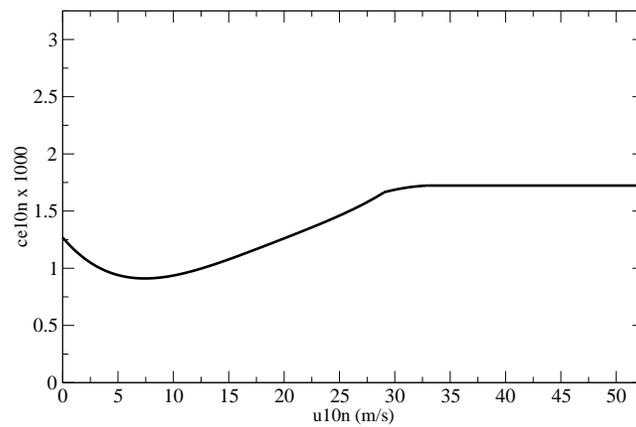


Figure 2.3: Multi-campaign calibration of the neutral evaporation coefficient at 10 meters  $C_{E_{10n}}$ .

- For wind:

$$ZL = \frac{g\kappa z(T_*(1+r_0q) + r_0Tq_*)}{T(1+r_0q) \times [MAX(u_*, 1.10^{-9})]^2}$$

with  $r_0 = R_v/R_a - 1$ .

$$si \ ZL \geq 0 \quad z/L = MIN(ZL, 0.25) \quad (2.30)$$

$$si \ ZL < 0 \quad z/L = MAX(ZL, -200) \quad (2.31)$$

- For temperature and humidity:

$$(z/L)_t = z/L \times \frac{z_t}{z}; \quad (z/L)_q = z/L \times \frac{z_q}{z}$$

Finally:

$\zeta = \frac{z}{L}$	$\psi_m(\zeta) =$	$\psi_h(\zeta) =$
stable	$-\Gamma\zeta$	$-\Gamma\zeta$
$(\zeta \geq 0)$	$\Gamma = 7$	
unstable: $(\zeta < 0)$	$(1-f)\psi_{mK} + f\psi_{mC}$	$(1-f)\psi_{hK} + f\psi_{hC}$
Kansas	$\psi_{mK} = 2\ln\left(\frac{1+x}{2}\right) + \ln\left(\frac{1+x^2}{2}\right) - 2\arctan(x) + \frac{\pi}{2}$ with $x = (1 - 16\zeta)^{\frac{1}{4}}$	$\psi_{hK} = 2\ln\left(\frac{1+x}{2}\right)$ with $x = (1 - 16\zeta)^{\frac{1}{2}}$
Convective	$\psi_{mC} = \frac{3}{2}\ln\left(\frac{y^2+y+1}{3}\right) - \sqrt{3}\arctan\left(\frac{2y+1}{\sqrt{3}}\right) + \frac{\pi}{\sqrt{3}}$ with $y = (1 - 12.87\zeta)^{\frac{1}{3}}$	$\psi_{hC} = \frac{3}{2}\ln\left(\frac{y^2+y+1}{3}\right) - \sqrt{3}\arctan\left(\frac{2y+1}{\sqrt{3}}\right) + \frac{\pi}{\sqrt{3}}$ with $y = (1 - 12.87\zeta)^{\frac{1}{3}}$

3. The roughness length is given by the Smith 's relationship (Eq. 2.10) with  $\alpha = 0.011$  and  $\beta = 0.11$ .
4. The reduction of 2% of the specific humidity at saturation due to seawater salinity is applied (eq. 2.23, Kraus (1972) ).
5. The gustiness correction could be applied (Eq. 2.25).
6. The corrections due to precipitation  $\tau_p$  and  $H_p$  according to Fairall *et al.* (1996b) and Gosnell *et al.* (1995) could also be computed in the ECUME parameterization ( Eq. 2.26 and 2.27).
7. The Webb 's correction ( $LE_{webb}$ ) is a correction applied to the latent heat flux. It is due to air density variations when the humidity vary under the evaporation action. If  $\bar{w}$  is the mean value of the vertical perturbations,

$$\bar{w} = 1.61\overline{w'q'} + (1 + 1.61q)\frac{\overline{w'T'}}{T} \quad (2.32)$$

the Webb 's correction expression is:

$$LE_{Webb} = \rho_a \mathcal{L} \bar{w} q \quad (2.33)$$

where  $\mathcal{L}$  is the latent heat of vaporization for water.

8. No waves effects are taking into account in the ECUME parameterization.

## Short summary

LOUIS	
$z_0$	$z_0 = \frac{\alpha u_*^2}{g}$ (Charnock (1955)) if $T > -2C$ or $z_0 = z_{0_{snow}}$ if $T < -2C$
$U$	$U =  \vec{v} $
stability functions	Numerical Louis (1979)'s functions
$\tau_{sea}$	$= -\rho_a C_D U^2$
$H_{sea}$	$= \rho_a c_{p_a} C_H U (\theta_s - \theta_a)$
$LE_{sea}$	$= \rho_a \mathcal{L}_v C_E U (q_s - q_a)$
COARE3.0	
$z_0$	$z_0 = \alpha(u) \frac{u_*^2}{g} + \frac{\beta \nu}{u_*}$ Smith (1988) or Oost et al. (2002) or Taylor <i>et al.</i> (2001)
$U$	$U =  \vec{v} $ or $U = \sqrt{ \vec{v} ^2 + w_g^2}$ (gustiness)
stability functions	Modified Businger's functions
$\tau_{sea}$	$= -\rho_a C_D U^2$ + $\tau_p$ (Fairall <i>et al.</i> (1996b))
$H_{sea}$	$= \rho_a c_{p_a} C_H U (\theta_s - \theta_a)$ + $H_p$ (Gosnell <i>et al.</i> (1995))
$LE_{sea}$	$= \rho_a \mathcal{L}_v C_E U (q_s - q_a)$
ECUME	
$z_0$	$z_0 = \frac{\alpha u_*^2}{g} + \frac{\beta \nu}{u_*}$ (Smith (1988))
$U$	$U =  \vec{v} $ or $U = \sqrt{ \vec{v} ^2 + w_g^2}$ (gustiness)
stability functions	Modified Businger's functions
$\tau_{sea}$	$= -\rho_a C_D U^2$ + $\tau_p$ (Fairall <i>et al.</i> (1996b))
$H_{sea}$	$= \rho_a c_{p_a} C_H U (\theta_s - \theta_a)$ + $H_p$ (Gosnell <i>et al.</i> (1995))
$LE_{sea}$	$= \rho_a \mathcal{L}_v C_E U (q_s - q_a)$ + $LE_{W_{ebb}}$ (Webb <i>et al.</i> (1980))
$C_{D10n}, C_{H10n}$	neutral coefficients calibrated at 10m

## 2.3 Coupling with a 1D TKE oceanic model

### 2.3.1 Coupling objectives and principles

The main objective of the coupling is to improve the fine scale air-sea exchanges modelling in the SURFEX surface scheme. To better represent the fine scale air-sea interactions, it is necessary to take into account the oceanic dynamics and the thermal content evolution (Lebeaupin *et al.* (2007, 2009)).

The coupled system's principle consists in modelling a seawater column under each grid point containing a fraction of sea and limited by the bottom (Figure 2.4). The ocean model used is the uni-dimensional model described by Gaspar *et al.* (1990) [see section 2.3.2] which allows to represent the oceanic vertical mixing according to a parameterization of turbulence from Bougeault and Lacarrère (1989) adapted to ocean. By the turbulent vertical mixing modelling, the 1D ocean model allows to represent the heat, water and momentum exchanges from the superficial oceanic layers in direct interaction with the atmosphere and subjected to radiative effects, to the deepest layers. The turbulent vertical mixing is based on a parameterization of the second-order turbulent moments expressed as a function of the turbulent kinetic energy (Gaspar *et al.*, 1990). In this formulation, the vertical mixing coefficients are based on the calculation of two turbulent length scales representing upward and downward conversions of turbulent kinetic energy (TKE) into potential energy (Gaspar *et al.*, 1990). By allowing a response to high frequencies in the surface forcing, the scheme improved the representation of the vertical mixed layer structure, sea surface temperature and upper-layer current (Blanke and Delecluse, 1993). However, this parameterization fails to properly simu-

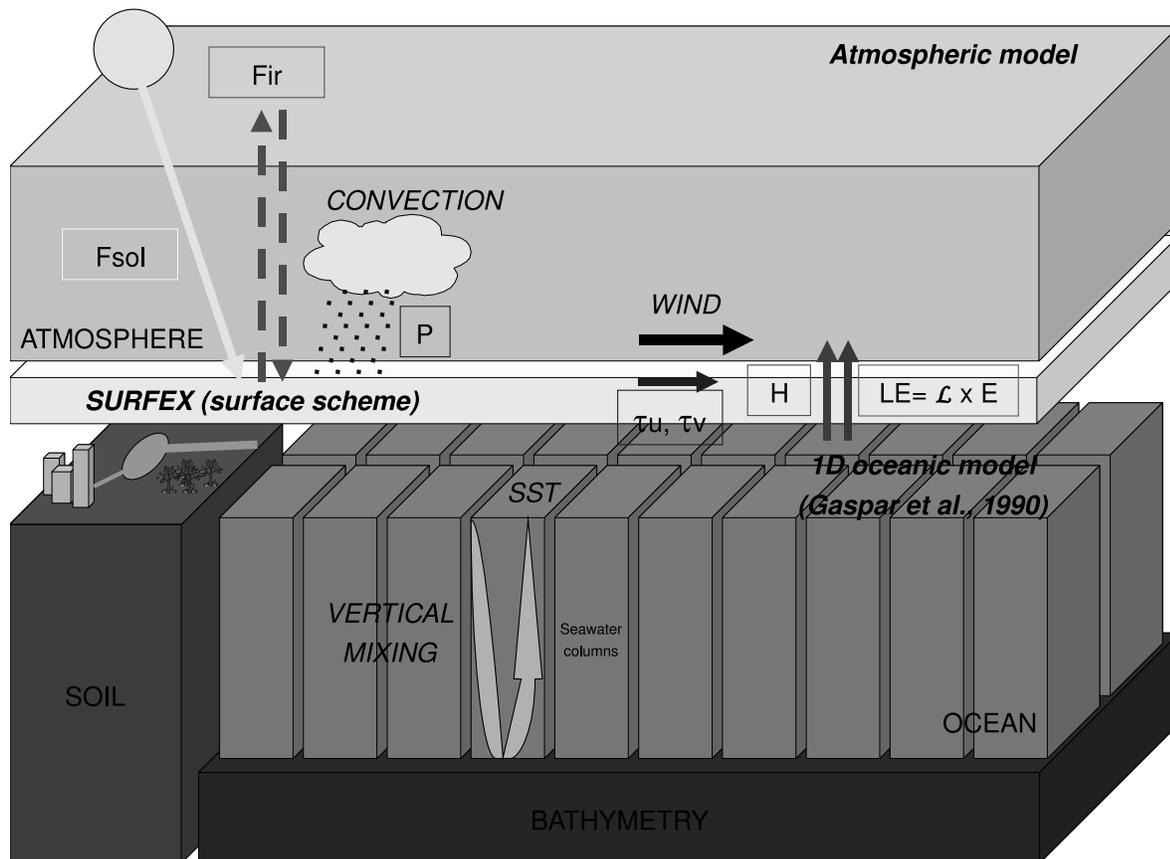


Figure 2.4: The high-resolution ocean-atmosphere coupled system between (MESO-NH) SURFEX and the 1D oceanic model.

late the mixing in strongly stable layers in the upper thermocline (Large *et al.*, 1994 ; Kantha and Clayson, 1994 ). Consequently, a parameterization of the diapycnal mixing (Large *et al.*, 1994) was introduced into Gaspar's turbulence parameterization model in order to take into account the effects of the vertical mixing occurring in the thermocline (Josse, 1999 ). This non local source of mixing, mainly due to internal wave breaking and current shear between the mixed layer and upper thermocline, impacts the temperature, salinity, momentum and turbulent kinetic energy inside the mixed layer particularly during restratification periods. This parameterization was widely used, for instance to study successfully the diurnal cycle in the Equatorial Atlantic (Wade *et al.*, 2011 ), the Equatorial Atlantic cold tongue (Giordani *et al.*, 2011 ), the production of modal waters in the North-East Atlantic (Giordani *et al.*, 2005b ) or to derive surface heat flux corrections (Caniaux *et al.*, 2005b ). Note that horizontal and vertical advectons can be easily prescribed in the 1D-mixing model to perform realistic simulations in heterogeneous situations.

### 2.3.2 Description of the 1D oceanic model in TKE equation

The 1D model includes a prognostic equation for the turbulent kinetic energy ( $e$ ) with a 1.5 order closure. The other prognostic variables are the temperature (T), the salinity (S), and the current [ $\vec{u} = (u, v)$ ].

#### Prognostic equations for T, S, u and v

Each of the prognostic variables ( $\alpha$ ) is decomposed in a mean value ( $\bar{\alpha}$ ) and a perturbation around this mean value ( $\alpha'$ ), so  $\alpha = \bar{\alpha} + \alpha'$ . For each seawater column, T, S, u and v evolve under the turbulent vertical mixing effect. This mixing depends of air-sea interface fluxes.

The conservative equations are:

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \frac{\partial T}{\partial t} = \frac{F_{sol}}{\rho_0 c_p} \frac{\partial I(z)}{\partial z} - \frac{\partial \overline{T'w'}}{\partial z} \\ \frac{\partial S}{\partial t} = - \frac{\partial \overline{S'w'}}{\partial z} \\ \frac{\partial \vec{u}}{\partial t} = -f \vec{k} \times \vec{u} - \frac{\partial \overline{\vec{u}'w'}}{\partial z} \end{array} \right. \quad (2.34)$$

where  $w$  is the vertical velocity,  $\rho_0$  is a reference density,  $c_p$  is the specific heat,  $f$  is the Coriolis parameter.  $\vec{k}$  is the unit vertical along the vertical,  $F_{sol}$  is the solar radiation received by the surface, and  $I(z)$  is the solar radiation fraction reaching the depth  $z$  ( $I(z)$  function decreases exponentially with depth).

The conditions at the top of the model ( $z=0$ ) are:

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} -\overline{T'w'}(0) = \frac{F_{nsol}}{\rho_0 c_p} = \frac{H+LE+F_{ir}}{\rho_0 c_p} \\ -\overline{S'w'}(0) = \frac{E-P}{\rho_0 c_p} \\ -\overline{\vec{u}'w'}(0) = \frac{\vec{\tau}}{\rho_0 c_p} \end{array} \right. \quad (2.35)$$

**Fluxes are positive here downwards.**

Finally, the forcing variables to give to the oceanic model are:

- the solar radiation  $F_{sol}$
- the infra-red radiation  $F_{ir}$
- the evaporation rate  $E$  proportional to the latent heat flux  $E = \frac{LE}{\mathcal{L}}$

- the sensible heat flux  $H$
- the zonal and meridional stress components  $\vec{\tau} = (\tau_u, \tau_v)$
- the precipitation rate  $P$

$F_{nsol}$  is defined as the sum of the sensible H, the latent heat flux LE and the infra-red radiation  $F_{ir}$  and is named non-solar flux.

The closure relationships are given by:

$$\begin{cases} -\overline{T'w'} = K_h \frac{\partial \overline{T}}{\partial z} \\ -\overline{S'w'} = K_s \frac{\partial \overline{S}}{\partial z} \\ -\overline{u'w'} = K_m \frac{\partial \overline{u}}{\partial z} \end{cases} \quad (2.36)$$

The  $K_*$  are diffusivity coefficients linked to the turbulent kinetic energy by:

$$K = c_k l_k \overline{e}^{\frac{1}{2}} = K_h = K_s = \frac{K_m}{Pr_t} \simeq K_m \quad (2.37)$$

where  $c_k$  is a constant to determine;  $l_k$  is a mixing length and  $Pr_t$  is the Prandtl's number.

### Prognostic equation for turbulent kinetic energy

The equation for TKE  $e = \frac{1}{2}(u'^2 + v'^2 + w'^2)$  is given by:

$$\frac{\partial \overline{e}}{\partial t} = -\frac{\partial}{\partial z} \left( \overline{e'w'} + \frac{\overline{p'w'}}{\rho_0} \right) - \overline{u'w'} \times \frac{\partial \overline{u}}{\partial z} + \overline{b'w'} - \epsilon \quad (2.38)$$

where  $p$  is pressure;  $\epsilon = c_\epsilon l_\epsilon \overline{e}^{\frac{3}{2}}$  is dissipation;  $b = g \frac{\rho - \rho_0}{\rho_0}$  is the buoyancy. The seawater density is diagnosed from temperature and salinity:

$$\rho = \rho_0 + (T - T_{ref}) \times [-0.19494 - 0.49038(T - T_{ref})] + 0.77475(S - S_{ref})$$

where  $T_{ref} = 13.5$  C,  $S_{ref} = 32.6$  psu and  $\rho_0 = 1024.458$  kg/m<sup>3</sup>.

The vertical TKE flux is parameterized:

$$-\left( \overline{e'w'} + \frac{\overline{p'w'}}{\rho_0} \right) = K_e \frac{\partial \overline{e}}{\partial z} \quad (2.39)$$

with

$$K_e = c_\epsilon l_\epsilon \overline{e}^{\frac{1}{2}} \quad (2.40)$$

The Bougeault and Lacarrère mixing length are:

$$l_\epsilon = (l_u l_d)^{\frac{1}{2}} \quad (2.41)$$

$$l_k = \min(l_u, l_d) \text{ pour } k = h, s \text{ and } m \quad (2.42)$$

$l_u$  and  $l_d$  (for ‘‘up’’ and ‘‘down’’) are estimated as the upwards and downwards distances for which the kinetic energy is transformed in potential energy:

$$\overline{e}(z) = \frac{g}{\rho_0} \int_z^{z+l_u} [\overline{p}(z) - \rho(z')] dz' \quad (2.43)$$

$$\overline{e}(z) = \frac{g}{\rho_0} \int_z^{z-l_d} [\overline{p}(z) - \rho(z')] dz' \quad (2.44)$$



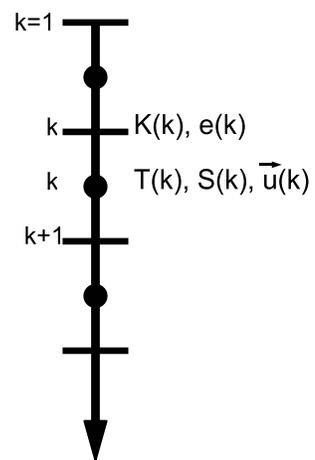


Figure 2.5: Vertical grid description of the 1D oceanic model from Gaspar et al. (1990) .

## 2.4 Inland Water: Lake Model FLake

In this section, a lake model (parameterisation scheme) capable of predicting the temperature structure of lakes of various depth on time scales from a few hours to many years is presented. A detailed description of the model, termed FLake, is given in Mironov (2010). FLake is an integral (bulk) model. It is based on a two-layer parametric representation of the evolving temperature profile within the water column and on the integral energy budget for these layers. The structure of the stratified layer between the upper mixed layer and the basin bottom, the lake thermocline, is described using the concept of self-similarity (assumed shape) of the temperature-depth curve. The same concept is used to describe the temperature structure of the thermally-active upper layer of bottom sediments and of the ice and snow cover. An entrainment equation for the depth of a convectively-mixed layer and a relaxation-type equation for the depth of a wind-mixed layer in stable and neutral stratification are developed on the basis of the turbulence kinetic energy (TKE) equation integrated over the mixed layer. Both mixing regimes are treated with due regard for the volumetric character of solar radiation heating. Simple thermodynamic arguments are invoked to develop the evolution equations for the ice and snow depths. The system of ordinary differential equations for the time-dependent prognostic quantities that characterise the evolving temperature profile, see Figs. 2.6 and 2.7, is closed with algebraic (or transcendental) equations for diagnostic quantities, such as the heat flux through the lake bottom and the equilibrium mixed-layer depth in stable or neutral stratification.

The resulting lake model is computationally very efficient but still incorporates much of the essential physics.

Within FLake, the lake water is treated as a Boussinesq fluid, i.e. the water density is taken to be constant equal to the reference density except when it enters the buoyancy term in the TKE equation and the expression for the buoyancy frequency.

The other thermodynamic parameters are considered constant except for the snow density and the snow heat conductivity.

### 2.4.1 Equation of State

We utilise the quadratic equation of state of the fresh water,

$$\rho_w = \rho_r \left[ 1 - \frac{1}{2} a_T (\theta - \theta_r)^2 \right], \quad (2.48)$$

where  $\rho_w$  is the water density,  $\rho_r = 999.98 \approx 1.0 \cdot 10^3 \text{ kg}\cdot\text{m}^{-3}$  is the maximum density of the fresh water at the temperature  $\theta_r = 277.13 \text{ K}$ , and  $a_T = 1.6509 \cdot 10^{-5} \text{ K}^{-2}$  is an empirical coefficient (Farmer and Carmack (1981)). Equation (2.48) is the simplest equation of state that accounts for the fact that the temperature of maximum density of the fresh water exceeds its freezing point  $\theta_f = 273.15 \text{ K}$ . According to Eq. (2.48), the thermal expansion coefficient  $\alpha_T$  and the buoyancy parameter  $\beta$  depend on the water temperature,

$$\beta(\theta) = g\alpha_T(\theta) = ga_T(\theta - \theta_r), \quad (2.49)$$

where  $g = 9.81 \text{ m}\cdot\text{s}^{-2}$  is the acceleration due to gravity.

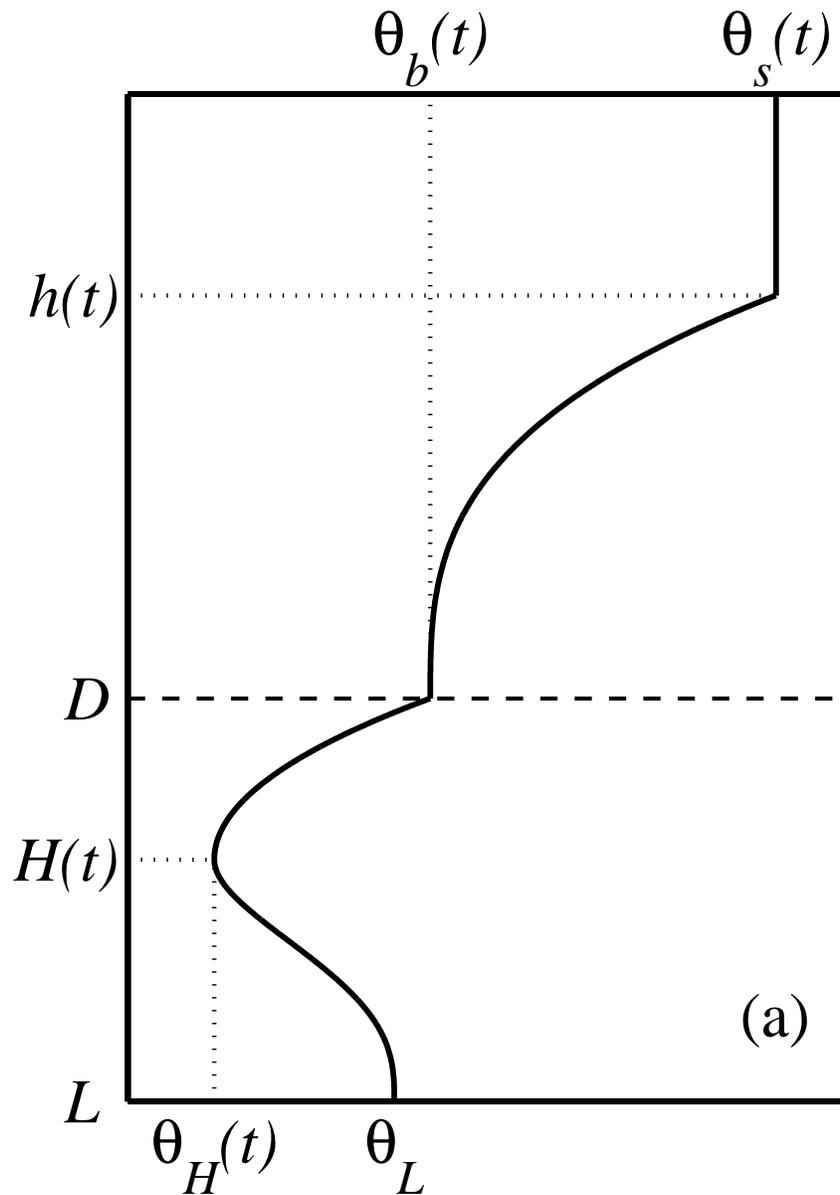


Figure 2.6: Schematic representation of the temperature profile in the mixed layer, in the thermocline, and in the thermally active layer of bottom sediments. The evolving temperature profile is specified by several time-dependent quantities. These are the mixed-layer temperature  $\theta_s(t)$  and its depth  $h(t)$ , the temperature  $\theta_b(t)$  at the water-bottom sediment interface, the shape factor  $C_\theta(t)$  with respect to the temperature profile in the thermocline, the temperature  $\theta_H(t)$  at the lower boundary of the upper layer of bottom sediments penetrated by the thermal wave, and the depth  $H(t)$  of that layer. The temperature  $\theta_L$  at the outer edge  $z = L$  of the thermally active layer of bottom sediments is constant.

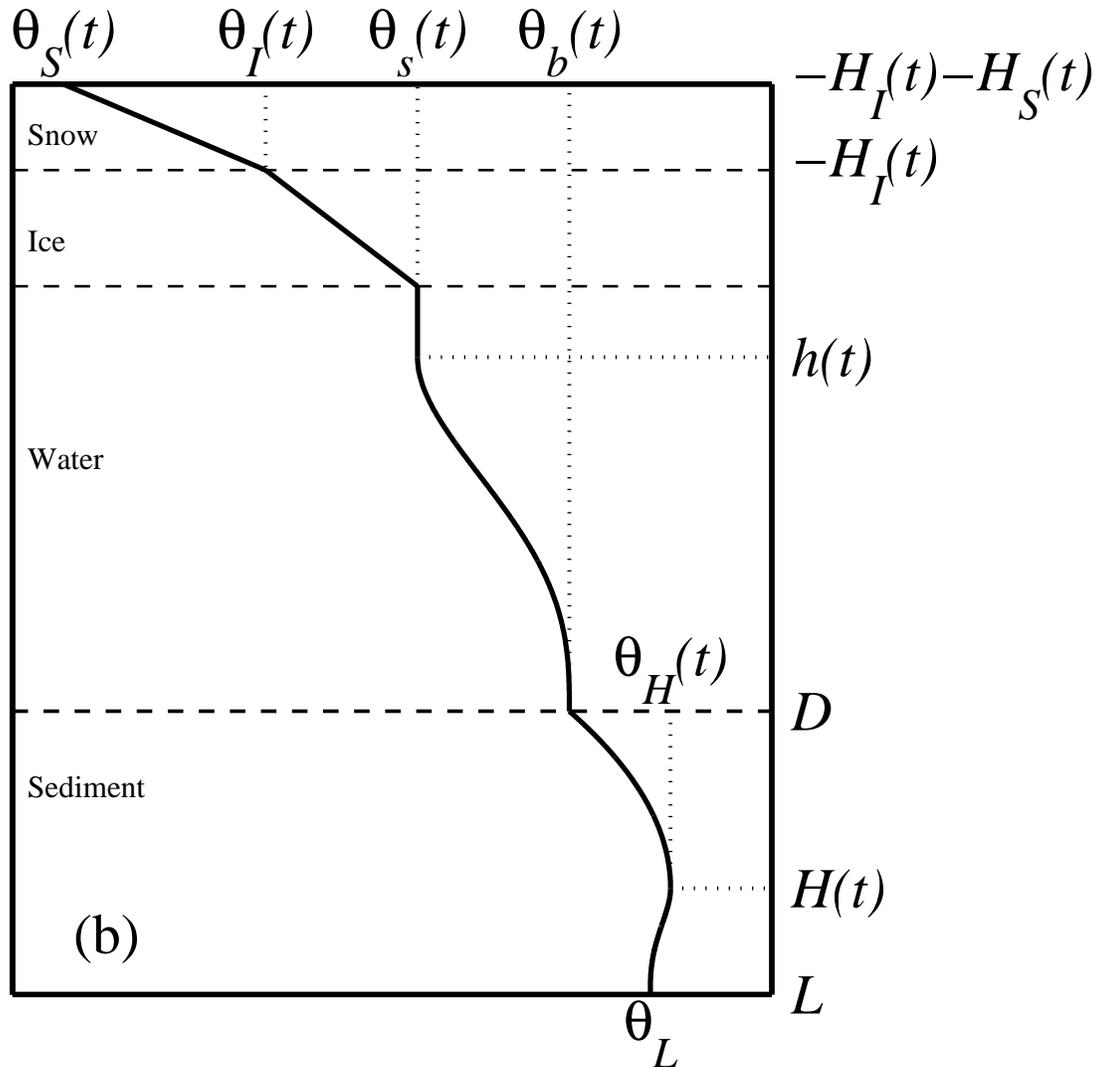


Figure 2.7: Apart from  $\theta_s(t)$ ,  $h(t)$ ,  $\theta_b(t)$ ,  $C_\theta(t)$ ,  $\theta_H(t)$ , and  $H(t)$  (see Fig. 2.6), four additional quantities are computed in case the lake is covered by ice and snow. These are the temperature  $\theta_S(t)$  at the air-snow interface, the temperature  $\theta_I(t)$  at the snow-ice interface, the snow depth  $H_S(t)$ , and the ice depth  $H_I(t)$ .

## 2.4.2 The Water Temperature

### Parameterization of the Temperature Profile and the Heat Budget

We adopt the following two-layer parameterization of the vertical temperature profile:

$$\theta = \begin{cases} \theta_s & \text{at } 0 \leq z \leq h \\ \theta_s - (\theta_s - \theta_b)\Phi_\theta(\zeta) & \text{at } h \leq z \leq D, \end{cases} \quad (2.50)$$

where  $\Phi_\theta \equiv (\theta_s - \theta) / (\theta_s - \theta_b)$  is a dimensionless function of dimensionless depth  $\zeta \equiv (z - h) / (D - h)$ . The thermocline extends from the mixed-layer outer edge  $z = h$  to the basin bottom  $z = D$ . Hereinafter the arguments of functions dependent on time and depth are not indicated (cf. Figs. 2.6 and 2.7).

According to Eq. (2.50),  $h$ ,  $D$ ,  $\theta_s$ ,  $\theta_b$ , and the mean temperature of the water column,  $\bar{\theta} \equiv D^{-1} \int_0^D \theta dz$ , are related through

$$\bar{\theta} = \theta_s - C_\theta(1 - h/D)(\theta_s - \theta_b), \quad (2.51)$$

where

$$C_\theta = \int_0^1 \Phi_\theta(\zeta) d\zeta \quad (2.52)$$

is the shape factor.

The parameterization of the temperature profile (2.50) should satisfy the heat transfer equation

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t}(\rho c \theta) = -\frac{\partial}{\partial z}(Q + I), \quad (2.53)$$

where  $Q$  is the vertical turbulent heat flux, and  $I$  is the heat flux due to solar radiation.

Integrating Eq. (2.53) over  $z$  from 0 to  $D$  yields the equation of the total heat budget,

$$D \frac{d\bar{\theta}}{dt} = \frac{1}{\rho_w c_w} [Q_s + I_s - Q_b - I(D)], \quad (2.54)$$

where  $c_w$  is the specific heat of water,  $Q_s$  and  $I_s$  are the values of  $Q$  and  $I$ , respectively, at the lake surface, and  $Q_b$  is the heat flux through the lake bottom. The radiation heat flux  $I_s$  that penetrates into the water is the surface value of the incident solar radiation flux from the atmosphere multiplied by  $1 - \alpha_w$ ,  $\alpha_w$  being the albedo of the water surface with respect to solar radiation. The surface flux  $Q_s$  is a sum of the sensible and latent heat fluxes and the net heat flux due to long-wave radiation at the air-water interface.

Integrating Eq. (2.53) over  $z$  from 0 to  $h$  yields the equation of the heat budget in the mixed layer,

$$h \frac{d\theta_s}{dt} = \frac{1}{\rho_w c_w} [Q_s + I_s - Q_h - I(h)], \quad (2.55)$$

where  $Q_h$  is the heat flux at the bottom of the mixed layer.

Given the surface fluxes  $Q_s$  and  $I_s$  (these are delivered by the driving atmospheric model or are known from observations), and the decay law for the flux of solar radiation, Eqs. (2.51), (2.54) and (2.55) contain seven unknowns, namely,  $h$ ,  $\bar{\theta}$ ,  $\theta_s$ ,  $\theta_b$ ,  $Q_h$ ,  $Q_b$  and  $C_\theta$ . The mixed layer depth, the bottom heat flux and the shape factor are considered in what follows. One more relation is required. Following Filyushkin and Miropolsky (1981), Tamsalu *et al.* (1997) and Tamsalu and Myrberg (1998), we assume that in case of the mixed layer deepening,  $dh/dt > 0$ , the profile of the vertical turbulent heat flux in the thermocline can be represented in a self-similar form. That is

$$Q = Q_h - (Q_h - Q_b)\Phi_Q(\zeta) \quad \text{at } h \leq z \leq D, \quad (2.56)$$

where the shape function  $\Phi_Q$  satisfies the boundary conditions  $\Phi_Q(0) = 0$  and  $\Phi_Q(1) = 1$ . Equation (2.56) is suggested by the travelling wave-type solution to the heat transfer equation. If the mixed layer and the thermocline develop on the background of a deep stably or neutrally stratified quiescent layer (this situation is encountered in the ocean and in the atmosphere), the travelling wave-type solution shows that both the temperature profile and the profile of the turbulent heat flux are described by the same shape function, i.e.  $\Phi_\theta(\zeta) = \Phi_Q(\zeta)$ . In lakes, the thermocline usually extends from the bottom of the mixed layer down to the basin bottom (except for very deep lakes). In this case, the travelling wave-type solution to the heat transfer equation also suggests self-similar profiles of the temperature and of the heat flux, however the relation between the shape functions  $\Phi_\theta(\zeta)$  and  $\Phi_Q(\zeta)$  is different. The issue is considered in Mironov (2008). Integrating Eq. (2.53) with due regard for Eqs. (2.50) and (2.56) over  $z'$  from  $h$  to  $z > h$ , then integrating the resulting expression over  $z$  from  $h$  to  $D$ , we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} & \frac{1}{2}(D-h)^2 \frac{d\theta_s}{dt} - \frac{d}{dt} [C_{\theta\theta}(D-h)^2(\theta_s - \theta_b)] = \\ & \frac{1}{\rho_w c_w} \left[ C_Q(D-h)(Q_h - Q_b) + (D-h)I(h) - \int_h^D I(z)dz \right], \end{aligned} \quad (2.57)$$

where

$$C_Q = \int_0^1 \Phi_Q(\zeta) d\zeta \quad (2.58)$$

is the shape factor with respect to the heat flux, and

$$C_{\theta\theta} = \int_0^1 d\zeta \int_0^{\zeta'} \Phi_\theta(\zeta') d\zeta' \quad (2.59)$$

is the dimensionless parameter. The analysis in Mironov (2008) suggests that  $C_Q = 2C_{\theta\theta}/C_\theta$ .

In case of the mixed-layer stationary state or retreat,  $dh/dt \leq 0$ , Eq. (2.56) is not justified. Then, the bottom temperature is assumed to be “frozen”,

$$\frac{d\theta_b}{dt} = 0. \quad (2.60)$$

If  $h = D$ , then  $\theta_b = \theta_s = \bar{\theta}$  and the mean temperature is computed from Eq. (2.54).

### The Mixed-Layer Depth

Convective deepening of the mixed layer is described by the entrainment equation. This equation is conveniently formulated in terms of the dependence of the so-called entrainment ratio  $A$  on one or the other stratification parameter. The entrainment ratio is a measure of the entrainment efficiency. It is commonly defined as a negative of the ratio of the heat flux due to entrainment at the bottom of the mixed layer,  $Q_h$ , to an appropriate heat flux scale,  $Q_*$ . In case of convection driven by the surface flux, where the forcing is confined to the boundary, the surface heat flux  $Q_s$  serves as an appropriate flux scale. This leads to the now classical Deardorff (1970a, 1970b) convective scaling, where  $h$  and  $|h\beta Q_s/(\rho_w c_w)|^{1/3}$  serve as the scales of length and velocity, respectively.

The Deardorff scaling is unsuitable for convective flows affected by the solar radiation heating that is not confined to the boundary but is distributed over the water column. If the mixed-layer temperature exceeds the temperature of maximum density, convective motions are driven by surface cooling, whereas radiation heating tends to stabilise the water column, arresting the mixed layer deepening (Soloviev (1979); Mironov and Karlin (1989)). Such regime of convection is encountered in the oceanic upper layer (e.g. Kraus and Rooth (1961), Soloviev and Vershinskii (1982), Price *et al.* (1986) and in fresh-water lakes (e.g. Imberger

(1985)). If the mixed-layer temperature is below that of maximum density, volumetric radiation heating leads to de-stabilisation of the water column and thereby drives convective motions. Such regime of convection is encountered in fresh-water lakes in spring. Convective mixing often occurs under the ice, when the snow cover overlying the ice vanishes and solar radiation penetrates down through the ice (e.g. Farmer (1975), Mironov and Terzhevik (2000), Mironov *et al.* (2002), Jonas *et al.* (2003)).

In order to account for the vertically distributed character of the radiation heating, we make use of a generalised convective heat flux scale

$$Q_* = Q_s + I_s + I(h) - 2h^{-1} \int_0^h I(z) dz, \quad (2.61)$$

and define the convective velocity scale and the entrainment ratio as

$$w_* = [-h\beta(\theta_s)Q_*/(\rho_w c_w)]^{1/3}, \quad A = -Q_h/Q_*, \quad (2.62)$$

respectively. In order to specify  $A$ , we employ the entrainment equation in the form

$$A + \frac{C_{c2}}{w_*} \frac{dh}{dt} = C_{c1}, \quad (2.63)$$

where  $C_{c1}$  and  $C_{c2}$  are dimensionless constants (the estimates of these and other empirical constants of the model are discussed in Section 2.4.5 and summarised in the Appendix). The second term on the l.h.s. of Eq. (2.63) is the spin-up correction term introduced by Zilitinkevich (1975). This term prevents an unduly fast growth of  $h$  when the mixed layer is shallow. If the spin-up term is small, Eq. (2.63) reduces to a simple relation  $A = C_{c1}$  that proved to be a sufficiently accurate approximation for a large variety of geophysical and laboratory convective flows Zilitinkevich (1991).

Equations (2.61), (2.62) and (2.63) should be used to compute the mixed-layer depth when the buoyancy flux  $B_* = \beta(\theta_s)Q_*/(\rho_w c_w)$  is negative. The quantity  $-hB_* \equiv w_*^3$  is a measure of the generation rate of the turbulence kinetic energy in a layer of depth  $h$  by the buoyancy forces (see a discussion in Mironov *et al.* (2002)). A negative  $B_*$  indicates that the TKE is generated through convective instability. Otherwise, the TKE is lost to work against the gravity. This occurs when the density stratification is stable. A different formulation for the mixed-layer depth is then required.

Mironov *et al.* (1991) used a diagnostic equation to determine the wind-mixed layer depth in stable and neutral stratification. That is,  $h$  was assumed to adjust to external forcing on a time scale that does not exceed the model time step. This assumption is fair if seasonal changes of temperature and mixing conditions are considered and the model time step is typically one day. The assumption is likely to be too crude to consider diurnal variations. To this end, We utilise a relaxation-type rate equation for the depth of a stably or neutrally stratified wind-mixed layer. It reads

$$\frac{dh}{dt} = \frac{h_e - h}{t_{rh}}. \quad (2.64)$$

Here,  $h_e$  is the equilibrium mixed-layer depth, and  $t_{rh}$  is the relaxation time scale given by

$$t_{rh} = \frac{h_e}{C_{rh} u_*}, \quad (2.65)$$

where  $u_* = |\tau_s/\rho_w c_w|^{1/2}$  is the surface friction velocity,  $\tau_s$  being the surface stress, and  $C_{rh}$  is a dimensionless constant. A rate equation (2.64) with the relaxation time scale proportional to the reciprocal of the Coriolis parameter [that is a particular case of Eq. (2.65) with  $h_e$  specified through Eq. (2.66)] was favourably tested by Zilitinkevich *et al.* (2002) and Zilitinkevich and Baklanov (2002) against data from atmospheric measurements and was recommended for practical use.

In order to specify  $h_e$ , we make use of a multi-limit formulation for the equilibrium depth of a stably or neutrally stratified boundary layer proposed by Zilitinkevich and Mironov (1996). Based on the analysis of the TKE budget, these authors proposed a generalised equation for the equilibrium boundary-layer depth that accounts for the combined effects of rotation, surface buoyancy flux and static stability at the boundary-layer outer edge [Eq. (30) in op. cit.]. That equation reduces to the equations proposed earlier by Rossby and Montgomery (1935), Kitaigorodskii (1960) and Kitaigorodskii and Joffre (1988) in the limiting cases of a truly neutral rotating boundary layer, the surface-flux-dominated boundary layer, and the imposed-stability-dominated boundary layer, respectively. It also incorporates the Zilitinkevich (1972) and the Pollard *et al.* (1973) equations that describe the intermediate regimes, where the effects of rotations and stratification essentially interfere and are roughly equally important. We adopt a simplified version of the Zilitinkevich and Mironov (1996) equation [Eq. (26) in op. cit.] that does not incorporate the Zilitinkevich (1972) and the Pollard *et al.* (1973) scales. It reads

$$\left(\frac{fh_e}{C_n u_*}\right)^2 + \frac{h_e}{C_s L} + \frac{N h_e}{C_i u_*} = 1, \quad (2.66)$$

where  $f = 2\Omega \sin \phi$  is the Coriolis parameter,  $\Omega = 7.29 \cdot 10^{-5} \text{ s}^{-1}$  is the angular velocity of the earth's rotation,  $\phi$  is the geographical latitude,  $L$  is the Obukhov length,  $N$  is the buoyancy frequency below the mixed layer, and  $C_n$ ,  $C_s$  and  $C_i$  are dimensionless constants. A generalised formulation for the Obukhov length is used,  $L = u_*^3 / (\beta Q_* / \rho_w c_w)$ , that accounts for the vertically distributed character of the solar radiation heating (note that the von Kármán constant is not included into the definition of  $L$ ). A mean-square buoyancy frequency in the thermocline,  $\bar{N} = \left[(D - h)^{-1} \int_h^D N^2 dz\right]^{1/2}$ , is used as an estimate of  $N$  in Eq. (2.66).

One further comment is in order. Zilitinkevich *et al.* (2002) reconsidered the problem of the equilibrium stable boundary-layer depth. They concluded that the Zilitinkevich (1972) scale,  $|u_* L / f|^{1/2}$ , and the Pollard *et al.* (1973) scale,  $u_* / |N f|^{1/2}$ , are the appropriate depth scales for the boundary layers dominated by the surface buoyancy flux and by the static stability at the boundary-layer outer edge, respectively. In other words,  $h_e$  depends on the Coriolis parameter no matter how strong the static stability. This is different from Eq. (2.66) where the limiting scales are  $L$  and  $u_* / N$ , respectively. The problem was further examined by Mironov and Fedorovich (2010). They showed that the above scales are particular cases of more general power-law formulations, namely,  $h/L \propto (|f|L/u_*)^{-p}$  and  $hN/u_* \propto (|f|/N)^{-q}$  for the boundary layers dominated by the surface buoyancy flux and by the static stability at the boundary-layer outer edge, respectively. The Zilitinkevich (1972) and Pollard *et al.* (1973) scales are recovered with  $p = 1/2$  and  $q = 1/2$ , whereas the Kitaigorodskii (1960) and Kitaigorodskii and Joffre (1988) are recovered with  $p = 0$  and  $q = 0$ . Scaling arguments are not sufficient to fix the exponents  $p$  and  $q$ . They should be evaluated on the basis of experimental data. Available data from observations and from large-eddy simulations are uncertain. They do not make it possible to evaluate  $p$  and  $q$  to sufficient accuracy and to conclusively decide between the alternative formulations for the boundary-layer depth. Leaving the evaluation of  $p$  and  $q$  for future studies, we utilise Eq. (2.66). This simple interpolation formula is consistent with the complexity of the present lake model and is expected to be a sufficiently accurate approximation for most practical purposes.

One more limitation on the equilibrium mixed-layer depth should be taken into account. Consider the situation where the mixed-layer temperature exceeds the temperature of maximum density, the surface flux  $Q_s$  is negative, whereas the heat flux scale  $Q_*$  given by Eq. (2.61) is positive (this can take place if  $-Q_s/I_s < 1$ ). A positive  $Q_*$  indicates the the mixed layer of depth  $h$  is statically stable. A negative  $Q_s$ , however, indicates that convective instability should take place, leading to the development of a convectively mixed layer whose deepening is arrested by the solar radiation heating. The equilibrium depth  $h_c$  of such mixed

layer is given by (see e.g. Mironov and Karlin (1989))

$$Q_*(h_c) = Q_s + I_s + I(h_c) - 2h_c^{-1} \int_0^{h_c} I(z)dz = 0. \quad (2.67)$$

This regime of convection is encountered on calm sunny days. If the wind suddenly ceases, Eq. (2.66) predicts a very shallow stably-stratified equilibrium mixed layer to which the mixed layer of depth  $h > h_e$  should relax. In fact, however, the mixed layer would relax towards a convectively mixed layer whose equilibrium depth is given by Eq. (2.67). In order to account for this constraint, we require that  $h_e \geq h_c$  if  $Q_*(h) > 0$  and  $\theta_s > \theta_r$ .

### 2.4.3 The Water–Bottom Sediment Interaction

**Parameterization of the Temperature Profile and the Heat Budget** We adopt the following two-layer parametric representation, of the evolving temperature profile in the thermally active layer of bottom sediments proposed by Golosov *et al.* (1998):

$$\theta = \begin{cases} \theta_b - [\theta_b - \theta_H] \Phi_{B1}(\zeta_{B1}) & \text{at } D \leq z \leq H \\ \theta_H - [\theta_H - \theta_L] \Phi_{B2}(\zeta_{B2}) & \text{at } H \leq z \leq L, \end{cases} \quad (2.68)$$

Where,  $\theta_L$  is the (constant) temperature at the outer edge  $z = L$  of the thermally active layer of the sediments,  $\theta_H$  is the temperature at the depth  $H$  where the vertical temperature gradient is zero, and  $\Phi_{B1} \equiv (\theta_b - \theta)/(\theta_b - \theta_H)$  and  $\Phi_{B2} \equiv (\theta_H - \theta)/(\theta_H - \theta_L)$  are dimensionless functions of dimensionless depths  $\zeta_{B1} \equiv (z - D)/(H - D)$  and  $\zeta_{B2} \equiv (z - H)/(L - H)$ , respectively.

The parameterization (2.68) should satisfy the heat transfer equation (2.53), where the heat flux  $Q$  is due to molecular heat conduction and the bottom sediments are opaque to radiation. Integrating Eq. (2.53) over  $z$  from  $z = D$  to  $z = H$  with due regard for Eq. (2.68), we obtain

$$\frac{d}{dt} [(H - D)\theta_b - C_{B1}(H - D)(\theta_b - \theta_H)] - \theta_H \frac{dH}{dt} = \frac{1}{\rho_w c_w} [Q_b + I(D)], \quad (2.69)$$

where the heat flux at  $z = H$  is zero by virtue of the zero temperature gradient there.

Integrating Eq. (2.53) over  $z$  from  $z = H$  to  $z = L$ , we obtain

$$\frac{d}{dt} [(L - H)\theta_H - C_{B2}(L - H)(\theta_H - \theta_L)] + \theta_H \frac{dH}{dt} = 0, \quad (2.70)$$

where the heat flux at  $z = L$  (the geothermal heat flux) is neglected.

The shape factors  $C_{B1}$  and  $C_{B2}$  are given by

$$C_{B1} = \int_0^1 \Phi_{B1}(\zeta_{B1}) d\zeta_{B1}, \quad C_{B2} = \int_0^1 \Phi_{B2}(\zeta_{B2}) d\zeta_{B2}. \quad (2.71)$$

**Heat Flux through the Bottom** The bottom heat flux  $Q_b$  is due to molecular heat conduction through the uppermost layer of bottom sediments. It can be estimated as the product of the negative of the temperature gradient at  $z = D + 0$  and the molecular heat conductivity. The uppermost layer of bottom sediments is saturated with water. Its water content typically exceeds 90% and its physical properties, including the heat conductivity, are very close to the properties of the lake water. Then, the heat flux through the lake bottom is given by

$$Q_b = -\kappa_w \frac{\theta_H - \theta_b}{H - D} \Phi'_{B1}(0), \quad (2.72)$$

where  $\kappa_w$  is the molecular heat conductivity of water. This relation closes the problem.

It should be stressed that Eqs. (2.69), (2.70) and (2.72) do not contain the molecular heat conductivity of bottom sediments, a quantity that is rarely known to a satisfactory degree of precision. It is through the use of the integral (bulk) approach, based on the parameterization (2.68) of the temperature profile, that the molecular heat conductivity of bottom sediments is no longer needed.

#### 2.4.4 Ice and Snow Cover

In this section, a two-layer thermodynamic (no rheology) model of the ice and snow cover is described. It is based on a self-similar parametric representation of the temperature profile within ice and snow and on the integral heat budgets of the ice and snow layers. The approach is, therefore, conceptually similar to the approach used above to describe the temperature structure of the mixed layer, of the lake thermocline, and of the thermally active layer of bottom sediments. Notice that the assumption about the shape of the temperature profile within the ice, the simplest of which is the linear profile, is either explicit or implicit in a number of ice models developed to date. A model of ice growth based on a linear temperature distribution was proposed by Stefan as early as 1891.

**Parameterization of the Temperature Profile and the Heat Budget** We adopt the following parametric representation of the evolving temperature profile within ice and snow:

$$\theta = \begin{cases} \theta_f - [\theta_f - \theta_I]\Phi_I(\zeta_I) & \text{at } -H_I \leq z \leq 0 \\ \theta_I - [\theta_I - \theta_S]\Phi_S(\zeta_S) & \text{at } -[H_I + H_S] \leq z \leq -H_I. \end{cases} \quad (2.73)$$

Here,  $z$  is the vertical co-ordinate (positive downward) with the origin at the ice-water interface,  $H_I$  is the ice thickness,  $H_S$  is the thickness of snow overlaying the ice,  $\theta_f$  is the fresh-water freezing point,  $\theta_I$  is the temperature at the snow-ice interface, and  $\theta_S$  is the temperature at the air-snow interface. Notice that the freezing point of salt water is a decreasing function of salinity. A model that accounts for this dependence and is applicable to the ice over salt lakes or seas is presented by Mironov and Ritter (2004). Dimensionless universal functions  $\Phi_I \equiv (\theta_f - \theta)/(\theta_f - \theta_I)$  and  $\Phi_S \equiv (\theta_I - \theta)/(\theta_I - \theta_S)$  of dimensionless depths  $\zeta_I \equiv -z/H_I$  and  $\zeta_S \equiv -(z + H_I)/H_S$ , respectively, satisfy the boundary conditions  $\Phi_I(0) = 0$ ,  $\Phi_I(1) = 1$ ,  $\Phi_S(0) = 0$ , and  $\Phi_S(1) = 1$ .

According to Eq. (2.73), the heat fluxes through the ice,  $Q_I$ , and through the snow,  $Q_S$ , due to molecular heat conduction are given by

$$Q_I = -\kappa_i \frac{\theta_f - \theta_I}{H_I} \frac{d\Phi_I}{d\zeta_I}, \quad Q_S = -\kappa_s \frac{\theta_I - \theta_S}{H_S} \frac{d\Phi_S}{d\zeta_S}, \quad (2.74)$$

where  $\kappa_i$  and  $\kappa_s$  are the heat conductivities of ice and snow, respectively.

The parameterization of the temperature profile (2.73) should satisfy the heat transfer equation (2.53). Integrating Eq. (2.53) over  $z$  from the air-snow interface  $z = -(H_I + H_S)$  to just above the ice-water interface  $z = -0$  with due regard for the parameterization (2.73), we obtain the equation of the heat budget of the snow-ice cover,

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{d}{dt} \{ \rho_i c_i H_I [\theta_f - C_I(\theta_f - \theta_I)] + \rho_s c_s H_S [\theta_I - C_S(\theta_I - \theta_S)] \} - \rho_s c_s \theta_S \frac{d}{dt} (H_I + H_S) = \\ Q_s + I_s - I(0) + \kappa_i \frac{\theta_f - \theta_I}{H_I} \Phi_I'(0). \end{aligned} \quad (2.75)$$

Here,  $\rho_i$  and  $\rho_s$  are the densities of ice and of snow, respectively,  $c_i$  and  $c_s$  are specific heats of these media, and  $Q_s$  and  $I_s$  are the values of  $Q$  and  $I$ , respectively, at the air-snow or, if snow is absent, at the air-ice

interface. The radiation heat flux  $I_s$  that penetrates into the interior of snow-ice cover is the surface value of the incident solar radiation flux from the atmosphere multiplied by  $1 - \alpha_i$ ,  $\alpha_i$  being the albedo of the ice or snow surface with respect to solar radiation. The dimensionless parameters  $C_I$  and  $C_S$ , the shape factors, are given by

$$C_I = \int_0^1 \Phi_I(\zeta_I) d\zeta_I, \quad C_S = \int_0^1 \Phi_S(\zeta_S) d\zeta_S. \quad (2.76)$$

The heat flux at the snow-ice interface is assumed to be continuous, that is

$$-\kappa_i \frac{\theta_f - \theta_I}{H_I} \Phi'_I(1) = -\kappa_s \frac{\theta_I - \theta_S}{H_S} \Phi'_S(0). \quad (2.77)$$

Equations (2.75) and (2.77) serve to determine temperatures at the air-snow and at the snow-ice interfaces, when these temperatures are below the freezing point, i.e. when no melting at the snow surface (ice surface, when snow is absent) takes place. During the snow (ice) melting from above, the temperatures  $\theta_S$  and  $\theta_I$  remain equal to the freezing point  $\theta_f$ , and the heat fluxes  $Q_S$  and  $Q_I$  are zero.

**Snow and Ice Thickness** The equations governing the evolution of the snow thickness and of the ice thickness are derived from the heat transfer equation (2.53) that incorporates an additional term on its right-hand side, namely, the term  $f_M(z)L_f dM/dt$  that describes the rate of heat release/consumption due to accretion/melting of snow and ice. Here,  $M$  is the mass of snow or ice per unit area,  $L_f$  is the latent heat of fusion, and  $f_M(z)$  is a function that satisfies the normalization conditions  $\int_{H_I}^{H_I+H_S} f_M(z) dz = 1$  and  $\int_0^{H_I} f_M(z) dz = 1$  for snow and ice, respectively.

The accumulation of snow is not computed within the ice-snow model. The rate of snow accumulation is assumed to be a known time-dependent quantity that is provided by the atmospheric model or is known from observations. Then, the evolution of the snow thickness during the snow accumulation and no melting is computed from

$$\frac{d\rho_s H_S}{dt} = \left( \frac{dM_S}{dt} \right)_a, \quad (2.78)$$

where  $M_S = \rho_s H_S$  is the snow mass per unit area, and  $(dM_S/dt)_a$  is the (given) rate of snow accumulation. When the temperature  $\theta_I$  at the upper surface of the ice is below the freezing point  $\theta_f$ , the heat conduction through the ice causes the ice growth. This growth is accompanied by a release of heat at the lower surface of the ice that occurs at a rate  $L_f dM_I/dt$ , where  $M_I = \rho_i H_I$  is the ice mass per unit area. The normalization function  $f_M$  is equal to zero throughout the snow-ice cover except at the ice-water interface where  $f_M = \delta(0)$ ,  $\delta(z)$  being the Dirac delta function. Integrating Eq. (2.53) from  $z = -0$  to  $z = +0$  with due regard for this heat release yields the equation for the ice thickness. It reads

$$L_f \frac{d\rho_i H_I}{dt} = Q_w + \kappa_i \frac{\theta_f - \theta_I}{H_I} \Phi'_I(0), \quad (2.79)$$

where  $Q_w$  is the heat flux in the near-surface water layer just beneath the ice. If the r.h.s. of Eq. (2.79) is negative, i.e. the negative of the heat flux in the water,  $Q_w$ , exceeds the negative of the heat flux in the ice,  $Q_I|_{z=0}$ , ice ablation takes place.

As the atmosphere heats the snow surface, the surface temperature eventually reaches the freezing point and the snow and ice melting sets in. This process is accompanied by a consumption of heat at rates  $L_f d\rho_s H_S/dt$  and  $L_f d\rho_i H_I/dt$  for snow and ice, respectively. Notice that the exact form of the normalization function  $f_M$  is not required by virtue of the normalization conditions considered above. Integrating Eq. (2.53) from  $z = -(H_I + H_S) - 0$  to  $z = -H_I$  with due regard for the heat loss due to snow melting and adding the (given) rate of snow accumulation yields the equation for the snow thickness,

$$L_f \frac{d\rho_s H_S}{dt} = -(Q_s + I_s) + I(-H_I) + L_f \left( \frac{dM_S}{dt} \right)_a + c_s \theta_f H_S \frac{d\rho_s}{dt}. \quad (2.80)$$

Integrating Eq. (2.53) from  $z = -H_I$  to  $z = +0$  with due regard for the heat loss due to ice melting yields the equation for the ice thickness,

$$L_f \frac{d\rho_i H_I}{dt} = Q_w + I(0) - I(-H_I). \quad (2.81)$$

If the ice melts out earlier than snow, the snow depth is instantaneously set to zero.

**The Temperature Profile beneath the Ice** The simplest assumption is to keep the temperature profile unchanged over the entire period of ice cover. This assumption is fair for deep lakes, where the heat flux through the bottom is negligibly small. In shallow lakes, this assumption may lead to an underestimation of the mean temperature. The heat accumulated in the thermally active upper layer of bottom sediments during spring and summer is returned back to the water column during winter, leading to an increase of the water temperature under the ice. The water temperature under the ice can also increase due to heating by solar radiation penetrating down through the ice. The thermodynamic regimes encountered in ice-covered lakes are many and varied. Their detailed description requires a set of sophisticated parameterizations. The use of such parameterizations in the framework of the present lake model is, however, hardly justified. The point is that it is the snow (ice) surface temperature that communicates information to the atmosphere, the water temperature is not directly felt by the atmospheric surface layer. It is, therefore, not vital that the temperature regimes in ice-covered lakes be described in great detail. Only their most salient features should be accounted for, first of all, the heat budget of the water column.

When the lake is ice-covered, the temperature at the ice-water interface is fixed at the freezing point  $\theta_s = \theta_f$ . In case the bottom temperature is less than the temperature of maximum density,  $\theta_b < \theta_r$ , the mixed-layer depth and the shape factor are kept unchanged,  $dh/dt = 0$  and  $dC_\theta/dt = 0$ , the mean temperature  $\bar{\theta}$  is computed from Eq. (2.54) and the bottom temperature  $\theta_b$  is computed from Eq. (2.51). If the entire water column appears to be mixed at the moment of freezing, i.e.  $h = D$  and  $\theta_s = \bar{\theta} = \theta_b$ , the mixed layer depth is reset to zero,  $h = 0$ , and the shape factor is set to its minimum value,  $C_\theta = 0.5$  (see Section 2.4.5).

The heat flux from water to ice is estimated from

$$Q_w = -\kappa_w \frac{\theta_b - \theta_s}{D}, \quad (2.82)$$

if  $h = 0$ , and  $Q_w = 0$  otherwise. Notice that the estimate of  $Q_w$  given by Eq. (2.82) and the shape factor  $C_\theta = 0.5$  correspond to a linear temperature profile over the entire water column. A linear profile is encountered in ice-covered shallow lakes when  $\theta_b < \theta_r$  and the heat flux is from the bottom sediments to the lake water.

As the bottom temperature reaches the temperature of maximum density, convection due to bottom heating sets in. To describe this regime of convection in detail, a convectively mixed layer whose temperature is close to  $\theta_r$ , and a thin layer adjacent to the bottom, where the temperature decreases sharply from  $\theta_b > \theta_r$  to  $\theta_r$ , should be thoroughly considered. We neglect these peculiarities of convection due to bottom heating and adopt a simpler model where the bottom temperature is fixed at the temperature of maximum density,  $\theta_b = \theta_r$ . The mean temperature  $\bar{\theta}$  is computed from Eq. (2.54). If  $h > 0$ , the shape factor  $C_\theta$  is kept unchanged, and the mixed-layer depth is computed from Eq. (2.51). As the mixed-layer depth approaches zero, Eq. (2.51) is used to compute the shape factor  $C_\theta$  that in this regime would increase towards its maximum value  $C_\theta^{max}$ . The heat flux from water to ice is estimated from

$$Q_w = -\kappa_w \frac{\theta_b - \theta_s}{D} \max [1, \Phi'_\theta(0)], \quad (2.83)$$

if  $h = 0$ , and  $Q_w = 0$  otherwise.

One more regime of convection is often encountered in ice-covered lakes. In late spring, the snow overlying the ice vanishes and solar radiation penetrates down through the ice. As the mixed-layer temperature is below that of maximum density, the volumetric radiation heating leads to de-stabilisation of the water column and thereby drives convective motions. Such regime of convection was analysed by Farmer (1975), Mironov and Terzhevik (2000), Mironov *et al.* (2002), and Jonas *et al.* (2003), among others. A parameterization of convection due to solar heating (e.g. a parameterization based on a bulk model developed by Mironov *et al.* (2002)) can, in principle, be incorporated into the present model. We do not do so, however, considering that the major effect of convection beneath the ice is to redistribute heat in the vertical and that it takes place over a limited period of time.

## 2.4.5 Empirical Relations and Model Constants

### The Shape Functions

We adopt the following polynomial approximation of the shape function  $\Phi_\theta(\zeta)$  with respect to the temperature profile in the thermocline:

$$\Phi_\theta = \left( \frac{40}{3}C_\theta - \frac{20}{3} \right) \zeta + (18 - 30C_\theta) \zeta^2 + (20C_\theta - 12) \zeta^3 + \left( \frac{5}{3} - \frac{10}{3}C_\theta \right) \zeta^4. \quad (2.84)$$

The shape factor  $C_\theta$  is computed from

$$\frac{dC_\theta}{dt} = \text{sign}(dh/dt) \frac{C_\theta^{max} - C_\theta^{min}}{t_{rc}}, \quad C_\theta^{min} \leq C_\theta \leq C_\theta^{max}, \quad (2.85)$$

where  $t_{rc}$  is the relaxation time scale, and  $\text{sign}$  is the signum function,  $\text{sign}(x)=-1$  if  $x \leq 0$  and  $\text{sign}(x)=1$  if  $x > 0$ . The minimum and maximum values of the shape factor are set to  $C_\theta^{min} = 0.5$  and  $C_\theta^{max} = 0.8$ . During the mixed-layer deepening,  $dh/dt > 0$ , the temperature profile evolves towards the limiting curve, characterised by a maximum value of the shape factor,  $C_\theta^{max} = 0.8$ , and the maximum value of the dimensionless temperature gradient at the upper boundary of the thermocline,  $\Phi'_\theta(0) = 4$ . During the mixed-layer stationary state or retreat,  $dh/dt \leq 0$ , the temperature profile evolves towards the other limiting curve, characterised by a minimum value of the shape factor,  $C_\theta^{min} = 0.5$ , and the zero temperature gradient at the upper boundary of the thermocline,  $\Phi'_\theta(0) = 0$ . Notice that  $C_\theta^{min} = 0.5$  is consistent with a linear temperature profile that is assumed to occur under the ice when the bottom temperature is less than the temperature of maximum density (see Section 2.4.4).

According to Eq. (2.84), the dimensionless parameter  $C_{\theta\theta}$  defined through Eq. (2.59) is given by

$$C_{\theta\theta} = \frac{11}{18}C_\theta - \frac{7}{45}. \quad (2.86)$$

The relaxation time  $t_{rc}$  is estimated from the following arguments. The time  $t_{rc}$  is basically the time of the evolution of the temperature profile in the thermocline from one limiting curve to the other, following the change of sign in  $dh/dt$ . Then, a reasonable scale for  $t_{rc}$  is the thermal diffusion time through the thermocline, that is a square of the thermocline thickness,  $(D-h)^2$ , over a characteristic eddy temperature conductivity,  $K_{H*}$ . Using a mean-square buoyancy frequency in the thermocline,  $\overline{N} = \left[ (D-h)^{-1} \int_h^D N^2 dz \right]^{1/2}$ , as an estimate of  $N$  and assuming that the TKE in the thermocline scales either on the convective velocity  $w_*$ , Eq. (2.62), or on the surface friction velocity  $u_*$ , we propose (see Mironov (2008) for details)

$$t_{rc} = \frac{(D-h)^2 \overline{N}}{C_{rc} u_T^2}, \quad u_T = \max(w_*, u_*), \quad (2.87)$$

where  $C_{rc}$  is a dimensionless constant estimated at 0.003 (this value may be altered as new information becomes available).

We adopt the following polynomial approximations of the shape functions  $\Phi_{B1}(\zeta_{B1})$  and  $\Phi_{B2}(\zeta_{B2})$  with respect to the temperature profile in bottom sediments (cf. Golosov *et al.* (1998)):

$$\Phi_{B1} = 2\zeta_{B1} - \zeta_{B1}^2, \quad \Phi_{B2} = 6\zeta_{B2}^2 - 8\zeta_{B2}^3 + 3\zeta_{B2}^4. \quad (2.88)$$

which are the simplest polynomials that satisfy a minimum set of constraints. The conditions  $\Phi_{B1}(0) = \Phi_{B2}(0) = 0$  and  $\Phi_{B1}(1) = \Phi_{B2}(1) = 1$  follow from the definition of  $\zeta_{B1}$ ,  $\zeta_{B2}$ ,  $\Phi_{B1}$ , and  $\Phi_{B2}$ . The conditions  $\Phi'_{B1}(1) = \Phi'_{B2}(0) = \Phi'_{B2}(1) = 0$  provide a zero temperature gradient at the depths  $z = H$  and  $z = L$ , and the condition  $\Phi''_{B2}(1) = 0$  follows from the requirement that the temperature  $\theta_L$  at the outer edge  $z = L$  of the thermally active layer of the sediments is constant in time. The shape factors that correspond to Eq. (2.88) are  $C_{B1} = 2/3$  and  $C_{B2} = 3/5$ .

As a zero-order approximation, the simplest linear temperature profile within snow and ice can be assumed,  $\Phi_S(\zeta_S) = \zeta_S$  and  $\Phi_I(\zeta_I) = \zeta_I$ . This gives  $C_S = C_I = 1/2$ . Although a linear profile is a good approximation for thin ice, it is likely to result in a too thick ice in cold regions, where the ice growth takes place over a long period, and in a too high thermal inertia of thick ice. A slightly more sophisticated approximation was developed by Mironov and Ritter (2004) who assumed that the ice thickness is limited by a certain maximum value  $H_I^{max}$  and that the rate of ice growth approaches zero as  $H_I$  approaches  $H_I^{max}$  (the snow layer over the ice was not considered). They proposed

$$\Phi_I = \left[1 - \frac{H_I}{H_I^{max}}\right] \zeta_I + \left[(2 - \Phi_{*I}) \frac{H_I}{H_I^{max}}\right] \zeta_I^2 + \left[(\Phi_{*I} - 1) \frac{H_I}{H_I^{max}}\right] \zeta_I^3, \quad (2.89)$$

where  $\Phi_{*I}$  is a dimensionless constant. The shape factor that corresponds to Eq. (2.89) is

$$C_I = \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{12}(1 + \Phi_{*I}) \frac{H_I}{H_I^{max}}. \quad (2.90)$$

The physical meaning of the above expressions can be elucidated as follows. The relation  $\Phi'_I(0) = 1 - H_I/H_I^{max}$  that follows from Eq. (2.89) ensures that the ice growth is quenched as the ice thickness approaches its maximum value. Equation (2.90) suggests that the shape factor  $C_I$  decreases with increasing ice thickness. A smaller  $C_I$  means a smaller relative thermal inertia of the ice layer of thickness  $H_I$  [the absolute thermal inertia is measured by the term  $C_I H_I$  that enters the l.h.s. of Eq. (2.75)]. This is plausible as it is mostly the upper part of thick ice, not the entire ice layer, that effectively responds to external forcing. For use in the global numerical weather prediction model GME of the German Weather Service, Mironov and Ritter (2004) proposed an estimate of  $H_I^{max} = 3$  m. This value is typical of the central Arctic in winter. The allowable values of  $\Phi_{*I}$  lie in the range between  $-1$  and  $5$ .  $\Phi_{*I} > 5$  yields an unphysical negative value of  $C_I$  as the ice thickness approaches  $H_I^{max}$ .  $\Phi_{*I} < -1$  gives  $C_I$  that increases with increasing  $H_I$ . There is no formal proof that this may not occur, but it is very unlikely. A reasonable estimate is  $\Phi_{*I} = 2$ . With this estimate  $C_I$  is halved as  $H_I$  increases from 0 to  $H_I^{max}$ . Notice that the linear temperature profile is recovered as  $H_I/H_I^{max} \ll 1$ , i.e. when the ice is thin.

It should be stressed that, although the shape functions are useful in that they provide a continuous temperature profile through the snow, ice, water and bottom sediments, their exact shapes are not required in the present model. It is not  $\Phi_\theta(\zeta)$ ,  $\Phi_{B1}(\zeta_{B1})$ ,  $\Phi_{B2}(\zeta_{B2})$ ,  $\Phi_S(\zeta_S)$  and  $\Phi_I(\zeta_I)$  per se, but the shape factors  $C_\theta$ ,  $C_{B1}$ ,  $C_{B2}$ ,  $C_S$  and  $C_I$ , and the dimensionless gradients  $\Phi'_\theta(0)$ ,  $\Phi'_{B1}(0)$ ,  $\Phi'_S(0)$ ,  $\Phi'_I(0)$  and  $\Phi'_I(1)$ , that enter the model equations. The estimates of these parameters are summarised in Table 2.2.

**Constants in the Equations for the Mixed-Layer Depth** The estimates of  $C_{c1} = 0.2$  and  $C_{c2} = 0.8$  in Eq. (2.63) were recommended by Zilitinkevich (1991). They were obtained using laboratory, atmospheric

and oceanic data. Apart from being commonly used in mixed-layer models of penetrative convection driven by the surface buoyancy flux, these values were successfully used by Mironov and Karlin (1989) to simulate day-time convection in the upper ocean that is driven by surface cooling but inhibited by radiation heating, and by Mironov and Terzhevik (2000) and Mironov *et al.* (2002) to simulate spring convection in ice-covered lakes where convective motions are driven by volumetric radiation heating of the water at temperature below the temperature of maximum density (Mironov *et al.* (2002) used  $C_{c2} = 1.0$ ). A slightly modified estimate of  $C_{c1} = 0.17$  was obtained by Fedorovich *et al.* (2004) from large-eddy simulation data. We adopt the estimates of  $C_{c1} = 0.17$  and  $C_{c2} = 1.0$  for use in the equation of convective entrainment.

For use in Eq. (2.66) for the equilibrium mixed-layer depth in stable or neutral stratification, we adopt the estimates of  $C_n = 0.5$ ,  $C_s = 10$  and  $C_i = 20$  obtained by Zilitinkevich and Mironov (1996). The estimates of  $C_s$  and  $C_i$  are based on a limited amount of data and may need to be slightly altered as new (and better) data become available. The estimate of  $C_n$  was corroborated by the results from further studies (Zilitinkevich and Esau, 2002) and is reliable.

The estimates of the dimensionless constant  $C_{rh}$  in the relaxation-type rate equation for the depth of a stably or neutrally stratified wind-mixed layer, Eqs. (2.64) and (2.65), are not abundant. Kim (1976) and Deardorff (1983) recommended that the value of  $C_{rh} = 0.28$  be used to describe entrainment into a homogeneous fluid. The same value was used by Zeman (1979), and a slightly lower value of  $C_{rh} = 0.26$  by Zilitinkevich *et al.* (1979). The rate equations given by Khakimov (1976) and Zilitinkevich *et al.* (2002) use the reciprocal of the Coriolis parameter as the relaxation time scale. Their rate equations suggest the values of  $C_{rh} = 0.45$  and  $C_{rh} = 0.5$ , respectively. A similar form of the rate equation was proposed earlier by Deardorff (1971) who used a much lower value of  $C_{rh} = 0.025$ . We adopt an estimate of  $C_{rh} = 0.03$  suggested by the sensitivity experiments with the present lake model (keeping in mind that this value may need to be altered). The estimates of dimensionless constants in the equations for the mixed-layer depth are summarised in Table 2.2.

**Thermodynamic Parameters** The exponential approximation of the decay law for the flux of solar radiation is commonly used in applications. It reads

$$I(t, z) = I_s(t) \sum_{k=1}^n a_k \exp[-\gamma_k(z + H_S + H_I)], \quad (2.91)$$

where  $I_s$  is the surface value of the solar radiation heat flux multiplied by  $1 - \alpha$ ,  $\alpha$  being the albedo of the water, ice or snow surface with respect to solar radiation,  $n$  is the number of wavelength bands,  $a_k$  are fractions of the total radiation flux for different wavelength bands, and  $\gamma_k(z)$  are attenuation coefficients for different bands. The attenuation coefficients are piece-wise constant functions of height, i.e. they have different values for water, ice and snow but remain depth-constant within these media. The optical characteristics of water are lake-specific and should be estimated in every particular case. Rough estimates of  $a_k$  and  $\gamma_k$  for ice and snow are given by Launiainen and Cheng (1998).

The lake model includes a number of thermodynamic parameters. They are summarised in Table 2.3. These thermodynamic parameters can be considered constant except for the snow density and the snow heat conductivity that depend, among other things, on the snow thickness and the snow age. As a first approximation, the following empirical formulations (Heise *et al.* (2003)) can be used that relate  $\rho_s$  and  $\kappa_s$  to the snow thickness:

$$\rho_s = \min \left\{ \rho_s^{max}, |1 - H_S \Gamma_{\rho_s} / \rho_w|^{-1} \rho_s^{min} \right\}, \quad (2.92)$$

where  $\rho_s^{min} = 100 \text{ kg}\cdot\text{m}^{-3}$  and  $\rho_s^{max} = 400 \text{ kg}\cdot\text{m}^{-3}$  are minimum and maximum values, respectively, of

the snow density, and  $\Gamma_{\rho_s} = 200 \text{ kg}\cdot\text{m}^{-4}$  is an empirical parameter, and

$$\kappa_s = \min \left\{ \kappa_s^{max}, \kappa_s^{min} + H_S \Gamma_{\kappa_s} \rho_s / \rho_w \right\}, \quad (2.93)$$

where  $\kappa_s^{min} = 0.2 \text{ J}\cdot\text{m}^{-1}\cdot\text{s}^{-1}\cdot\text{K}^{-1}$  and  $\kappa_s^{max} = 1.5 \text{ J}\cdot\text{m}^{-1}\cdot\text{s}^{-1}\cdot\text{K}^{-1}$  are minimum and maximum values, respectively, of the snow heat conductivity, and  $\Gamma_{\kappa_s} = 1.3 \text{ J}\cdot\text{m}^{-2}\cdot\text{s}^{-1}\cdot\text{K}^{-1}$  is an empirical parameter.

## 2.4.6 Conclusions

A lake model suitable to predict the vertical temperature structure in lakes of various depths on time scales from a few hours to many years is developed. The model, termed FLake, is based on a two-layer parametric representation of the evolving temperature profile and on the integral budget of energy for the layers in question. The structure of the stratified layer between the upper mixed layer and the basin bottom, the lake thermocline, is described using the concept of self-similarity (assumed shape) of the temperature-depth curve. The same concept is used to describe the temperature structure of the thermally active upper layer of bottom sediments and of the ice and snow cover. An entrainment equation is used to compute the depth of a convectively-mixed layer. A relaxation-type equation is used to compute the wind-mixed layer depth in stable and neutral stratification, where a multi-limit formulation for the equilibrium mixed-layer depth accounts for the effects of the earth's rotation, of the surface buoyancy flux, and of the static stability in the thermocline. Both mixing regimes are treated with due regard for the volumetric character of solar radiation heating. Simple thermodynamic arguments are invoked to develop the evolution equations for the ice and snow depths. Using the integral (bulk) approach, the problem of solving partial differential equations (in depth and time) for the temperature and turbulence quantities is reduced to solving ordinary differential equations for the time-dependent parameters that specify the evolving temperature profile. The result is a computationally efficient lake model that incorporates much of the essential physics.

It must be emphasised that the empirical constants and parameters of FLake are not application-specific. That is, once they have been estimated using independent empirical and numerical data, they should not be re-evaluated when the model is applied to a particular lake. There are, of course, lake-specific external parameters, such as depth to the bottom and optical characteristics of water, but these are not part of the model physics. In this way FLake does not require “re-tuning”, a procedure that may improve an agreement with a limited amount of data and is sometimes justified. This procedure should, however, be considered as a bad practice and must be avoided whenever possible as it greatly reduces the predictive capacity of a physical model (Randall and Wielicki, 1997).

Apart from the depth to the bottom and the optical characteristics of lake water, the only lake-specific parameters are the depth  $L$  of the thermally active layer of bottom sediments and the temperature  $\theta_L$  at that depth. These parameters should be estimated only once for each lake, using observational data or empirical recipes (e.g. Fang and Stefan (1998)). In a similar way, the temperature at the bottom of the thermally active soil layer and the depth of that layer are estimated once and then used in an NWP model as two-dimensional external-parameter arrays.

The proposed lake model is intended for use, first of all, in NWP and climate models as a module (parameterization scheme) to predict the lake surface temperature. Apart from NWP and climate modelling, practical applications where simple bulk models are favoured over more accurate but more sophisticated models (e.g. second-order turbulence closures) include modelling aquatic ecosystems. For ecosystem modelling, a sophisticated physical module is most often not required because of insufficient knowledge of chemistry and biology.

## Appendix. A Summary of Model Parameters

Table 2.2: Empirical Constants and Parameters

Constant/ Parameter	Recommended Value/ Computed from	Comments
$C_{c1}$	0.17	
$C_{c2}$	1.0	
$C_n$	0.5	
$C_s$	10	
$C_i$	20	
$C_{rh}$	0.03	
$C_{rc}$	0.003	
$C_\theta$	Eq. (2.85)	
$C_\theta^{min}$	0.5	
$C_\theta^{max}$	0.8	
$C_{\theta\theta}$	Eq. (2.86)	
$C_Q$	$2C_{\theta\theta}/C_\theta$	
$C_{B1}$	2/3	
$C_{B2}$	3/5	
$C_I$	1/2	Optionally Eq. (2.90)
$C_S$	1/2	
$\Phi'_\theta(0)$	Eqs. (2.84) and (2.85)	
$\Phi'_{B1}(0)$	2	
$\Phi'_I(0)$	1	Optionally Eq. (2.89)
$\Phi'_I(1)$	1	Optionally Eq. (2.89)
$\Phi'_S(0)$	1	
$\Phi_{*I}$	2	
$H_I^{max}$	3 m	

Table 2.3: Thermodynamic Parameters

Notation	Parameter	Dimensions	Estimate/ Computed from
$g$	Acceleration due to gravity	$\text{m}\cdot\text{s}^{-2}$	9.81
$\theta_r$	Temperature of maximum density of fresh water	K	277.13
$\theta_f$	Fresh water freezing point	K	273.15
$\alpha_T$	Coefficient in the fresh-water equation of state	$\text{K}^{-2}$	$1.6509 \cdot 10^{-5}$
$\rho_w$	Density of fresh water	$\text{kg}\cdot\text{m}^{-3}$	Eq. (2.48)
$\rho_r$	Maximum density of fresh water	$\text{kg}\cdot\text{m}^{-3}$	$1.0 \cdot 10^3$
$\rho_i$	Density of ice	$\text{kg}\cdot\text{m}^{-3}$	$9.1 \cdot 10^2$
$\rho_s$	Density of snow	$\text{kg}\cdot\text{m}^{-3}$	Eq. (2.92)
$L_f$	Latent heat of fusion	$\text{J}\cdot\text{kg}^{-1}$	$3.3 \cdot 10^5$
$c_w$	Specific heat of water	$\text{J}\cdot\text{kg}^{-1}\cdot\text{K}^{-1}$	$4.2 \cdot 10^3$
$c_i$	Specific heat of ice	$\text{J}\cdot\text{kg}^{-1}\cdot\text{K}^{-1}$	$2.1 \cdot 10^3$
$c_s$	Specific heat of snow	$\text{J}\cdot\text{kg}^{-1}\cdot\text{K}^{-1}$	$2.1 \cdot 10^3$
$\kappa_w$	Molecular heat conductivity of water	$\text{J}\cdot\text{m}^{-1}\cdot\text{s}^{-1}\cdot\text{K}^{-1}$	$5.46 \cdot 10^{-1}$
$\kappa_i$	Molecular heat conductivity of ice	$\text{J}\cdot\text{m}^{-1}\cdot\text{s}^{-1}\cdot\text{K}^{-1}$	2.29
$\kappa_s$	Molecular heat conductivity of snow	$\text{J}\cdot\text{m}^{-1}\cdot\text{s}^{-1}\cdot\text{K}^{-1}$	Eq. (2.93)

## Bibliography

- [1] S. Belamari. Report on uncertainty estimates of an optimal bulk formulation for surface turbulent fluxes. Technical report, Marine Environment and Security for the European Area - Integrated Project (MERSEA IP), Deliverable D4.1.2, 29p, 2005.
- [2] B. Blanke and P. Delecluse. Variability of the tropical atlantic ocean simulated by a general circulation model with two different mixed-layer physics. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, 23:1363–1388, 1993.
- [3] P. Bougeault and P. Lacarrère. Parameterization of orography-induced turbulence in a mesobeta scale model. *Mon. Wea. Rev.*, 117:1872–1890, 1989.
- [4] M. A. Brunke, C. W. Fairall, X. Zeng, L. Eymard, and J. A. Curry. Which bulk aerodynamic algorithms are least problematic in computing ocean surface turbulent fluxes? *J. Clim.*, 16:619–636, 2003.
- [5] G. Caniaux, S. Belamari, H. Giordani, and A. Paci. A one Year Sea Surface Heat Budget in the North Eastern Atlantic Basin during the POMME Experiment : Part II : Flux Correction. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, 110:15pp, 2005.
- [6] H. Charnock. Wind stress on a water surface. *Q. J. R. Meteorol. Soc.*, 81(350):639–640, 1955.
- [7] J. W. Deardorff. Convective velocity and temperature scales for unstable planetary boundary layer and for rayleigh convection. *J. Atmos. Sci.*, 29:1211–1212, 1970.

- [8] J. W. Deardorff. Preliminary results from numerical integration of the unstable planetary boundary layers. *J. Atmos. Sci.*, 27:1209–1211, 1970.
- [9] J. W. Deardorff. Rate of growth of the nocturnal boundary layer. In *Symposium on Air Pollution, Turbulence and Diffusion, Las Cruces, N. M., NCAR ms. No. 71-246*, 1971.
- [10] J. W. Deardorff. A multi-limit mixed-layer entrainment formulation. *J. Phys. Oceanogr.*, 13:988–1002, 1983.
- [11] C. W. Fairall, E. F. Bradley, J. E. Hare, A. A. Grachev, and Edson J. B. Bulk parameterization of airsea fluxes: Updates and verification for the coare algorithm. *J. Clim.*, 16:571–591, 2003.
- [12] C.W. Fairall, E. F. Bradley, D. P. Rogers, J. B. Edson, and G. S. Young. Bulk parameterization of air-sea fluxes for tropical ocean-global atmosphere coupled-ocean atmosphere response experiment. *J. Geophys. Res.*, 101:3747–3764, 1996.
- [13] X. Fang and H. G. Stefan. Temperature variability in lake sediments. *Water Resour. Res.*, 34:717–729, 1998.
- [14] D. M. Farmer. Penetrative convection in the absence of mean shear. *Q. J. R. Meteorol. Soc.*, 101:869–891, 1975.
- [15] D. M. Farmer and E. C. Carmack. Wind mixing and restratification in a lake near the temperature of maximum density. *J. Phys. Oceanogr.*, 11:1516–1533, 1981.
- [16] E. Fedorovich, R. Conzemius, and D. Mironov. Convective entrainment into a shear-free, linearly stratified atmosphere: bulk models reevaluated through large eddy simulations. *J. Atmos. Sci.*, 61:281–295, 2004.
- [17] B. N. Filyushkin and Y. Z. Miropolskij. Seasonal variability of the upper thermocline and self-similarity of temperature profiles. *Okeanol.*, 21:416–424, 1981.
- [18] Philippe Gaspar, Yves Grgoris, and Jean-Michel Lefevre. A simple eddy kinetic energy model for simulations of the oceanic vertical mixing: Tests at station papa and long-term upper ocean study site. *J. Geophys. Res.*, 95(C9):16179–16193, 1990.
- [19] H. Giordani and G. Caniaux. Diagnosing Vertical Motion in the Equatorial Atlantic. *Ocean Dynamics*, 61(12):1995–2018, 2011.
- [20] H. Giordani, G. Caniaux, L. Prieur, A. Paci, and S. Giraud. A One Year Mesoscale Simulation of the Northeast Atlantic : Mixed Layer Heat and Mass Budgets during the POMME Experiment. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, 110(C07S08):19pp, 2005.
- [21] H. Giordani, J. Noilhan, P. Lacarrere, P. Bessemoulin, and P. Mascart. Modelling the surface processes and the atmospheric boundary layer for semi-arid conditions. *Agric. and For. Meteorol.*, 80:263–287, 1996.
- [22] I. Zverev Golosov, S. and A. Terzhevik. Modelling thermal structure and heat interaction between a water column and bottom sediments. Technical report, Report No. 3220 [LUTVDG/(TVVR-3220) 1-41(1998)], Dept. of Water Resources Engineering, Inst. of Technology, Univ. of Lund, Lund, Sweden, 41 p, 1998.

- [23] C. W. Fairall Gosnell, R. and P. J. Webster. The sensible heat of rainfall in the tropical ocean. *J. Geophys. Res.*, 100(C9):18437–18442, 1995.
- [24] A. A. Grachev and C. W. Fairall. Dependence of the monin-obukhov stability parameter on the bulk richardson number over the ocean. *J. Appl. Meteorol.*, 36:406–414, 1997.
- [25] J. E. Hare, P. O. G. Persson, C. W. Fairall, and J. B. Edson. Behavior of charnocks relationship for high wind conditions. In *13th Symp. on Boundary Layers and Turbulence, Amer. Meteor. Soc., Dallas, TX*, 252-255, 1999.
- [26] E. Heise, M. Lange, B. Ritter, and R. Schrodin. Improvement and validation of the multilayer soil model. Technical report, COSMO Newsletter, No. 3, Consortium for Small-Scale Modelling, Deutscher Wetterdienst, Offenbach am Main, Germany, 198-203, 2003.
- [27] J. Imberger. The diurnal mixed layer. *Limnol. Oceanogr.*, 30:737–770, 1985.
- [28] T. Jonas, A. Y. Terzhevik, D. V. Mironov, and A. Wuest. Investigation of radiatively-driven convection in an ice covered lake using temperature microstructure technique. *J. Geophys. Res.*, 108(14):1–18, 2003.
- [29] P. Josse, G. Caniaux, H. Giordani, and S. Planton. Intercomparaison of oceanic and atmospheric forced and coupled mesoscale simulations. Part I: Surface fluxes. *Annales Geophysicae*, 17:566–576, 1999.
- [30] L.H. Kantha and C.A. Clayson. An improved mixed layer model for geophysical applications. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, 99(C12):25235–25266, 1994.
- [31] I. R. Khakimov. The wind profile in the neutrally stratified atmospheric boundary layer. *Izv. Akad. Nauk SSSR. Fizika Atmosfery i Okeana*, 12:628–630, 1976.
- [32] J.-W. Kim. A generalized bulk model of the oceanic mixed layer. *J. Phys. Oceanogr.*, 6:686–695, 1976.
- [33] S. A. Kitaigorodskii. On the computation of the thickness of the wind-mixing layer in the ocean. *Izv. AN SSSR. Ser. geofiz.*, 3:425–431, 1960.
- [34] S. A. Kitaigorodskii and S. M. Joffre. In search of simple scaling for the heights of the stratified atmospheric boundary layer. *Tellus*, 40A:419–433, 1988.
- [35] and Rooth C. Kraus, E. B. Temperature and steady state vertical heat flux in the ocean surface layers. *Tellus*, 19:231–238, 1961.
- [36] E. B. Kraus. *Atmosphere-ocean interactions*. Oxford University press, London, 1972.
- [37] W.G. Large, J.C. McWilliams, and S. Doney. Ocean vertical mixing : a review and a model with nonlocal boundary layer parameterization. *Reviews of Geophysics*, 32(4):363–403, 1994.
- [38] J. Launiainen and B. Cheng. Modelling of ice thermodynamics in natural water bodies. *Cold. Reg. Sci. Technol.*, 27:153–178, 1998.
- [39] C. Lebaupin-Brossier, V. Ducrocq, and H. Giordani. Two-way one-dimensional high-resolution airsea coupled modelling applied to mediterranean heavy rain events. *Q. J. R. Meteorol. Soc.*, 135:187–204, 2009.

- [40] C. Lebeaupin. *Etude du couplage ocan-atmosphre associ aux pisodes de pluies intenses en rgion mditerranenne*. PhD thesis, University Paul Sabatier, Toulouse, France, 2007.
- [41] W.T. Liu, K.B. Katsaros, and J.A. Businger. Bulk parameterization of air-sea exchanges of heat and water vapor including the molecular constraints at the interface. *J. Atmos. Sci.*, 36:1722–1735, 1979.
- [42] J.-F. Louis. A parametric model of vertical eddy fluxes in the atmosphere. *Bound.-Lay. Meteorol.*, 17:187–202, 1979.
- [43] P. Mascart, J. Noilhan, and H. Giordani. A modified parameterization of flux-profile relationships in the surface layer using different roughness length values for heat and momentum. *Bound.-Layer Meteorol.*, 72:331–344, 1995.
- [44] D. Mironov and E. Fedorovich. On the limiting effect of the earth’s rotation on the depth of a stably stratified boundary layer. *Q. J. R. Meteorol. Soc.*, 136:1473–1480, 2010.
- [45] D. Mironov and B. Ritter. A new sea ice model for gme. Technical report, Technical Note, Deutscher Wetterdienst, Offenbach am Main, Germany, 12 p, 2004.
- [46] D. Mironov, A. Terzhevik, G. Kirillin, T. Jonas, J. Malm, and D. Farmer. Radiatively driven convection in ice-covered lakes: Observations, scaling, and a mixed layer model. *J. Geophys. Res.*, 107(7):1–16, 2002.
- [47] D. V. Mironov. Parameterization of lakes in numerical weather prediction. description of a lake model. Technical report, COSMO Technical Report, No. 11, Deutscher Wetterdienst, Offenbach am Main, Germany, 41 pp, 2008.
- [48] D. V. Mironov, S. D. Golosov, S. S. Zilitinkevich, K. D. Kreiman, and A. Yu. Terzhevik. *Modelling Air-Lake Interaction. Physical Background*, chapter Seasonal changes of temperature and mixing conditions in a lake, pages 74–90. Springer-Verlag, Berlin, etc., 1991.
- [49] D. V. Mironov and L. N. Karlin. Penetrative convection due to surface cooling with vertically distributed heating. *Dokl. Akad. Nauk SSSR.*, 309:1336–1340, 1989.
- [50] D. V. Mironov and A. Yu. Terzhevik. Spring convection in ice-covered fresh-water lakes. *Izv. Akad. Nauk SSSR. Fizika Atmosfery i Okeana*, 36:627–634, 2000.
- [51] S. Mondon and J.-L. Redelsperger. Study of a fair weather boundary layer in toga-coare: Parameterization of surface fluxes in large-scale and regional models for light wind conditions. *Bound.-Layer Meteorol.*, 88:4776, 1998.
- [52] R. T. Pollard, P. B. Rhines, and R. O. R. Y. Thompson. The deepening of the wind-mixed layer. *Geophys. Fluid Dyn.*, 3:381–404, 1973.
- [53] J. F. Price, R. A. Weller, and R. Pinkel. Diurnal cycling: observations and models of the upper ocean response to diurnal heating. *J. Geophys. Res.*, 91:8411–8427, 1986.
- [54] D. A. Randall and B. A. Wielicki. Measurements, models, and hypotheses in the atmospheric sciences. *Bull. Amer. Met. Soc.*, 78:399–406, 1997.
- [55] C. G. Rossby and R. B. Montgomery. The layer of frictional influence in wind and ocean currents. *Pap. Phys. Oceanogr. Meteorol.*, 3:1–101, 1935.

- [56] S. D. Smith. Coefficients for sea surface wind stress, heat flux, and wind profiles as a function of wind speed and temperature. *J. Geophys. Res.*, 93:15467–15472, 1988.
- [57] A. V. Soloviev. Isquothin thermal structure of the ocean surface layer in the polymode-77 region, *izvestiya. Atmos. Oceanic Phys.*, 15:750–754, 1979.
- [58] A. V. Soloviev and N. V. Vershinskii. The vertical structure of the thin surface layer of the ocean under conditions of low wind speed. *Deep-Sea Res.*, 29:1437–1449, 1982.
- [59] P. Mlkki Tamsalu, R. and K. Myrberg. Self-similarity concept in marine system modelling. *Geophysica*, 2:51–68, 1997.
- [60] R. Tamsalu and K. Myrberg. A theoretical and experimental study of the self-similarity concept. Technical report, Report series of the Finnish Institute of Marine Research, 1998.
- [61] M. Wade, G. Caniaux, Y. DuPenhoat, M. Dengler, H. Giordani, and R. Hummels. A one-dimensional modeling study of the diurnal cycle in the equatorial atlantic at the PIRATA buoys during the EGEE-3 campaign. *Ocean Dynamics*, 61(1):1–20, 2011.
- [62] O. Zeman. Parameterization of the dynamics of stable boundary layers and nocturnal jets. *J. Atmos. Sci.*, 36:792–804, 1979.
- [63] S. Zilitinkevich and A. Baklanov. Calculation of the height of the stable boundary layer in practical applications. *Bound.-Layer Meteorol.*, 105:389–409, 2002.
- [64] S. Zilitinkevich, A. Baklanov, J. Rost, A.-S. Smedman, V. Lykosov, and P. Calanca. Diagnostic and prognostic equations for the depth of the stably stratified ekman boundary layer. *Q. J. R. Meteorol. Soc.*, 128:25–46, 2002.
- [65] S. S. Zilitinkevich. On the determination of the height of the ekman boundary layer. *Bound.-Layer Meteorol.*, 3:141–145, 1972.
- [66] S. S. Zilitinkevich. Comments on a model for the dynamics of the inversion above a convective boundary layer. *J. Atmos. Sci.*, 32:991–992, 1975.
- [67] S. S. Zilitinkevich, D. V. Chalikov, and Yu. D. Resnyansky. Modelling the oceanic upper layer. *Oceanologica Acta*, 2:219–240, 1979.
- [68] S. S. Zilitinkevich and D. V. Mironov. A multi-limit formulation for the equilibrium depth of a stably stratified boundary layer. *Bound.-Layer Meteorol.*, 81:325–351, 1996.
- [69] S.S. Zilitinkevich. *Turbulent Penetrative Convection*. Avebury Technical, Aldershot, 1991.



# Chapter 3

## Urban and artificial areas

### Contents

---

<b>3.1</b>	<b>Introduction</b>	<b>53</b>
<b>3.2</b>	<b>Presentation of the Town Energy Budget scheme</b>	<b>54</b>
3.2.1	Objectives	54
3.2.2	Town geometry description	55
3.2.3	Temperature evolution equations	56
3.2.4	Water reservoirs evolution	58
3.2.5	Snow effects	59
3.2.6	Longwave budget	59
3.2.7	Solar radiation	60
	Direct solar radiation	60
	Solar radiation reflections	61
3.2.8	Anthropogenic fluxes	62
3.2.9	Turbulent fluxes	62
	Treatment of the urban roughness sublayer, momentum fluxes	62
	Considerations on the turbulent transfer of moisture	63
	Roughness length for momentum fluxes	63
	Heat fluxes between roofs and atmosphere	64
	Wind inside the Canyon	64
	Sensible and latent heat fluxes in the canyon	65
	Canyon temperature and humidity	66
	Averaged fluxes at town scale	67
	Solar radiation reflections	67

---

### 3.1 Introduction

Due to the complexity and diversity of towns around the world, conclusions drawn from experimental studies on the interaction between the atmosphere and urbanized areas most of the time are limited either to a particular site or physical processes. To overcome this problem, numerical studies are aimed to simulate the urban climatology or energy budget. However, they still follow some simplified approaches.

Building-resolving models - i.e. models in which individual building shapes are described - allow the detailed examination of some processes (radiative effects see for e.g. Terjung *et al.* (1980), or wind channeling), but because of computational cost, applications are limited to local urbanization and comfort studies. Simpler building-averaged models have also been developed. The most famous is the 'canyon' model, from Oke and colleagues developed during the seventies, dedicated to urban streets: a road is bordered by two facing building walls. Several numerical models are built using the canyon geometry (Johnson *et al.* (1991), Mills (1993), Arnfield *et al.* (1998)) to study radiative trapping, surface energy budgets (using multiple facets for each surface) or wind in the canyon.

The two model types presented above are used in urban climatology in order to understand town energetics. The next modelling step is to perform a coupling between the urban surface and the atmosphere in mesoscale atmospheric models. The most common way to do this is to use a vegetation-atmosphere transfer model whose parameters have been modified (Seaman *et al.* (1989), Menut (1997)), as opposed to an urban model. Cities are then modeled as bare soil or a concrete plate. The roughness length is often large (one to a few meters, see Wieringa (1993) or Petersen (1997)). The soil moisture availability (or the soil depth) is reduced, so that the Bowen ratio is shifted towards high values (large sensible heat flux). The most recent works tend to simulate other factors, such as heat storage, by the use of a concrete canopy above the surface. A horizontal plate is in radiative interaction with the surface in Best (1998), and the treatment is similar to a forest canopy in Soux *et al.* (1998). The Taha (1999) mesoscale study uses a semi-empirical formulation for the heat storage flux - the Objective Hysteresis Model by Grimmond *et al.* (1991a).

This shows the gap between the state of the art in urban climatology and its parameterization in atmospheric models. The objective of the present paper is to present an urban model which links the climatologists approach of city representation to an atmospheric model.

The Town Energy Budget (TEB) scheme is built following the canyon approach, generalized in order to represent larger horizontal scales. The physics treated by the scheme is relatively complete. Due to the complex shape of the city surface, the urban energy budget is split into different parts: **three** surface energy budgets are considered: one for the roofs, roads, and walls. Orientation effects are averaged for roads and walls. Up to two energy budgets are added for snow when it is present on roofs or roads. Some of the physics were derived from the literature (long wave radiation or thermal conduction through the surfaces), since they are classically assumed to estimate temperatures in conditions without feedback towards the atmosphere (during nights with calm wind). However, most parts of the physics need an original approach (short wave radiation, thermodynamical and anthropogenic flux treatment, rain and snow), since they occur when interaction with the atmosphere is strong.

## 3.2 Presentation of the Town Energy Budget scheme

### 3.2.1 Objectives

The TEB model is aimed to simulate the turbulent fluxes into the atmosphere at the surface of a mesoscale atmospheric model which is covered by buildings, roads, or any artificial material. It should parameterize both the urban surface and the roughness sublayer, so that the atmospheric model only 'sees' a constant flux layer as its lower boundary.

It must be considered as a part of the surface parameterization of the atmospheric model. The fluxes should be computed for each land occupation type by the appropriate scheme, and then averaged in the atmospheric

model grid mesh, with respect to the proportion occupied by each type. For example, a partition should be: (1) sea; (2) inland water; (3) natural and cultivated terrestrial surface; (4) towns. The following fluxes are calculated: latent and sensible heat fluxes ( $\text{W m}^{-2}$ ), upward radiative fluxes ( $\text{W m}^{-2}$ ) and momentum fluxes along the axes of the model ( $\text{m}^2 \text{s}^{-2}$ ).

### 3.2.2 Town geometry description

Numerous fine-scale studies on building climatology exist. In those, several individual buildings are usually present in order to study their radiative interaction, the wind channeling effects, or the building insulation. The **canyon** concept, developed by city climatologists (e.g. Oke (1987)), uses such a framework: it considers a single road, bordered by facing buildings. In these studies, models are, at best, forced by atmospheric data (radiation, wind above the roofs) but are not in interaction with it.

The TEB model is aimed to parameterize town-atmosphere dynamic and thermodynamic interactions. It is applicable for mesoscale atmospheric models (a grid mesh larger than a few hundred meters). Then, spatial averaging of the town characteristics as well as its effect on the atmosphere, are necessary. The individual shapes of each building are no longer taken into account. The TEB geometry is based on the canyon hypothesis. However, a single canyon would be too restrictive at the considered horizontal scale.

We therefore use the following original city representation:

1. the buildings have the same height and width (in the model mesh). The roof level is at the surface level of the atmospheric model.
2. buildings are located along identical roads, the length of which is considered far greater than their width. The space contained between two facing buildings is defined as a canyon.
3. any road orientation is possible, and they all exist with the same probability. This hypothesis allows the computation of averaged forcing for road and wall surfaces. In other words, when the canyon orientation appears in a formula (with respect to the sun or the wind direction), it is averaged over  $360^\circ$ . In this way, no discretization is performed on the orientation.

These hypotheses, as well as the formulations chosen for the physics (see hereafter), allow the development of a relatively simple scheme. The parameters describing the city are displayed in Table 3.1, and the scheme variables can be found in Table 3.2.

**The TEB model does not use one urban surface temperature** (representative of the entire urban cover), but **three** surface temperatures, representative of roofs, roads and walls. There are two reasons for that:

- urban climatologists generally consider complex (non-flat) geometry cases, in particular the 'canyon' geometry. In order to be consistent with their findings, the TEB model uses a complex surface consisting of multiple explicit energy budgets.
- one spatially-averaged surface temperature is often used in soil-vegetation schemes, in order to compute the turbulent fluxes towards the atmosphere following the Monin-Obukhov similarity theory. However, over towns, the use of only one surface temperature is debatable, because it has been observed that the Monin-Obukhov similarity theory does not apply for temperature in the urban roughness sublayer.

The second point will be addressed in more detail in section 3.2.9. The parameters of the scheme depend directly on building shapes and construction materials. This makes the TEB scheme easy to initialize,

without the need for any atmospheric data for parameter tuning. Construction material characteristics can be found in the literature (e.g. see Oke (1988)).

One must separately treat road and walls, as they react differently to all the physical processes (sky viewing, thermal structure, source of heating inside the buildings, or the presence of water or snow on the road). In contrast, the sunlit and shadowed walls are not treated separately, as the two facing walls are identical for all processes, except one: the direct solar radiation. Note that the two walls behave similarly for the scattered solar radiation (i.e. in cloudy conditions). The problem is that it is not clear how to separate sunlit and shadowed walls. It would be easy if there was only one street direction, but at the town scale, this is not true, and streets parallel or perpendicular to the sun direction are found. To treat separately the walls according to illumination by the sun, would then necessitate a separate treatment for the street directions. A discretization for the streets should be performed at least every 45 or 30°, leading respectively to four or six energy budgets for roads, and twice as many for walls. Furthermore, the effect of the infra-red radiation non-linearities caused by a unique wall temperature is very small: supposing a canyon with a road width equal to the buildings height (leading to a sky-view factor for the walls of  $\Psi_w = 0.3$ , see section 3.2.6) and a wall emissivity of 0.85, the difference in the canyon top budget between two walls at 290 K or two walls at 280 and 300 K is only  $1.5 \text{ W m}^{-2}$ . Therefore, for sake of scheme simplicity, only one energy budget is chosen for the walls. Particular attention is still paid to the solar radiation budget, and the validation presented in section 3.2.7 shows it is accurate at canyon scale.

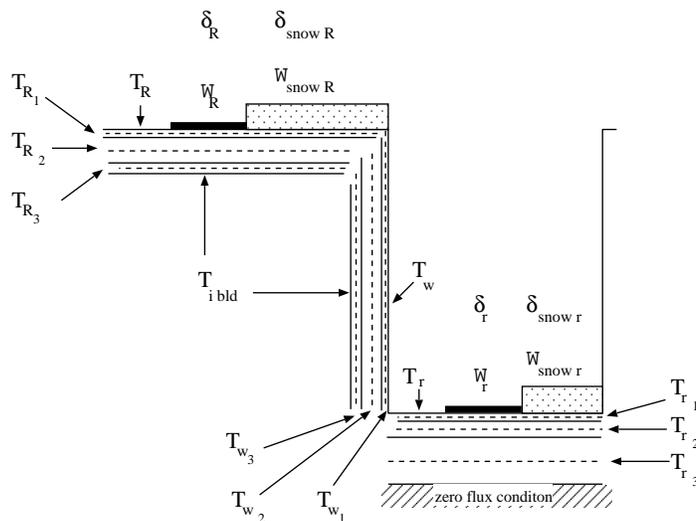


Figure 3.1: Canyon geometry in the TEB scheme ,and its prognostic variables.

### 3.2.3 Temperature evolution equations

As discussed above, the urban surface is very inhomogeneous with respect to shape and building materials. Urban climatologists need at least four surfaces to describe it: the roof, the road, and two facing walls. The problem considered here (the evaluation of the turbulent and radiative fluxes from the urban cover to the atmosphere) allows the treatment of only three types of surfaces (roof, road, wall), while keeping enough accuracy to correctly represent the different terms of the surface energy budget. This is why the TEB model uses **three** surface temperatures,  $T_R$ ,  $T_r$  and  $T_w$ , representative of roofs, roads and walls, respectively.

Furthermore, in order to treat the conduction fluxes to or from the building interiors (roof, wall) or the ground (road), each surface type is discretized into several layers (Figure 3.1). Per convention, the layer with subscript 1 is the one in contact with the air (hereafter 'surface layer').

The equations describing the evolution of the temperatures of the layers (representative of the middle of the layer) are based on energy budget considerations.

The prognostic equations for the surface layers of the roof, wall and road respectively, read:

$$\begin{aligned} C_{R_1} \frac{\partial T_{R_1}}{\partial t} &= (1 - \delta_{snowR}) \frac{1}{d_{R_1}} (S_R^* + L_R^* - H_R - LE_R - G_{R_{1,2}}) \\ &\quad + \delta_{snowR} \frac{1}{d_{R_1}} (G_{R_{snow,1}} - G_{R_{1,2}}) \\ C_{w_1} \frac{\partial T_{w_1}}{\partial t} &= \frac{1}{d_{w_1}} (S_w^* + L_w^* - H_w - G_{w_{1,2}}) \\ C_{r_1} \frac{\partial T_{r_1}}{\partial t} &= (1 - \delta_{snowr}) \frac{1}{d_{r_1}} (S_r^* + L_r^* - H_r - LE_r - G_{r_{1,2}}) \\ &\quad + \delta_{snowr} \frac{1}{d_{r_1}} (G_{r_{snow,1}} - G_{r_{1,2}}) \end{aligned}$$

These three equations can be written in a generic way:

$$C_{\star_1} \frac{\partial T_{\star_1}}{\partial t} = (1 - \delta_{snow\star}) \frac{1}{d_{\star_1}} (S_{\star}^* + L_{\star}^* - H_{\star} - LE_{\star} - G_{\star_{1,2}}) + \delta_{snow\star} \frac{1}{d_{\star_1}} (G_{\star_{snow,1}} - G_{\star_{1,2}}) \quad (3.1)$$

Where, the subscript  $\star$  stands either for  $R$ ,  $r$  or  $w$ , describing roof, road and wall variables (only roof and road for water variables) respectively. This convention is used in the rest of this paper.

$T_{\star_k}$  is the temperature of the  $k^{ith}$  layer of the considered surface (in the above equations,  $k = 1$ ).  $C_{\star_k}$  represents the heat capacity,  $\lambda_k$  the thermal conductivity and  $d_{\star_k}$  the layer thickness.

The fluxes  $S_{\star}^*$ ,  $L_{\star}^*$ ,  $H_{\star}$ ,  $LE_{\star}$ ,  $G_{\star_{1,2}}$  and  $G_{\star_{snow,1}}$  stand for net solar radiation, net infra-red radiation, sensible heat flux, latent heat flux, and conduction heat flux between surface layer and the underlying layer, conduction heat fluxes between the base of the snow mantel and the surface, respectively.  $\delta_{snow\star}$  is the snow fraction on the surface (which is zero on the walls).

It is assumed that the surface layer of each surface is sufficiently thin such that the layer averaged temperature can be used to evaluate the radiative and turbulent surface fluxes. This means that the surface temperatures  $T_{\star}$  are computed as:

$$T_{\star} = T_{\star_1}$$

For the sake of clarity, the  $_1$  subscript will be removed in the next sections.

The other layer temperatures evolve according to a simple heat conduction equation. For the  $k^{ith}$  layer:

$$C_{\star_k} \frac{\partial T_{\star_k}}{\partial t} = \frac{1}{d_{\star_k}} (G_{\star_{k-1,k}} - G_{\star_{k,k+1}}) \quad (3.2)$$

In these equations, the conduction flux between layers  $k$  and  $k + 1$  reads (for  $k < n$  where  $n$  is the number of layers):

$$G_{\star_{k,k+1}} = \bar{\lambda}_{k,k+1} \frac{T_{\star_k} - T_{\star_{k+1}}}{\frac{1}{2}(d_{\star_k} + d_{\star_{k+1}})} \quad (3.3)$$

with

$$\bar{\lambda}_{k,k+1} = \frac{d_{\star_k} + d_{\star_{k+1}}}{(d_{\star_k}/\lambda_k) + (d_{\star_{k+1}}/\lambda_{k+1})} \quad (3.4)$$

The lower boundary conditions for the roofs and walls are given by the building internal temperature, the road one being represented as a zero flux lower boundary. The fluxes between the  $n^{th}$  layer (the inner layer) and the underlying material are then:

$$G_{R_{n,n+1}} = \lambda_n \frac{T_{R_n} - T_{i_{bld}}}{\frac{1}{2}(d_{R_n})} \quad (3.5)$$

$$G_{w_{n,n+1}} = \lambda_n \frac{T_{w_n} - T_{i_{bld}}}{\frac{1}{2}(d_{w_n})} \quad (3.6)$$

$$G_{r_{n,n+1}} = 0 \quad (3.7)$$

Note that the number of layers for roof, wall and road can differ. In this study, three layers for each surface are chosen. Due to large temperature gradients which can exist, and because of the multi-layer structure of the walls or the roofs, it is recommended that at least 3 layers are used to represent each surface.

### 3.2.4 Water reservoirs evolution

Liquid or solid precipitation intercepted by urban surfaces is rarely addressed in the literature, except for sewer system and hydrological considerations. An exception is Grimmond *et al.* (1991b), however, in which the model used was initially dedicated to forest studies, and is limited to the water budget, computed from the Penman Monteith equation. They added anthropogenic water sources and used the Grimmond *et al.* (1991a) heat storage flux formulation.

Thanks to the presence of the surface temperatures in the TEB scheme, the saturation specific humidity, and then the turbulent latent heat flux can be computed more easily (see section 3.2.9).

The liquid precipitation is intercepted by both roofs and roads. There is runoff from roofs and roads to the sewer system. Roads and roofs can be covered by a certain amount of water, parameterized by the variables  $W_r$  and  $W_R$ , respectively. These surfaces are impervious. Then, instead of defining a relative humidity, it is more judicious to treat the fraction of surface covered by the water,  $\delta_r$  and  $\delta_R$ . This part is saturated (fractional water pools), while the other part is assumed to be dry. Water evaporates when the air humidity is not saturated until all water has disappeared from the impervious surface.

The snow-free fraction of the surface occupied by liquid water is computed as:  $\delta_{\star} = (W_{\star}/W_{\star_{max}})^{\frac{2}{3}}$ , (Noilhan and Planton (1989)), where  $W_{\star_{max}}$  is the maximum water amount on the surface.

Furthermore, urban dew is taken into account (in case of negative latent heat flux), as its occurrence can have significant effects, as pointed out by Richards (1998). It requires a special treatment: when conditions are present for dew to occur (air humidity larger than the surface saturation humidity), the surface is considered wet ( $\delta_{\star} = 1$ ). This allows then a (negative) latent heat flux, which can fill the interception reservoirs. These treatments are deduced from those for the foliage interception reservoirs in vegetation schemes (Deardorff (1978), Noilhan and Planton (1989)).

Addition of an anthropogenic water source was not retained in TEB, because it does not compute evaporation over gardens or parks. Irrigation water input should be taken into account through the vegetation

scheme dedicated to these natural surfaces. However, anthropogenic fluxes of water vapor directly into the air exist in the scheme (see section 3.2.9), in order to represent factory release for example.

Finally, the water-reservoir evolution equation is (for roof or road):

$$\frac{\partial W_{*}}{\partial t} = R - LE_{*}/L_v \quad (W_{*} < W_{*max}) \quad (3.8)$$

where  $R$  is the rain rate ( $\text{kg m}^{-2} \text{s}^{-1}$ ) and  $L_v$  is the latent heat of vaporization.

The reservoirs are of small capacity (the water in excess is lost as runoff). They are set equal to  $W_{Rmax}=W_{rmax}=1 \text{ kg m}^{-2}$ , which is well in the range of values explored by Grimmond and Oke (1991). The total depletion of the reservoirs by evaporation requires, in general, a few hours for daytime conditions.

### 3.2.5 Snow effects

Snow is intercepted by roofs and roads. A snow scheme is implemented on each surface type. Snow density, albedo, temperature and thickness of water equivalent depth are parameterized. Radiation, sensible heat flux, sublimation, conduction and melting are taken into account.

The evolution rate of snow albedo is enhanced (and its minimum value lowered) in order to represent car pollution (dirty snow). A time-dependent drainage term is included to take into account snow-plow work (if any).

The snow fraction on roof or road surfaces is set equal to a function of the snow interception reservoir ( $W_{snow*}$ ):  $\delta_{snow*} = (W_{snow*})/(W_{snow*} + W_{snow*max})$ . The parameter  $W_{snow*max}$  is set equal to  $1 \text{ kg m}^{-2}$ . The snow has an effect on:

- the energy budget of the surfaces (as part of the downward flux comes from the base of the snow),
- the heat fluxes from the road towards the canyon or from the roof towards the atmosphere,
- the radiative calculations for the canyon surfaces, because of the snow albedo, emissivity and temperature.

### 3.2.6 Longwave budget

The trapping of long-wave radiation by the canyon surfaces is computed with one re-emission taken into account (from the Johnson *et al.* (1991) formulation).

The sky-view factors are needed. They are computed for the TEB geometry (an infinite canyon) according to Noilhan (1981):

$$\Psi_r = [(h/w)^2 + 1]^{1/2} - h/w \quad (3.9)$$

$$\Psi_w = \frac{1}{2} \{h/w + 1 - [(h/w)^2 + 1]^{1/2}\} / (h/w) \quad (3.10)$$

These factors represent the fraction of sky seen from the road and one wall respectively, compared to the sky fraction that a flat horizontal surface would see without obstruction. The sky-factor for the roof is then equal to 1. If the buildings are very low,  $\Psi_r$  tends to 1 and  $\Psi_w$  to 0.5 (one wall then sees one half of the sky). In this case, longwave radiative fluxes from the roads will be undisturbed by the walls. On the contrary, if the buildings are very tall, both sky factors tend to zero, and radiative exchanges will mostly occur between the walls, and less energy will escape towards the sky.

The net longwave radiation absorbed by the snow-free road and wall surfaces is given as:

$$\begin{aligned}
 L_r^* = & \quad \epsilon_r \Psi_r L^\downarrow & - \epsilon_r \sigma T_r^4 & + \epsilon_r \epsilon_w (1 - \Psi_r) \sigma T_w^4 \\
 & + \epsilon_r (1 - \epsilon_w) (1 - \Psi_r) \Psi_w L^\downarrow & + \epsilon_r \epsilon_w (1 - \epsilon_w) (1 - \Psi_r) (1 - 2\Psi_w) \sigma T_w^4 \\
 & + \epsilon_r (1 - \epsilon_w) (1 - \Psi_r) \Psi_w \overline{\epsilon_r T_r^4}
 \end{aligned} \quad (3.11)$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 L_w^* = & \quad \epsilon_w \Psi_w L^\downarrow & - \epsilon_w \sigma T_w^4 & + \epsilon_w \Psi_w \overline{\epsilon_r T_r^4} \\
 & + \epsilon_w^2 (1 - 2\Psi_w) \sigma T_w^4 & + \epsilon_w (1 - \overline{\epsilon_r}) \Psi_w \Psi_r L^\downarrow \\
 & + \epsilon_w (1 - \epsilon_w) \Psi_w (1 - 2\Psi_w) L^\downarrow & + \epsilon_w^2 (1 - \epsilon_w) (1 - 2\Psi_w)^2 \sigma T_w^4 \\
 & + \epsilon_w^2 (1 - \overline{\epsilon_r}) \Psi_w (1 - \Psi_r) \sigma T_w^4 & + \epsilon_w (1 - \epsilon_w) \Psi_w (1 - 2\Psi_w) \sigma \overline{\epsilon_r T_r^4}
 \end{aligned} \quad (3.12)$$

Where:

$$\begin{aligned}
 \overline{\epsilon_r} &= (1 - \delta_{snowr}) \epsilon_r + \delta_{snowr} \epsilon_{r_{snow}} \\
 \overline{\epsilon_r T_r^4} &= (1 - \delta_{snowr}) \epsilon_r T_r^4 + \delta_{snowr} \epsilon_{r_{snow}} T_{snowr}^4
 \end{aligned}$$

By inverting the snow-covered and snow-free road characteristics in Eq. 3.11, the longwave radiative budget on top of snow mantel can be defined. To deduce Eq.s 3.11 and 3.12, we used the fact that if  $\Psi_r$  represents the contribution of the sky to the road viewing, then  $(1 - \Psi_r)$  is the contribution of the two walls. For the budget of one wall, the sky-view factor is  $\Psi_w$ , the road view factor is  $\Psi_w$  (per symmetry), and the facing wall view factor is  $(1 - 2\Psi_w)$ .

### 3.2.7 Solar radiation

#### Direct solar radiation

Because of shadow effects, special computations are required to estimate the solar flux received either by the walls or the roads.

Let  $S^\downarrow$  be the direct solar radiation received by an **horizontal** surface at the first atmospheric model level. The roof surface receives this amount of radiation.

Let  $\theta$  be the angle between the sun direction and the canyon axis, and  $\lambda$  be the solar zenith angle (from zenith). Let us first consider a road perpendicular to the sun direction ( $\theta = \frac{\pi}{2}$ , Figure 3.2).  $\lambda_0 = \arctan(w/h)$  is defined as the zenith angle for which the sun begins to illuminate the road. It can be noted that whatever the sun position, one of the two walls is in shadow, the other one is (partially) in light.

The mean direct solar fluxes received by both walls and by the road, for a street direction perpendicular to the sun, are:

$$\begin{aligned}
 S_w^\downarrow(\theta = \frac{\pi}{2}) &= \begin{cases} \frac{1}{2} \frac{w}{h} S^\downarrow & \text{if } \lambda > \lambda_0 \\ \frac{1}{2} \tan(\lambda) S^\downarrow & \text{if } \lambda < \lambda_0 \end{cases} \\
 S_r^\downarrow(\theta = \frac{\pi}{2}) &= \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } \lambda > \lambda_0 \\ \left(1 - \frac{h}{w} \tan(\lambda)\right) S^\downarrow & \text{if } \lambda < \lambda_0 \end{cases}
 \end{aligned}$$

In order to take into account the other canyon orientations, one should replace  $w$  by  $w/\sin(\theta)$  in the above expressions, and then multiply the wall fluxes by  $\sin(\theta)$ . Then let  $\theta_0$  be the critical canyon orientation for which the road is no longer in the light (or for which the radiation is minimum if the sun is high enough), i.e.:

$$\theta_0 = \arcsin \left( \min \left[ \frac{w}{h} \frac{1}{\tan(\lambda)}; 1 \right] \right)$$

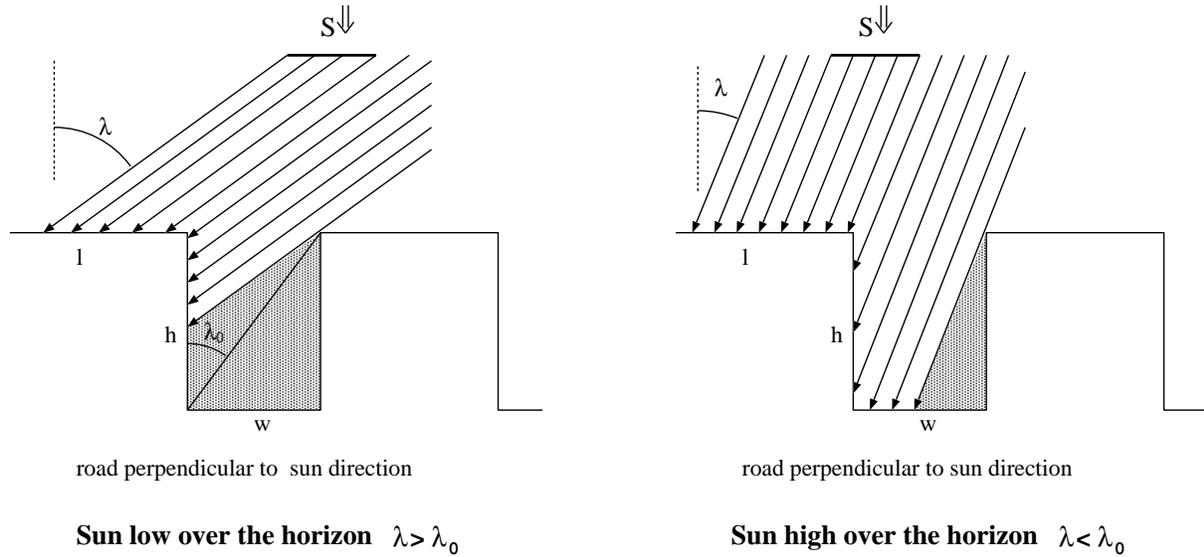


Figure 3.2: Solar radiation input for a road perpendicular to the sun azimuth. In the TEB scheme, the contribution of all the other road directions are averaged with this one.

Averaging a flux with respect to the canyon orientation is performed with two integrations, one between  $\theta = 0$  and  $\theta = \theta_0$ , and the other one between  $\theta = \theta_0$  and  $\theta = \frac{\pi}{2}$ . The direct solar fluxes for walls, roads and roofs then read:

$$S_r^\downarrow = S^\downarrow \left[ \frac{2\theta_0}{\pi} - \frac{2}{\pi} \frac{h}{w} \tan(\lambda) (1 - \cos(\theta_0)) \right] \quad (3.13)$$

$$S_w^\downarrow = S^\downarrow \left[ \frac{w}{h} \left( \frac{1}{2} - \frac{\theta_0}{\pi} \right) + \frac{1}{\pi} \tan(\lambda) (1 - \cos(\theta_0)) \right] \quad (3.14)$$

$$S_R^\downarrow = S^\downarrow \quad (3.15)$$

Note that from the previous equations, one can check the conservation relation  $S_r^\downarrow + 2\frac{h}{w}S_w^\downarrow = S^\downarrow$ .

### Solar radiation reflections

The scattered solar radiation received by the surfaces ( $S_*^\downarrow$ ) is directly deduced from the sky-view factors. Because of the canyon shape and the possible high albedo of the surfaces (white paint, snow), the shortwave radiative budget is computed by resolving a geometric system for an infinite number of reflections. The reflections are assumed to be isotropic: there is no specular reflection in this model. Details of the following calculations are given in Appendix A.

One defines  $M_*$  as the sum of the reflections against the road and wall:

$$M_r = \frac{R_r(0) + (1 - \Psi_r) \overline{\alpha_r} (R_w(0) + \Psi_w \alpha_w R_r(0))}{1 - (1 - 2\Psi_w) \alpha_w + (1 - \Psi_r) \Psi_w \overline{\alpha_r} \alpha_w} \quad (3.16)$$

$$M_w = \frac{R_w(0) + \Psi_w \alpha_w R_r(0)}{1 - (1 - 2\Psi_w) \alpha_w + (1 - \Psi_r) \Psi_w \overline{\alpha_r} \alpha_w} \quad (3.17)$$

with

$$R_r(0) = \overline{\alpha_r} S_r^\downarrow + \overline{\alpha_r} S_r^\uparrow$$

$$R_w(0) = \alpha_w S_w^\downarrow + \alpha_w S_w^\downarrow$$

$$\overline{\alpha_r} = (1 - \delta_{snowr})\alpha_r + \delta_{snowr}\alpha_{r_{snow}}$$

The total solar radiation absorbed by each of the surface types is:

$$S_r^* = (1 - \alpha_r)S_r^\downarrow + (1 - \alpha_r)S_r^\downarrow + (1 - \alpha_r)(1 - \Psi_r)M_w \quad (3.18)$$

$$S_w^* = (1 - \alpha_w)S_w^\downarrow + (1 - \alpha_w)S_w^\downarrow + (1 - \alpha_w)(1 - 2\Psi_w)M_w + (1 - \alpha_w)\Psi_w M_r \quad (3.19)$$

$$S_R^* = (1 - \alpha_R)S_R^\downarrow + (1 - \alpha_R)S_R^\downarrow \quad (3.20)$$

Note that in these equations, a specific albedo of the surfaces (glass, wet surface) for the direct solar radiation, would change only the  $\alpha_* S_*^\downarrow$  terms.

### 3.2.8 Anthropogenic fluxes

Due to human activity, heat and moisture are released towards the atmosphere. The two main sources come from domestic heating and from combustion.

Domestic heating is explicitly resolved by assuming a constant internal temperature, whatever the external temperature. The default value is 290.15 K. The heat is then released towards the wall/roof surfaces and then towards the atmosphere through the conduction flux formulation.

The combustion source is split into two contributions in the TEB model: traffic and industry. For each, the heat and moisture fluxes, averaged on the town surface ( $H_{traffic}$  and  $LE_{traffic}$ ,  $H_{industry}$  and  $LE_{industry}$ ), are specified by the user (from available information on the town activity).

However, these fluxes do **not** directly modify the surface energy budgets since they are released into the air. The traffic related fluxes will modify the canyon air budget (they are incorporated in Equation 3.24, see next section). The industry fluxes are assumed to influence the atmosphere directly.

### 3.2.9 Turbulent fluxes

#### Treatment of the urban roughness sublayer, momentum fluxes

In this section, the method to compute the turbulent fluxes between the surfaces and the atmospheric model will be presented. The resolution of the atmospheric model is far too low to be able to represent the urban roughness sublayer motions, as it applies to the mesoscale. The atmospheric models do not usually parameterize the exchange processes in this layer: it is done by the surface scheme. If the first atmospheric level is outside the roughness sublayer, the traditional surface layer formulations can be used to compute the turbulent fluxes. The problem is that the roughness sublayer can have a substantial extension over an urban surface (several tens of meters), and the first level of the atmospheric model (often a couple of tens of meters) is often within it.

It is therefore necessary to have a closer look to the parameterization of the fluxes. Feigenwinter *et al.* (1999) conducted measurements on a 50m height mast in the city of Basel (Switzerland). The authors found that the mechanical properties in the roughness sublayer (such as profiles of velocity variances, non-dimensionalized

velocity variances and spectra of wind components) behave similarly to rural surface layers. Furthermore, they concluded that these quantities are quite well parameterized within the Monin-Obukhov similarity theory, if local Monin-Obukhov length is applied.

Following their results, the TEB scheme computes the **momentum fluxes for the entire urban (or suburban) cover**, with a roughness length formulation and the stability coefficients of Mascart *et al.* (1995), whatever the relative positions of the atmospheric level and the roughness sublayer height.

In contrast, Feigenwinter *et al.* (1999) found that the temperature characteristics, and in particular the turbulent heat flux, cannot be satisfactorily reproduced by the Monin-Obukhov similitude framework. They attribute this discrepancy to 'thermal inhomogeneity and/or different source areas'. The use of one unique surface exchanging heat with the atmosphere (the classical surface layer approach) becomes debatable.

The approach of the TEB scheme is to suppose that there are **two** major sources of heat from the artificial cover towards the atmosphere, leading to **two** turbulent heat fluxes. These two different surfaces are the **roofs** on the one hand, and the **canyon systems** on the other hand (see Figure 3.3). The two flux contributions are averaged relative to their horizontal areas: this is a way to represent the mixing in the urban roughness sublayer.

### Considerations on the turbulent transfer of moisture

Both for roof and roads, one will also explicitly suppose that the transfer coefficient for turbulent heat and moisture fluxes are identical (but different than for momentum). Very few direct measurements of turbulent moisture fluxes exist in the literature to validate or invalidate this hypothesis.

Roth (1993) and Roth *et al.* (1993) computed statistics from data (including moisture measurements) gathered during 10 days in summer in a suburb of Vancouver. The suburb was composed of 36% artificial cover, and of 64% greenspace. They showed poor correlation between temperature and moisture characteristics, and suggested it was caused by spatial inhomogeneity. They concluded that in their case, the mixing for moisture was less efficient than for heat. However, there was no rain during this period, and the evaporation came from the greenspace. Therefore, it is not possible to draw conclusion about a specific formulation for the moisture flux in the TEB model.

Other latent heat flux data exist, but again during dry periods. Grimmond *et al.* (1999) gathered data from seven north-American cities, but five of them are suburban cases. The two most purely urban cases (central Mexico city, presented in detail in Oke *et al.* (1999), and an industrial site in Vancouver) show very small evaporative flux: equal to 4% and 10% of the net radiation (during the day) for the two sites, respectively.

### Roughness length for momentum fluxes

The momentum fluxes are computed for the entire urban surface. However, one difficulty lies in the determination of the roughness length to use in urban areas. Wieringa (1993) reviewed some experimental roughness length estimations for rather homogeneously built-up areas. Dense low building roughness lengths were found between 0.4 and 0.7m, and those for regularly-built towns ranged from 0.7 to 1.5m. In these experiments, they are approximately equal to 1/10 of the houses or building heights. Bottema (1997) presents a model computing roughness lengths from building shapes and relative positions (normal or staggered). He found the modeled  $z_{0_{town}}$  to be in agreement with the available measurements. Sensitivity experiments of his model show that the ratio  $z_{0_{town}}/h$  ranges from 0.05 to 0.1 (except for very sparsely built areas).

Therefore, as a first approximation, the roughness length in the TEB model is set equal to:

$$z_{0_{town}} = h/10$$

(with an arbitrary limit of 5m), but it can be specified independently, either from in-situ measurements or more complicated formulations (see for example the recent review of Grimmond (1999)).

### Heat fluxes between roofs and atmosphere

The turbulent heat fluxes for the roofs are also recovered from classical boundary layer laws (because the roof heights are supposed uniform), with a roughness length of 15cm (as observed by Sturrock *et al.* (1977)). Again the stability coefficients of Mascart *et al.* (1995) are used to compute the aerodynamic resistance  $RES_R$ .

The effect on temperature and specific humidity of the difference in height between the atmospheric level and the roof level is corrected using the Exner function  $\Pi = (p/p_0)^{R_d/C_{p_d}}$ , where  $p$  is the pressure ( $p_s$  and  $p_a$  are the surface pressure and the first level pressure in the atmospheric model respectively),  $p_0$  is a reference pressure (equal to 100000 Pa), and  $R_d$  the gas constant for dry air. One defines:

$$\begin{aligned}\hat{T}_a &= T_a \Pi_s / \Pi_a \\ \hat{q}_a &= q_a q_{sat}(\hat{T}_a, p_s) / q_{sat}(T_a, p_a)\end{aligned}$$

The heat and moisture turbulent fluxes between roof and atmosphere read:

$$\begin{aligned}H_R &= C_{p_d} \rho_a (\hat{T}_a - T_{can}) / RES_R \\ LE_R &= L_v \rho_a (\hat{q}_a - q_{can}) / RES_R\end{aligned}$$

where  $\rho_a$  is the air density at first atmospheric level, and  $C_{p_d}$  the heat capacity of dry air.

### Wind inside the Canyon

The computation of the wind inside the canyon is necessary to estimate the heat fluxes between the surfaces and the canyon. The vertical speed along the walls,  $W_{can}$ , as well as the horizontal wind speed in the canyon,  $U_{can}$ , must be defined. Rotach (1995) presents turbulence measurements in and above a road in the center of Zurich (Switzerland), for which the canyon aspect ratio is  $h/w \sim 1$ . Rotach (1995) observed that fluctuations of the vertical wind speed,  $\sigma_w$ , in the upper part of the canyon, are almost equal to the friction velocity  $u_*$ , whatever the stability or wind direction above. Feigenwinter *et al.* (1999) finds that  $\sigma_w/u_*$  is, on the contrary, increasing with height for unstable conditions. However, their value of  $\sigma_w/u_*$  near the roof level (extrapolated using the Monin-Obukhov function) was approximately 1.15, which is of the same order of magnitude as the Rotach (1995) results. They also found that for stable to weakly unstable conditions,  $u_*$  presents a maximum between the roughness sublayer and the inertial sublayer above. However,  $u_*$  does not depart by more than 10% from its value in the inertial sublayer, and is assumed constant with height in the scheme.

Then, (assuming that all this holds true for other canyon aspect ratios), the vertical speed along the walls reads:

$$W_{can} = u_* = \sqrt{C_d} ||\vec{U}_a|| \quad (3.21)$$

$U_a$  is the wind velocity at the first atmospheric model level. The drag coefficient,  $C_d$ , is computed from the temperatures and humidities in and above the canyon, and from the roughness length,  $z_{0_{town}}$ , taking into account the stability effects according to Mascart *et al.* (1995).

The horizontal wind speed,  $U_{can}$ , is estimated at half the height of the canyon. First, the horizontal wind speed at the top of the canyon is deduced from the logarithmic law above it (Figure 3.3, right side), and the displacement height is equal to two thirds of the building height from road surface (i.e. at  $h/3$  under the roof level - which is the zero height of the atmospheric model -, a classical assumption for plant canopies). Furthermore, in order to consider all canyon orientations, and since only the along canyon wind is considered, an integration over  $360^\circ$  is performed. At canyon top, this gives:

$$U_{top} = \frac{2}{\pi} \frac{\ln\left(\frac{h/3}{z_{0_{town}}}\right)}{\ln\left(\frac{\Delta z + h/3}{z_{0_{town}}}\right)} \|\vec{U}_a\|$$

where  $\Delta z$  is the height of the first atmospheric model level above the roofs.

To calculate  $U_{can}$ , a vertical profile of the wind inside the canyon is assumed. An exponential form is chosen (as is done in vegetation canopies, cf e.g. Arya (1988)). Such a profile applied at half-height gives:

$$U_{can} = U_{top} \exp(-N/2)$$

$N$  must be determined. Rotach (1995) finds from his case study ( $h/w = 1$ ), that  $U_{can} \sim 0.75U_{top}$ . Studies in corn fields ( $h/w \sim 4$ ), which could be assimilated to narrow streets, give  $U_{can} \sim 0.4U_{top}$  (Arya 1988). Therefore, the parameter  $N = 0.5h/w$  should be pertinent.

Then:

$$U_{can} = \frac{2}{\pi} \exp\left(-\frac{1}{4} \frac{h}{w}\right) \frac{\ln\left(\frac{h/3}{z_{0_{town}}}\right)}{\ln\left(\frac{\Delta z + h/3}{z_{0_{town}}}\right)} \|\vec{U}_a\| \quad (3.22)$$

### Sensible and latent heat fluxes in the canyon

The turbulent heat fluxes between the canyon air and the atmosphere are computed from the temperature and humidity inside the canyon. The fluxes between surfaces and canyon air follow an empirical formulation. The air characteristics inside the canyon are deduced from the continuity between the fluxes coming from the surfaces and the flux with the atmosphere (inspired by the vegetation canopy scheme of Deardorff (1978)). The heat fluxes are used in the energy budget conservation equations involving the surface temperatures. This is why a precise approach has been chosen, specific to each surface. Figure 3.3 displays a summary of the TEB options.

**Fluxes between canyon air and atmosphere:** Above the canyon, the fluxes are estimated from classical surface boundary layer laws. However in these formulae, the air characteristics in the canyon ( $T_{can}$  and  $q_{can}$ ) are used instead of the surface characteristics. The aerodynamic resistance above the canyon, called  $RES_{top}$ , is calculated with  $z_{0_{town}}$  using the stability coefficients of Mascart *et al.* (1995) (this formulation leads to different drag coefficients for momentum fluxes and for heat or moisture fluxes).

The heat and moisture turbulent fluxes between canyon and atmosphere then read:

$$\begin{aligned} H_{top} &= C_{pd} \rho_a (\hat{T}_a - T_{can}) / RES_{top} \\ LE_{top} &= L_v \rho_a (\hat{q}_a - q_{can}) / RES_{top} \end{aligned}$$

**Fluxes between walls, roads and canyon air:** Between the canyon surfaces (road and walls) and the canyon air, the Rowley *et al.* (1930) and Rowley *et al.* (1932) aerodynamic formulations are used. They were obtained from in-situ measurements. These formulae are also used in the canyon circulation model of

Mills (1993). Other formulations of similar form exist in the literature (see e.g. Sturrock *et al.* (1977), either from wind tunnel or in-situ measurements).

For simplicity, the same value is chosen for both road and walls. The resistance is independent of the stability inside or above the canyon. It reads:

$$RES_r = RES_w = C_{pd}\rho_a \left( 11.8 + 4.2\sqrt{U_{can}^2 + (u_* + w_*)^2} \right)^{-1} \quad (3.23)$$

$$w_* = \left( \frac{g}{T_{can}} Q_0 h \right)^{1/3}$$

Where  $u_* + w_*$  is the turbulent wind and  $Q_0$  encompasses both road and wall turbulent heat fluxes.

Finally, the heat fluxes between the canyon surfaces and the canyon air read:

$$\begin{aligned} H_r &= C_{pd}\rho_a (T_r - T_{can})/RES_r \\ H_w &= C_{pd}\rho_a (T_w - T_{can})/RES_w \\ LE_r &= L_v\rho_a \delta_r(q_{sat}(T_r, p_s) - q_{can})/RES_r \\ LE_w &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

Notice the form of the latent heat flux, where the fraction of wet road,  $\delta_r$ , is applied outside of the brackets. Therefore, the evaporation from the surface occurs when  $q_{sat}(T_r) > q_{can}$ , even if very little water remains in the interception reservoir. The same humidity treatment is performed for roofs.

### Canyon temperature and humidity

These quantities can be considered as output of a meteorological forecast. They are computed diagnostically: the equilibrium between thermodynamic fluxes for the canyon air is assumed to be valid at each time step. **The anthropogenic flux due to traffic is also taken into account.** Note that in this formula,  $H_{traffic}$ , representative of the whole urban surface, has been scaled to the road surface.

$$H_{top} = (1 - \delta_{snowr})H_r + \frac{2h}{w}H_w + H_{traffic}\frac{1}{1 - a_{bld}} + \delta_{snowr}H_{snowr} \quad (3.24)$$

$$LE_{top} = (1 - \delta_{snowr})LE_r + LE_{traffic}\frac{1}{1 - a_{bld}} + \delta_{snowr}LE_{snowr} \quad (3.25)$$

Then

$$T_{can} = \frac{(1 - \delta_{snowr})\frac{T_r}{RES_r} + \frac{2h}{w}\frac{T_w}{RES_w} + \frac{\hat{T}_a}{RES_{top}} + \frac{H_{traffic}}{C_{pd}\rho_a(1 - a_{bld})} + \delta_{snowr}\frac{H_{snowr}}{C_{pd}\rho_a}}{(1 - \delta_{snowr})\frac{1}{RES_r} + \frac{2h}{w}\frac{1}{RES_w} + \frac{1}{RES_{top}}} \quad (3.26)$$

and

$$q_{can} = \frac{(1 - \delta_{snowr})\frac{\delta_r q_{sat}(T_r, p_s)}{RES_r} + \frac{\hat{q}_a}{RES_{top}} + \frac{LE_{traffic}}{L_v\rho_a(1 - a_{bld})} + \delta_{snowr}\frac{LE_{r,snowr}}{L_v\rho_a}}{(1 - \delta_{snowr})\frac{\delta_r}{RES_r} + \frac{1}{RES_{top}}} \quad (3.27)$$

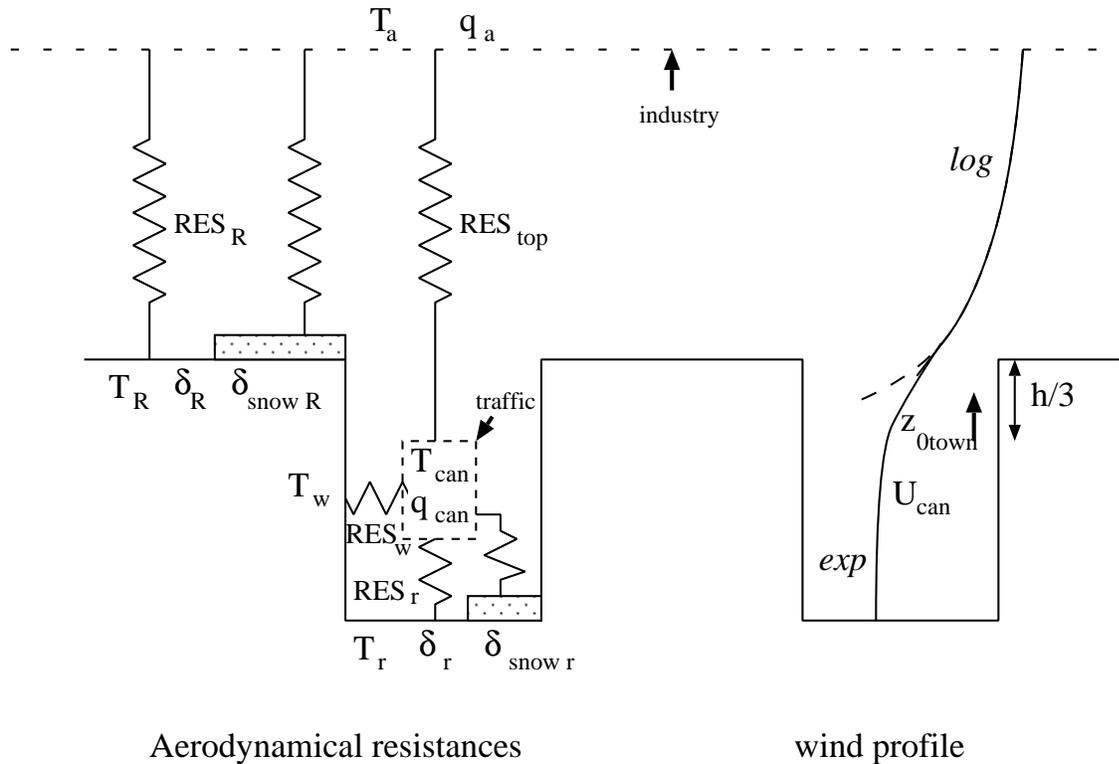


Figure 3.3: Scheme options for: (a) aerodynamic resistances; (b) wind profile within and above the canyon.

### Averaged fluxes at town scale

As mentioned above, the averaging operation performed to obtain the turbulent fluxes at town scale is in itself a way to solve the problem of the roughness sublayer: it mimics the mixing of the different sources of turbulent heat fluxes, and then produces **fluxes which are representative of the upper part of the surface layer**, above the roughness sublayer. The energy fluxes released by the industrial activities is also added at this stage.

The total heat fluxes from the artificial material areas towards the atmosphere are then:

$$H_{town} = a_{bld}H_R + (1 - a_{bld})H_{top} + H_{industry} \quad (3.28)$$

$$LE_{town} = a_{bld}LE_R + (1 - a_{bld})LE_{top} + LE_{industry} \quad (3.29)$$

In order to have the total turbulent fluxes  $H$ ,  $LE$  from the surface towards the atmospheric model, these fluxes should be averaged with those computed by the vegetation scheme for the other land surfaces (city parks, gardens, fields, forest, bare soil...) and those from water covered surfaces (rivers, lakes, sea...).

### Solar radiation reflections

Suppose hereafter that the direct and scattered albedo for each surface are identical. If this is not the case, only the first direct solar reflection would be modified.

When the first reflection occurs, the fluxes stored by the road and wall,  $A_r$  and  $A_w$ , are respectively:

$$A_r(0) = (1 - \alpha_r)(S_r^{\downarrow} + S_r^{\uparrow})$$

$$A_w(0) = (1 - \alpha_w)(S_w^{\downarrow} + S_w^{\uparrow})$$

The reflected parts  $R_r$  and  $R_w$  are:

$$\begin{aligned} R_r(0) &= \alpha_r(S_r^{\downarrow} + S_r^{\uparrow}) \\ R_w(0) &= \alpha_w(S_w^{\downarrow} + S_w^{\uparrow}) \end{aligned}$$

After  $n$  reflections:

$$\begin{aligned} A_r(n+1) &= A_r(n) + (1 - \alpha_r)(1 - \Psi_r)R_w(n) \\ A_w(n+1) &= A_w(n) + (1 - \alpha_w)\Psi_w R_r(n) + (1 - \alpha_w)(1 - 2\Psi_w)R_w(n) \\ R_r(n+1) &= \alpha_r(1 - \Psi_r)R_w(n) \\ R_w(n+1) &= \alpha_w\Psi_w R_r(n) + \alpha_w(1 - 2\Psi_w)R_w(n) \end{aligned}$$

Then

$$\begin{aligned} A_r(n+1) &= A_r(0) + (1 - \Psi_r)(1 - \alpha_r) \sum_{k=0}^n R_w(k) \\ A_w(n+1) &= A_w(0) + \Psi_w(1 - \alpha_w) \sum_{k=0}^n R_r(k) \\ &\quad + (1 - 2\Psi_w)(1 - \alpha_w) \sum_{k=0}^n R_w(k) \end{aligned}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{k=0}^n R_r(k) &= (1 - \Psi_r)\alpha_r \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} R_w(k) + R_r(0) \\ \sum_{k=0}^n R_w(k) &= \Psi_w\alpha_w \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} R_r(k) \\ &\quad + (1 - 2\Psi_w)\alpha_w \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} R_w(k) + R_w(0) \end{aligned}$$

Solving this geometric system yields, in the case of an infinite number of reflections:

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} R_r(k) &= R_r(0) + \frac{(1 - \Psi_r)\alpha_r(R_w(0) + \Psi_w\alpha_w R_r(0))}{1 - (1 - 2\Psi_w)\alpha_w + (1 - \Psi_r)\Psi_w\alpha_r\alpha_w} = M_r \\ \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} R_w(k) &= \frac{R_w(0) + \Psi_w\alpha_w R_r(0)}{1 - (1 - 2\Psi_w)\alpha_w + (1 - \Psi_r)\Psi_w\alpha_r\alpha_w} = M_w \end{aligned}$$

The total solar radiation stored by road and wall is then:

$$\begin{aligned} S_r^* &= (1 - \alpha_r)S_r^{\downarrow} + (1 - \alpha_r)S_r^{\uparrow} + (1 - \alpha_r)(1 - \Psi_r)M_w \\ S_w^* &= (1 - \alpha_w)S_w^{\downarrow} + (1 - \alpha_w)S_w^{\uparrow} + (1 - \alpha_w)(1 - 2\Psi_w)M_w + (1 - \alpha_w)(1 - \Psi_w)M_r \end{aligned}$$

The total albedo for the town is:

$$\alpha_{TEB} = 1 - \frac{f_{road}S_{road}^* + f_{wall}S_{wall}^* + f_{roof}S_{roof}^*}{f_{road}(S_{road}^{\downarrow} + S_{road}^{\uparrow}) + f_{wall}(S_{wall}^{\downarrow} + S_{wall}^{\uparrow}) + f_{roof}(S_{roof}^{\downarrow} + S_{roof}^{\uparrow})} \quad (3.30)$$

Where  $f_{road} = 1 - a_{bld}$ ,  $f_{roof} = a_{bld}$  and  $f_{roof} = 2\frac{h}{w}(1 - a_{bld})$

symbol	designation of symbol	unit
geometric parameters		
$a_{town}$	fractional area occupied by artificial material	-
$a_{bld}$	fractional artificial area occupied by buildings	-
$1 - a_{bld}$	fractional artificial area occupied by roads	-
$h$	building height	m
$h/l$	building aspect ratio	-
$h/w$	canyon aspect ratio	-
$z_{0town}$	dynamic roughness length for the building/canyon system	m
radiative parameters		
$\alpha_R, \alpha_r, \alpha_w$	roof, road and wall albedos	-
$\epsilon_R, \epsilon_r, \epsilon_w$	roof, road and wall emissivities	-
thermal parameters		
$d_{R_k}, d_{r_k}, d_{w_k}$	thickness of the $k^{th}$ roof, road or wall layer	m
$\lambda_{R_k}, \lambda_{r_k}, \lambda_{w_k}$	thermal conductivity of the $k^{th}$ roof, road or wall layer	$\text{W m}^{-1} \text{K}^{-1}$
$C_{R_k}, C_{r_k}, C_{w_k}$	heat capacity of the $k^{th}$ roof, road or wall layer	$\text{J m}^{-1} \text{K}^{-1}$

Table 3.1: Parameters of the TEB scheme. *Note that  $a_{town}$  is not strictly a parameter of the TEB scheme, but is used to average the output TEB fluxes with those computed for the vegetation and water portions of the grid mesh. Note also that some surfaces between the buildings, such as gardens or parks for example, are **not** treated by the TEB model, but modify the canyon width,  $w$ .*

symbol	designation of symbol	unit
<b>prognostic variables</b>		
$T_{R_k}, T_{r_k}, T_{w_k}$	temperature of the $k^{th}$ roof, road or wall layer	K
$W_R, W_r$	roof and road water interception reservoir	kg m <sup>-2</sup>
$W_{snow R}, W_{snow r}$	roof and road snow interception reservoir	kg m <sup>-2</sup>
$T_{snow R}, T_{snow r}$	roof and road snow temperature	K
$\rho_{snow R}, \rho_{snow r}$	roof and road snow density	kg m <sup>-3</sup>
$\alpha_{snow R}, \alpha_{snow r}$	roof and road snow albedo	-
<b>diagnostic variables</b>		
$T_{can}$	canyon air temperature	K
$q_{can}$	canyon air specific humidity	kg kg <sup>-1</sup>
$U_{can}$	along canyon horizontal wind	m s <sup>-1</sup>
$\alpha_{town}$	town effective albedo	-
$T_{stown}$	town area averaged radiative surface temperature	K
<b>input energy fluxes</b>		
$L^\downarrow$	downward infra-red radiation on an horizontal surface	W m <sup>-2</sup>
$S^\downarrow$	downward <b>diffuse</b> solar radiation on an horizontal surface	W m <sup>-2</sup>
$S^\downarrow$	downward <b>direct</b> solar radiation on an horizontal surface	W m <sup>-2</sup>
$H_{traffic}$	anthropogenic sensible heat flux released in the canyon	W m <sup>-2</sup>
$LE_{traffic}$	anthropogenic latent heat flux released in the canyon	W m <sup>-2</sup>
$H_{industry}$	anthropogenic sensible heat flux released by industries	W m <sup>-2</sup>
$LE_{industry}$	anthropogenic latent heat flux released by industries	W m <sup>-2</sup>
<b>other energy input</b>		
$T_{bid}$	building interior temperature	K
<b>output energy fluxes</b>		
$S_R^*, S_r^*, S_w^*$	net solar radiation budget for roofs, roads and walls	W m <sup>-2</sup>
$L_R^*, L_r^*, L_w^*$	net infra-red radiation budget for roofs, roads and walls	W m <sup>-2</sup>
$H_R, H_r, H_w$	turbulent sensible heat flux for roofs, roads and walls	W m <sup>-2</sup>
$LE_R, LE_r, LE_w$	turbulent latent heat flux for roofs, roads and walls	W m <sup>-2</sup>
$G_{R_{k,k+1}}, G_{r_{k,k+1}}, G_{w_{k,k+1}}$	conduction heat flux between $k^{th}$ and $k + 1^{th}$ roof, road or wall layers	W m <sup>-2</sup>
$H_{town}$	town averaged turbulent sensible heat flux	W m <sup>-2</sup>
$LE_{town}$	town averaged turbulent latent heat flux	W m <sup>-2</sup>

Table 3.2: Energy fluxes and variables in the TEB scheme

experiment name → parameter ↓	reference	buildings	suburban	Insulated	Insulated, Ti
$a_{town}$	100%		70%		
$a_{blt}$	50%				
$h/w$	1	3	0.5		
$z_{0,town}$	5 m		1 m		
$T_{i,blt}$	290.15 K				variable
$d_{R_1}$ (dense concrete)	5 cm				
$d_{R_2}$ (aerated concrete)	40 cm				
$d_{R_3}$ (insulation layer)	5 cm			20 cm	20 cm
$d_{w_1}$ (dense concrete)	2 cm				
$d_{w_2}$ (aerated concrete)	12.5 cm				
$d_{w_3}$ (insulation layer)	2 cm			8 cm	8 cm
$d_{r_1}$ (asphalt)	5 cm				
$d_{r_2}$ (dry soil)	10 cm				
$d_{r_3}$ (dry soil)	100 cm				
$\alpha_R$	15%				
$\alpha_w$	25%				
$\alpha_r$	8%				
$\epsilon_R$	90%				
$\epsilon_w$	85%				
$\epsilon_r$	94%				

Table 3.3: Urban characteristics for the sensitivity experiments. Only the parameters different from the reference experiment are shown. Composition of the layers are displayed with the corresponding layer thickness.

## Bibliography

- [1] A. J. Arnfield and C. S. B. Grimmond. An urban energy budget model and its application to urban storage heat flux modeling. *Energy and Build.*, 27:61–68, 1998.
- [2] S.P. Arya. *Introduction to Micrometeorology*. Academic Press, Inc., 1988.
- [3] M. J. Best. A model to predict surface temperatures. *Bound.-Layer Meteorol.*, 88:279–306, 1998.
- [4] M. Bottema. Roughness modelling in relation to pollutant dispersion. *Atmos. Environ.*, 31(18):3059–3075, 1997.
- [5] J. Deardorff. Efficient prediction of ground temperature and moisture with inclusion of a layer of vegetation. *J. Geophys. Res.*, 83:1889–1903, 1978.
- [6] C. Feigenwinter, R. Vogt, and E. Parlow. Vertical structure of selected turbulence characteristics above an urban canopy. *Theor. Appl. Climatol.*, 62:5163, 1999.
- [7] C. S. B. Grimmond, H. A. Cleugh, and T. R. Oke. An objective urban heat storage model and its comparison with other schemes. *Atmos. Environ.*, 25B:311–326, 1991.
- [8] C. S. B. Grimmond and T. R. Oke. Aerodynamic properties of urban areas derived from analysis of surface form. *J. Appl. Meteorol.*, 38:1262–1292, 1999.
- [9] C.S.B. Grimmond and 38:12621292 1999b Oke, T.R. Aerodynamic Properties of urban areas derived from Analysis of Surface form. *J. Appl. Meteorol.* Aerodynamic properties of urban areas derived from analysis of surface form. *J. Appl. Meteorol.*, 38:1262–1292, 1999.

- [10] C.S.B. Grimmond and T.R. Oke. An evapotranspiration-interception model for urban areas. *Water Resour. Res.*, 27:1739–1755, 1991.
- [11] G.T. Johnson, T.R. Oke, T.J. Lyons, D.G. Steyn, I.D. Watson, and J.A. Voogt. Simulation of surface urban heat islands under ideal conditions at night. part i: theory and tests against field data. *Bound.-Layer Meteorol.*, 56:275–294, 1991.
- [12] P. Mascart, J. Noilhan, and H. Giordani. A modified parameterization of flux-profile relationships in the surface layer using different roughness length values for heat and momentum. *Bound.-Layer Meteorol.*, 72:331–344, 1995.
- [13] L. Menut. *Etude expérimentale et théorique de la couche limite Atmosphérique en agglomération parisienne (experimental and theoretical study of the ABL in Paris area)*. PhD thesis, University Pierre et Marie Curie, Paris, France, 1997.
- [14] G.M. Mills. Simulation of the energy budget of an urban canyon-i. model structure and sensitivity test. *Atmos. Environ.*, 27B(2):157–170, 1993.
- [15] J. Noilhan. A model for the net total radiation flux at the surfaces of a building. *Build. and Environ.*, 16(4):259–266, 1981.
- [16] J. Noilhan and S. Planton. A simple parameterization of land surface processes for meteorological models. *Mon. Weather Rev.*, 117(3):536–549, 1989.
- [17] T. R. Oke. *Boundary Layer Climates*. Methuen, London and New York, 1987. 435 pp.
- [18] T. R. Oke. The urban energy balance. *Prog. Phys. Geogr.*, 12:471–508, 1988.
- [19] T. R. Oke, R. A. Spronken-Smith, E. Jauregui, and C. S. B. Grimmond. The energy balance of central Mexico City during the dry season. *Atmos. Environ.*, 33:3919–3930, 1999.
- [20] R.L. Petersen. A wind tunnel evaluation of methods for estimating surface roughness length at industrial facilities. *Atmos. Environ.*, 31(1):45–57, 1997.
- [21] K. Richards and T.R. Oke. Dew in urban environments. In *Ind AMS Urban Environment Symposium*, 1998.
- [22] M. W. Rotach. Profiles of turbulence statistics in and above an urban street canyon. *Atmos. Environ.*, 29(13):1473–1486, 1995.
- [23] M. Roth. Turbulent transfert: relationships over an urban surface. ii: Integral statistics. *Q. J. R. Meteorol. Soc.*, 119:1105–1120, 1993.
- [24] M. Roth and T.R. Oke. Turbulent transfert: relationships over an urban surface. i: spectral characteristics. *Q. J. R. Meteorol. Soc.*, 119:1071–1104, 1993.
- [25] Algren A.B. Rowley, F.B. and Blackshaw. Surface conductances as affected by air velocity, temperature and character of surface. *ASHRAE Trans.*, 36:429–446, 1930.
- [26] F.B. Rowley and W.A. Eckley. Surface coefficients as affected by wind direction. *ASHRAE Trans.*, 38:33–46, 1932.

- [27] N.L. Seaman, F. Ludwig, E.G. Donall, T.T. Warner, and C.M. Bhumralkar. Numerical studies of urban planetary boundary-layer structure under realistic synoptic conditions. *J. Appl. Meteorol.*, 28:760781, 1989.
- [28] A. Soux, T.R. Oke, and J.A. Voogt. Modelling and remote sensing of the urban surface. In *Ind AMS Urban Environment Symposium*, 1998.
- [29] N.S. Sturrock and R.J. Cole. The convective heat exchange at the external surface of buildings. *Build. and Environ.*, 12:207–214, 1977.
- [30] H. Taha. Modifying a mesoscale meteorological model to better incorporate urban heat storage. *J. Appl. Meteorol.*, 38:466–473, 1999.
- [31] W.H. Terjung and P.A. ORourke. Influences of physical structures on urban energy budgets. *Bound.-Layer Meteorol.*, 19:421–439, 1980.
- [32] J. Wieringa. Representative roughness parameters for homogeneous terrain. *Bound.-Layer Meteorol.*, 63:323–363, 1993.



# Chapter 4

## Soil and vegetation

### Contents

---

<b>4.1</b>	<b>ISBA surface scheme</b>	<b>76</b>
4.1.1	Force restore approach	76
	Treatment of the soil heat content	76
	Treatment of the soil water	78
	Treatment of soil ice	83
4.1.2	Diffusive approach	85
	Governing Equations	85
	Surface and soil heat transfer	85
	Liquid Soil Water	93
	Soil ice	101
4.1.3	Treatment of the intercepted water	104
4.1.4	Spatial variability of precipitation intensities	105
4.1.5	Treatment of the snow	106
	One-layer snow scheme option	106
	Multi-layer snow scheme options	107
	Additional features of the Crocus scheme	110
4.1.6	The surface fluxes	115
4.1.7	Summary of Useful Parameters	118
4.1.8	Appendix A: Continuous formulation of the soil secondary parameters	119
4.1.9	Appendix B: Gaussian formulation for the $C_1$ coefficient	120
<b>4.2</b>	<b>ISBA-A-gs surface scheme</b>	<b>121</b>
4.2.1	The Model	121
	Introduction	121
	Background information	121
	Photosynthesis Model (no water stress)	122
	Soil moisture stress parameterization	125
	From leaf to canopy	129
	Biomass evolution	130
	Respiration	134

	<i>CO</i> <sub>2</sub> fluxes . . . . .	135
4.2.2	Vegetation parameters . . . . .	135
4.2.3	Discussion . . . . .	136
	Respiration . . . . .	136
	Soil moisture stress parameterization . . . . .	137
	Temperature response of <i>g</i> <sub><i>m</i></sub> for <i>C</i> <sub>3</sub> plants . . . . .	137
	Radiative transfer within the vegetation . . . . .	137
	Representation of crops . . . . .	138
	Representation of nitrogen dilution . . . . .	139
	Annex 1: Description of the Fortran routine used to calculate the <i>CO</i> <sub>2</sub> flux . . . . .	139
<b>4.3</b>	<b>The ISBA-CC model . . . . .</b>	<b>140</b>
4.3.1	Introduction . . . . .	140
4.3.2	Allocation scheme . . . . .	141
	Evolution of the biomass compartments . . . . .	141
	Respiration . . . . .	142
	Decline term . . . . .	143
	Allocation . . . . .	143
	Mortality . . . . .	145
4.3.3	Coupling with the soil organic matter scheme . . . . .	145
	Overview . . . . .	146
	Supply of litter compartments . . . . .	147
	Decomposition of the soil organic matter . . . . .	147
	Carbon fluxes . . . . .	150
4.3.4	Description of a simulation with ISBA-CC . . . . .	152
4.3.5	Conclusion . . . . .	153

## 4.1 ISBA surface scheme

### 4.1.1 Force restore approach

#### Treatment of the soil heat content

The prognostic equations for the surface temperature  $T_s$  and its mean value  $T_2$  over one day  $\tau$ , are obtained from the force-restore method proposed by Bhumralkar (1975) and Blackadar (1976):

$$\frac{\partial T_s}{\partial t} = C_T(R_n - H - LE) - \frac{2\pi}{\tau}(T_s - T_2), \quad (4.1)$$

$$\frac{\partial T_2}{\partial t} = \frac{1}{\tau}(T_s - T_2), \quad (4.2)$$

where  $H$  and  $LE$  are the sensible and latent heat fluxes, and  $R_n$  is the net radiation at the surface. The surface temperature  $T_s$  evolves due to both the diurnal forcing by the heat flux  $G = R_n - H - LE$  and a restoring term towards its mean value  $T_2$ . In contrast, the mean temperature  $T_2$  only varies according to a slower relaxation towards  $T_s$ .

The coefficient  $C_T$  is expressed by

$$C_T = 1 / \left( \frac{(1 - veg)(1 - p_{sng})}{C_g} + \frac{veg(1 - p_{snv})}{C_v} + \frac{p_{sn}}{C_s} \right) \quad (4.3)$$

where  $veg$  is the fraction of vegetation,  $C_g$  is the ground heat capacity,  $C_s$  is the snow heat capacity,  $C_v$  is the vegetation heat capacity, and

$$p_{sng} = \frac{W_s}{W_s + W_{crn}}; \quad p_{snv} = \frac{h_s}{h_s + 5000z_0}; \quad p_{sn} = (1 - veg)p_{sng} + vegp_{snv} \quad (4.4)$$

are respectively the fractions of the bare soil and vegetation covered by snow, and the fraction of the grid covered by snow. Here,  $W_{crn} = 10 \text{ mm}$ , and  $h_s = W_s/\rho_s$  is the thickness of the snow pack ( $\rho_s$  is the snow density). The partitioning of the grid into bare soil, vegetation, and snow areas, is indicated in Fig.(4.1) .

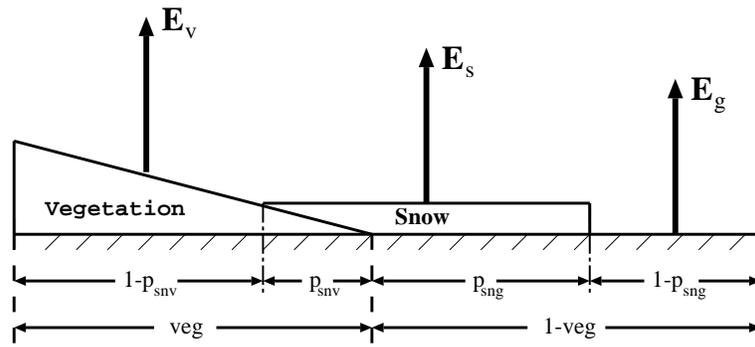


Figure 4.1: Partitioning of the grid

The heat capacities of the ground and snow canopies are respectively given by

$$C_g = C_{gsat} \left( \frac{w_{sat}}{w_2} \right)^{b/2 \log_{10}}; \quad C_g \leq 1.5 \times 10^{-5} \text{ Km}^2 \text{ J}^{-1} \quad (4.5)$$

where  $C_{gsat}$  is the heat capacity at saturation, and  $w_{sat}$  the volumetric moisture content of the soil at saturation; and

$$C_s = 2 \times \left( \frac{\pi}{\lambda_s c_s \tau} \right)^{1/2} \quad (4.6)$$

where  $\lambda_s = \lambda_i \times \rho_s^{1.88}$ ;  $c_s = c_i(\rho_s/\rho_i)$ ;  $\lambda_i$  is the ice conductivity;  $c_i$  is the heat capacity of ice; and  $\rho_i$  is the relative density of ice (Douville (1994), Douville *et al.* (1995)).

After an intermediate surface temperature  $T_s^*$  is evaluated from Eq. (4.1), the cooling due to the melting of snow is considered following

$$T_s^+ = T_s^* - C_T L_f (\text{melt}) \Delta t \quad (4.7)$$

where  $L_f$  is the latent of fusion,  $\Delta t$  is the timestep, and the melting rate of snow is

$$\text{melt} = p_{sn} \left( \frac{T_n - T_0}{C_s L_f \Delta t} \right); \quad \text{melt} \geq 0 \quad (4.8)$$

Here,

$$T_0 = 273.16 \text{ K};$$

$$T_n = (1 - veg)T_s^* + vegT_2$$

Similarly, the intermediate mean temperature  $T_2^*$  obtained from Eq. (2) is also modified due to the melting/freezing of water in the soil layer occurring for temperatures between  $-5^\circ\text{C}$  and  $0^\circ\text{C}$  (Boone *et al.* (2000)). The resulting mean temperature is

$$T_2^+ = T_2^* + (\Delta w_2)_{frozen} L_f C_g d \quad (4.9)$$

with

$$(\Delta w_2)_{frozen} = \left[ 1 - \left( \frac{T_2^* - 268.16}{5} \right) \right] (w_2(t) - w_2(t - \Delta t)) \quad (4.10)$$

$$(\Delta w_2)_{frozen} = 0 \quad \text{if } T_2 \leq -5^\circ\text{C} \text{ or if } T_2 \geq 0^\circ\text{C} \quad (4.11)$$

where  $d = 15 \text{ cm}$  is an estimated average of the penetration of the diurnal wave into the soil. Only the mean temperature  $T_2$  is modified by this factor. The surface temperature  $T_s$ , however, indirectly feels this effect through the relaxation term in Eq. (1).

### Treatment of the soil water

Equations for  $w_g$  and  $w_2$  are derived from the force-restore method applied by Deardorff (1977) to the ground soil moisture:

$$\frac{\partial w_g}{\partial t} = \frac{C_1}{\rho_w d_1} (P_g - E_g) - \frac{C_2}{\tau} (w_g - w_{geq}); 0 \leq w_g \leq w_{sat} \quad (4.12)$$

$$\frac{\partial w_2}{\partial t} = \frac{1}{\rho_w d_2} (P_g - E_g - E_{tr}) - \frac{C_3}{d_2 \tau} \max[0., (w_2 - w_{fc})]; 0 \leq w_2 \leq w_{sat} \quad (4.13)$$

where  $P_g$  is the flux of liquid water reaching the soil surface (including the melting),  $E_g$  is the evaporation at the soil surface,  $E_{tr}$  is the transpiration rate,  $\rho_w$  is the density of liquid water, and  $d_1$  is an arbitrary normalization depth of 1 centimeter. In the present formulation, all the liquid water from the flux  $P_g$  goes into the reservoirs  $w_g$  and  $w_2$ , even when snow covers fractions of the ground and vegetation. The first term on the right hand side of Eq. (12) represents the influence of surface atmospheric fluxes when the contribution of the water extraction by the roots is neglected. The coefficients  $C_1$  and  $C_2$ , and the equilibrium surface volumetric moisture  $w_{geq}$ , have been calibrated for different soil textures and moistures (Noilhan and Planton (1989)).

The expression for  $C_1$  differs depending on the moisture content of the soil. For wet soils (i.e.,  $w_g \geq w_{wilt}$ ), this coefficient is expressed as

$$C_1 = C_{1sat} \left( \frac{w_{sat}}{w_g} \right)^{b/2+1} \quad (4.14)$$

For very dry soils (i.e.,  $w_g < w_{wilt}$ ), the vapor phase transfer needs to be considered in order to reproduce the physics of water exchange. These transfers are parameterized as a function of the wilting point  $w_{wilt}$ , the soil water content  $w_g$ , and the surface temperature  $T_s$ , using the Gaussian expression (Braud *et al.* (1993), Giordani (1993))

$$C_1 = C_{1max} \exp \left[ -\frac{(w_g - w_{max})^2}{2\sigma^2} \right] \quad (4.15)$$

where  $w_{max}$ ,  $C_{1max}$ , and  $\sigma$  are respectively the abscissa of the maximum, the mode, and the standard deviation of the Gaussian functions (see Appendix B). The other coefficient,  $C_2$ , and the equilibrium water content,  $w_{geq}$ , are given by

$$C_2 = C_{2ref} \left( \frac{w_2}{w_{sat} - w_2 + 0.01} \right) \quad (4.16)$$

$$w_{geq} = w_2 - aw_{sat} \left( \frac{w_2}{w_{sat}} \right)^p \left[ 1 - \left( \frac{w_2}{w_{sat}} \right)^{8p} \right] \quad (4.17)$$

For the  $w_2$  evolution, Eq. (13) represents the water budget over the soil layer of depth  $d_2$ . The drainage, which is proportional to the water amount exceeding the field capacity (i.e.,  $w_2 - w_{fc}$ ), is considered in the second term of the equation (see Mahfouf and Noilhan (1996)). The coefficient  $C_3$  does not depend on  $w_2$  but simply on the soil texture (see Appendix A). Similarly, run-off occurs when  $w_g$  or  $w_2$  exceeds the saturation value  $w_{sat}$  or when a sub-grid runoff scheme is used. Coefficients  $C_{1sat}$ ,  $C_{1max}$ ,  $C_{2ref}$  and  $p$  are made dependant on the soil texture (Noilhan and Mahfouf (1996))

**Root zone soil layer option** In the standard two-soil layer version of ISBA, it is not possible to distinguish the root zone and the total soil water reservoirs. With the three-layer version, the deepest soil layer may provide water to the root zone through capillary rises only, and the available water content for transpiration is defined as  $(w_{sat} - w_{sat}) \times d_2$ .

The bulk soil layer (referred to as  $w_2$  in the previous sections) is divided into a root-zone layer (with a depth  $d_2$ ) and base-flow layer (with a thickness defined as  $d_3 - d_2$ ). The governing equations for the time evolution of soil moisture for the two sub-surface soil layers are written following Boone *et al.* (1999) as

$$\frac{\partial w_2}{\partial t} = \frac{1}{\rho_w d_2} (P_g - E_g - E_{tr}) - \frac{C_3}{d_2 \tau} \max [0, (w_2 - w_{fc})] - \frac{C_4}{\tau} (w_2 - w_3) \quad (4.18)$$

$$\frac{\partial w_3}{\partial t} = \frac{d_2}{(d_3 - d_2)} \left\{ \frac{C_3}{d_2 \tau} \max [0, (w_2 - w_{fc})] + \frac{C_4}{\tau} (w_2 - w_3) \right\} \quad (4.19)$$

$$- \frac{C_3}{(d_3 - d_2) \tau} \max [0, (w_3 - w_{fc})]; \quad 0 \leq w_3 \leq w_{sat} \quad (4.20)$$

where  $C_4$  represents the vertical diffusion coefficient. It is defined as

$$C_4 = C_{4ref} \bar{w}_{2,3}^{C_{4b}} \quad (4.21)$$

$$(4.22)$$

where  $\bar{w}_{2,3}$  represents the interpolated volumetric water content representative of the values at the layer interface ( $d_2$ ). The  $C_{4ref}$  and  $C_{4b}$  coefficients are defined using the soil sand and clay contents, consistent with the other model parameters (see the section on model coefficients). In addition, the  $C_{4ref}$  coefficient is scaled as a function of grid geometry. The equations are integrated in time using a fully implicit method.

**Exponential profile of  $k_{sat}$**  In this version, the soil column assumes an exponential profile of the saturated hydraulic conductivity,  $k_{sat}$ , with soil depth (Decharme *et al.* (2006)). This parameterization depends only on two parameters, which represent the rate of decline of the  $k_{sat}$  profile and the depth where  $k_{sat}$  reaches its so-called "compacted" value.

$$k_{sat}(z) = k_{sat,c} e^{-f(z-d_c)} \quad (4.23)$$

where  $z(m)$  is the depth of the soil profile,  $f(m^{-1})$  is the exponential profile decay factor and  $d_c(m)$  the compacted depth where  $k_{sat}$  reaches its compacted value,  $k_{sat,c}$  given by Clapp and Hornberger (1978). In

the standard approach,  $f$  varies with soil properties (texture and/or rooting depth) but can not exceed  $2m^{-1}$  and  $d_c$  assumes to be equal to rooting depth  $d_2$ . Sensitivity tests to these parameters and a detailed discussion about this parameterization can be found in Decharme *et al.* (2006). The main hypothesis is that roots and organic matter favor the development of macropores and enhance the water movement near the soil surface, and that soil compaction is an obstacle for vertical water transfer in the deeper soil. This exponential soil profile increases the saturated hydraulic conductivity at the surface by approximately a factor 10, and its mean value increases in the root zone and decreases in the deep layer in comparison with the values given by Clapp and Horneberger (1978). In ISBA, all hydraulic force-restore coefficients ( $C1, C2, C3$  and  $C4$ ) are re-formulated to take into account this  $k_{sat}$  profile.

**Treatment of runoff in th Isba initial version** Run-off occurs when  $w_2$  exceeds the saturation value  $w_{sat}$ . In its standard version, ISBA simulates surface runoff through the saturation excess mechanism (also known as Dune mechanism), therefore, runoff is only produced when the soil is saturated (i.e.  $w_2$  exceeds the saturation value  $w_{sat}$ ). Note that if  $w_3$  exceeds the saturation, the excess water is added to the drainage term.

When the scale of variability of runoff production is smaller than the typical scale of the grid scale (which is common in most applications), the soil almost never saturates and the runoff production is very low, even though, in reality, a fraction of the cell is saturated and does produce surface runoff.

In order to account for subgrid scale runoff, three parametrisations are available and are described hereafter.

**The variable Infiltration Capacity (VIC) scheme.** This subgrid parametrisation was introduced by Habets *et al.* (1999) following the approach of the Variable Infiltration Capacity (VIC) scheme, described in Wood *et al.* (1998) and Dumenil and Todini (1992) and inspired from the Nanjing model Zhao (1992). In this scheme it is considered that the infiltration capacity (the maximum depth of water that can be stored in the soil column) varies non-linearly within the grid cell. The fraction of the grid cell that is saturated is a function of some soil parameters (the soil water content at saturation, the wilting point and the root depth), the soil water content of the root zone ( $w_2$ ) and a new parameter, called  $b$ , which represents the shape of the heterogeneity distribution of effective soil moisture capacity.

This approach is summarized in Fig. 4.2. A grid cell is assumed to be composed of an infinity of elementary reservoirs, whose infiltration capacity continuously varies from 0 and a maximum value  $i_m$ . The mean water content ( $w_{g2}$ ) is the sum of the water content of all the reservoirs.

$i$  is the water content of the non saturated elementary reservoirs (all reservoirs with a water content below  $i$  are saturated).  $A(i)$  is the saturated fraction of the cell. In case of precipitation ( $P$ ), all reservoirs with an infiltration capacity lower than  $i + P$  will be filled, and then produce runoff. The runoff is the sum of the contribution of the elementary reservoirs.

In this scheme, the infiltration capacity is given by :

$$i = i_m \left[ 1 - (1 - A(i))^{\frac{1}{b}} \right] \iff A(i) = 1 - \left( 1 - \frac{i}{i_m} \right)^b \quad (4.24)$$

where  $A(i)$  is the fraction of the grid cell whose the infiltration capacity is lower than  $i$  ( $0 \leq A(i) \leq 1$ ),  $i_m$  is the maximum infiltration capacity of the grid cell, and  $b$  is the curvature parameter, which controls the distribution function  $A$  : the runoff is high when  $b$  is high, and low when  $b$  is small.

In the grid cell, the runoff is given by :

$$Q_r = \int_i^{i+P} A(i) di = P + \frac{i_m}{b+1} \left[ \left( 1 - \frac{i+P}{i_m} \right)^{b+1} - \left( 1 - \frac{i}{i_m} \right)^{b+1} \right] \quad (4.25)$$

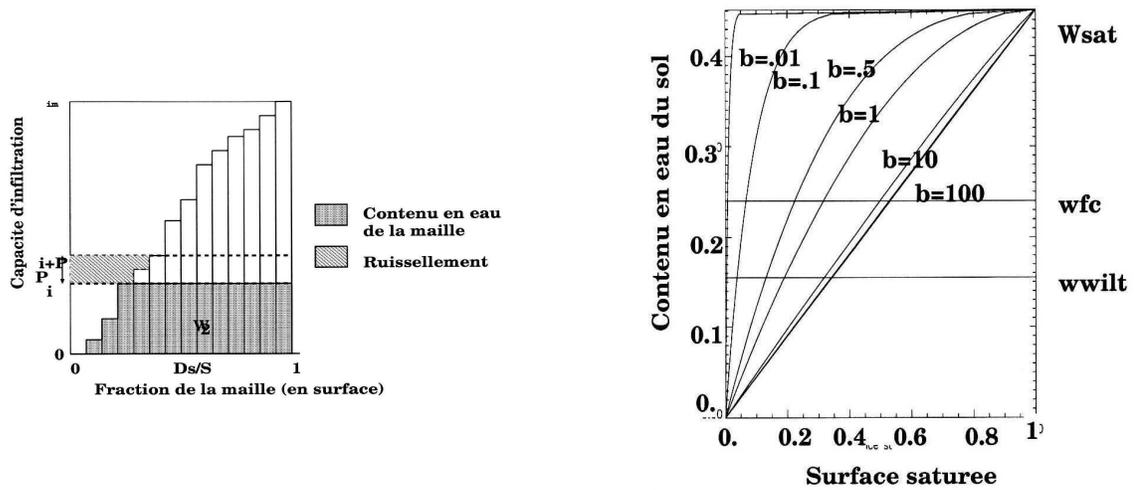


Figure 4.2: Simplified scheme of the VIC subgrid runoff. Left : principles. Right : variation of the saturated proportion of the grid cell for several values of the soil water content and of the parameter  $b$  in the VIC model. In Isba, the saturated fraction of the grid is computed between  $w_{wilt}$  and  $w_{sat}$

For a water content  $w_2$ , the saturated fraction of the grid cell ( $A(w_2)$ ) is given by:

$$A(w_2) = 1 - \left(1 - \frac{w_2}{w_{sat}}\right)^{\frac{b}{b+1}} \quad (4.26)$$

After preliminary testing of this parameterization on the Adour watershed, Habets *et al.* (1999) found that the parameterization generated too much runoff in summer for dry soil conditions. To avoid this problem, a threshold was introduced in the soil wetness, under which runoff was not produced. This threshold was set to be the wilting point ( $w_{wilt}$ ).

**TOPMODEL approach** TOPMODEL (TOPography based MODEL) attempted to combine the important distributed effects of channel network topology and dynamic contributing areas for runoff generation (Beven and Kirkby (1979), Silvapalan *et al.* (1987)). This formalism takes into account topographic heterogeneities explicitly by using the spatial distribution of the topographic indices,  $\lambda_i(m)$ , in each grid-cell defined as follows:

$$\lambda_i = \ln(a_i / \tan \beta_i) \quad (4.27)$$

where  $a_i(m)$  is the drainage area per unit of contour of a local pixel,  $i$ , and  $\tan \beta_i$  approximates the local hydraulic gradient where  $\beta_i$  is the local surface slope. If the pixel has a large drainage area and a low local slope, its topographic index will be large and thus, its ability to be saturated will be high. Then, this topographic index can be related to a local water deficit, and using the spatial distribution of the topographic indices over the grid cell, a saturated fraction,  $f_{sat}$ , inversely proportional to the grid cell mean deficit,  $D_t(m)$ , can be defined. The "coupling" between TOPMODEL and ISBA was proposed by Habets and Saulnier (2001) and generalized by Decharme *et al.* (2006). The active layer used for the ISBA-TOPMODEL coupling is the rooting layer, and not the total soil column. TOPMODEL describes generally the evolution of a water storage deficit near the soil surface that reacts quasi-instantaneously following rainy events (Beven and Kirkby (1979)). In that case, the root zone appears to be a reasonable compromise in ISBA. So, the relation between the grid cell mean deficit and the soil moisture computed by ISBA is simply expressed as:

$$0 \leq D_t = (w_{sat} - w_2) \times d_2 \leq d_0 \quad (4.28)$$

where  $d_2(m)$  is the rooting depth and  $d_0(m)$  the maximum deficit computed as the difference between the saturation,  $w_{sat}$ , and the wilting point,  $w_{wilt}$ :

$$d_0 = (w_{sat} - w_{wilt}) \times d_2 \quad (4.29)$$

So for a given rooting soil moisture,  $w_2$ , a mean deficit,  $D_t$ , is calculated and it is therefore possible to determine the saturated fraction of the grid-cell. The runoff,  $Q_{top}$ , is thus simply given by:  $Q_{top} = P_g \times f_{sat}$  where  $P_g$  is the throughfall rain rate. For  $w_2$  lower than the wilting point, the mean deficit is a maximum,  $D_t = d_0$ ,  $f_{sat} = 0$  and no surface runoff occurs. Note that, the spatial distribution of the topographic index in each grid-cell can be computed with the three- parameter gamma distribution introduced by Silvapalan *et al.* (1987). The three parameters are derived from the mean, standard deviation, and skewness of the actual distribution that can be done by the HYDRO1K dataset at a 1 km resolution or another database. This TOPMODEL approach has been intensively validated both at the regional and global scale (Decharme *et al.* (2006), Decharme and Douville (2006 and 2007)).

**Horton runoff approach.** The Horton runoff occurs for a rainfall intensity that exceeds the effective maximum infiltration capacity. This infiltration excess mechanism tends to dominate the overland flow production in most desert or semiarid regions where short rainfall events can be very intense, but also where the absence of vegetation and other organic matter prevents the development of a porous soil structure through which water can move easily. The development of a thin crust at the soil surface can also inhibit the infiltration (arid or frozen soil). So the Horton runoff,  $Q_{hort}$ , is calculated using two infiltration functions following Decharme and Douville (2006):

$$Q_{hort} = (1 - \delta_f) \times \max(0, S_m + P_g - I_{unf}) + \delta_f \max(0, S_m + P_g - I_f) \quad (4.30)$$

where  $S_m$  is snowmelt,  $P_g$  the throughfall rain rate,  $I_{unf}$  and  $I_f$  the infiltration functions over unfrozen and frozen soil, and  $\delta_f$  the fraction of the frozen soil. These functions depend on root zone soil moisture conditions as well as on soil hydraulic properties. When the Horton runoff (being estimated only on the non-saturated fraction of the grid) is activated with the VIC or the TOPMODEL runoff, the surface runoff is given by :

$$Q_s = Q_{top\_or\_vic} + (1 - f_{sat}) Q_{hort} \quad (4.31)$$

**Treatment of drainage** The gravitational drainage when  $w > w_{fc}$  is given by the following equations (Mahfouf and Noilhan (1996), Boone *et al.* (1999)) :

$$K_2 = \frac{C_3}{\tau} \frac{d_3}{d_2} \max[0, (w_2 - w_{fc})] \quad (4.32)$$

$$K_3 = \frac{C_3}{\tau} \frac{d_3}{d_3 - d_2} \max[0, (w_3 - w_{fc})] \quad (4.33)$$

where  $\tau$  is a characteristic time (one day).

$C_3$  is the *force-restore* parameter which account for the velocity at which the humidity profile is restored to the field capacity. This parameter depends on the hydraulic properties of the soil (Noilhan and Mahfouf (1996)). In ISBA, it can be described by an empirical equation and depends on the proportion of clay in the grid cell.

$$C_3 = 5.327 \cdot X_{clay}^{-1.043} \quad (4.34)$$

**Subgrid drainage** In the original formulation, the drainage stops below the field capacity  $w_{fc}$ . Within the framework of the Safran-Isba-Modcou model Habets *et al.* (2008) a subgrid drainage was introduced in order to account for unresolved aquifers in the model. A residual drainage was introduced in ISBA. The equations above are slightly modified :

$$K_2 = \frac{C_3}{\tau} \frac{d_3}{d_2} \max[w_{d2}, (w_2 - w_{fc})] \quad (4.35)$$

$$K_3 = \frac{C_3}{\tau} \frac{d_3}{d_3 - d_2} \max[w_{d3}, (w_3 - w_{fc})] \quad (4.36)$$

In this formulation,  $w_{di}$  (for each layer  $i$ ) is expressed as :

$$w_{di} = w_{drain} \max \left( 0, \frac{\min(w_{fc}, w_i) - w_{gmin}}{w_{fc} - w_{gmin}} \right) \quad (4.37)$$

where  $w_{drain}$  is a parameter to be calibrated, and  $w_{gmin}$  a small parameter to avoid numerical problems.  $w_{drain}$  must be calibrated using discharge measurements during dry periods. See Caballero *et al.* (2007), and Habets *et al.* (2008) for calibration with discharge for the Safran-Isba-Modcou model.

### Treatment of soil ice

The inclusion of soil freezing necessitates the addition of so-called phase change to the thermal and hydrologic transfer equations. In addition, a freezing/drying wetting/thawing analogy is used to model changes in the force-restore coefficients so that they must also be modified accordingly. Terms which have been added to the baseline ISBA scheme are underlined in this section, while terms which are modified are denoted using an \* superscript. Additional details related to soil freezing scheme can be found in Boone *et al.* (2000) and Boone (2000).

The basic prognostic equations including soil ice are expressed as

$$\frac{\partial T_s}{\partial t} = C_T^* \left[ R_n - H - LE^* - L_f(M_s - \underline{F_{gw}}) \right] - \frac{2\pi}{\tau} (T_s - T_2) , \quad (4.38)$$

$$\frac{\partial T_2}{\partial t} = \frac{1}{\tau} (T_s - T_2) + C_G^* L_f \underline{F_{2w}} , \quad (4.39)$$

$$\frac{\partial w_g}{\partial t} = \frac{1}{d_1 \rho_w} \left[ C_1^* (P_g - E_{gl} + M_s) - \underline{F_{gw}} \right] - \frac{C_2^*}{\tau} (w_g - w_{geq}^*) \quad (4.40)$$

$$(w_{min} \leq w_g \leq w_{sat} - w_{gf}) , \quad (4.41)$$

$$\frac{\partial w_2}{\partial t} = \frac{1}{d_p \rho_w} (P_g - E_{gl} - E_{tr}^* + M_s - \underline{F_{2w}}) - \frac{C_3}{\tau} \max(0, w_2 - w_{fc}^*) \quad (4.42)$$

$$(w_{\min} \leq w_2 \leq w_{\text{sat}} - w_{2f}) , \quad (4.43)$$

$$\frac{\partial w_{gf}}{\partial t} = \frac{1}{d_1 \rho_w} (F_{gw} - E_{gf}) \quad (0 \leq w_{gf} \leq w_{\text{sat}} - w_{\min}) , \quad (4.44)$$

$$\frac{\partial w_{2f}}{\partial t} = \frac{1}{(d_2 - d_1) \rho_w} F_{2w} \quad (0 \leq w_{2f} \leq w_{\text{sat}} - w_{\min}) . \quad (4.45)$$

where  $w_{gf}$  and  $w_{2f}$  represent the volumetric soil ice content ( $\text{m}^3 \text{m}^{-3}$ ) in the surface and deep-soil reservoirs, respectively. The phase change mass and heat sink (source) terms ( $F$ ;  $\text{kg m}^{-2} \text{s}^{-1}$ ) are expressed as

$$F_{gw} = (1 - p_{\text{sn}g}) (F_{gf} - F_{gm}) , \quad (4.46)$$

$$F_{2w} = (1 - p_{\text{sn}g}) (F_{2f} - F_{2m}) , \quad (4.47)$$

where the  $m$  and  $f$  subscripts represent melting and freezing, respectively. The freezing and melting phase change terms are formulated using simple relationships based on the potential energy available for phase change. They are expressed for the surface soil layer as

$$F_{gf} = (1/\tau_i) \min [K_s \epsilon_{sf} \max(0, T_0 - T_s)/C_I L_f, \rho_w d_1 (w_g - w_{\min})] , \quad (4.48)$$

$$F_{gm} = (1/\tau_i) \min [K_s \epsilon_{sm} \max(0, T_s - T_0)/C_I L_f, \rho_w d_1 w_{gf}] , \quad (4.49)$$

and for the deep soil layer as

$$F_{2f} = (\delta_{2f}/\tau_i) \min [\epsilon_{2f} \max(0, T_0 - T_2)/C_I L_f, \rho_w (d_2 - d_1) (w_2 - w_{\min})] , \quad (4.50)$$

$$F_{2m} = (1/\tau_i) \min [\epsilon_{2m} \max(0, T_2 - T_0)/C_I L_f, \rho_w (d_2 - d_1) w_{2f}] . \quad (4.51)$$

The characteristic time scale for freezing is represented by  $\tau_i$  (s). The phase change efficiency coefficients,  $\epsilon$ , introduce a dependence on the water mass available for phase changes which are expressed as the ratio of the liquid volumetric water content to the total soil porosity for freezing, and the ratio of ice content to the porosity for melting. The ice thermal inertia coefficient is defined as  $C_I = 2(\pi/\lambda_i C_i \rho_i \tau)^{1/2}$  ( $\text{J m}^{-2} \text{K}^{-1}$ ). The insulating effect of vegetation is modeled using a coefficient defined as

$$K_s = \left(1 - \frac{\text{veg}}{K_2}\right) \left(1 - \frac{\text{LAI}}{K_3}\right) , \quad (4.52)$$

where the dimensionless coefficients have the values  $K_2 = 5.0$  and  $K_3 = 30.0$  (Giard and Bazile (2000)). The most direct effect of vegetation cover is to slow the rate of phase changes for more dense vegetation cover as energy not used for phase change is assumed to cool/warm the vegetative portion of the lumped soil-vegetation layer.

The deep-soil phase change (freezing) term is multiplied by a factor ( $\delta_{2f}$ ) which essentially limits ice production during prolonged cold periods. It is defined as 0 if  $z_f \geq z_{f\text{max}}$  where

$$z_{f\text{max}} = 4/(C_G^* c_g) \quad (4.53)$$

and the actual depth of ice in the soil is defined as

$$z_f = d_2 \left( \frac{w_{2f}}{w_{2f} + w_2} \right) \quad (0 \leq z_f < d_2) \quad (4.54)$$

Ice is assumed to become part of the solid soil matrix. This is accomplished by defining the modified porosity (eg. Johnsson and Lundin (1991)) as

$$w_{\text{sat}}^* = w_{\text{sat}} - w_{jf} \quad (4.55)$$

where  $j$  corresponds to the surface ( $g$ ) or sub-surface (2) soil water reservoirs. This, in turn, is used to modify the force-restore coefficients (see Boone *et al.* (2000)) for more details.

### 4.1.2 Diffusive approach

#### Governing Equations

The governing equations for the heat and mass transfer from the surface down through the soil column for the snow-free case are expressed as (Boone (2000), Boone *et al.* (2000), Habets *et al.* (2002)):

$$c_h \frac{\partial T_g}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial G}{\partial z} + \Phi \quad (4.56)$$

$$\frac{\partial w_l}{\partial t} = -\frac{\partial F}{\partial z} - \frac{\Phi}{L_f \rho_w} - \frac{S_l}{\rho_w} \quad (w_{min} \leq w_l \leq w_{sat} - w_i) \quad (4.57)$$

$$\frac{\partial w_i}{\partial t} = \frac{\Phi}{L_f \rho_w} - \frac{S_i}{\rho_w} \quad (0 \leq w_i \leq w_{sat} - w_{min}) \quad (4.58)$$

Eq. (4.56) is the vertical component of the heat transfer equation: heat flow is induced along the thermal gradient and due to convection,  $c_h$  is the total heat capacity ( $\text{J m}^{-3} \text{K}^{-1}$ ): it is represented by a lumped heat capacity in the surface layer, and by the soil heat capacity ( $c_g$ ) in the sub-surface layers.  $\lambda$  is the thermal conductivity ( $\text{W m}^{-1} \text{K}^{-1}$ ),  $F$  is the vertical flow rate of water ( $\text{m s}^{-1}$ ),  $T_g$  is the composite soil-vegetation temperature (K) at the surface and the soil temperature only for sub-surface layers,  $\Phi$  ( $\text{J m}^{-3} \text{s}^{-1}$ ) is a latent heat source/sink resulting from phase transformation of soil water, and the soil depth,  $z$  (m), is increasing downward.

$w_l$  and  $w_i$  in Eq.s (4.57) and (4.58) represent the volumetric liquid water and liquid water equivalent ice contents of the soil ( $\text{m}^3 \text{m}^{-3}$ ), respectively. They are related to the total volumetric water content ( $\text{m}^3 \text{m}^{-3}$ ) through

$$w = w_l + w_i . \quad (4.59)$$

In Eq. (4.57),  $S_l$  (evapotranspiration, lateral inflow) and  $S_i$  (sublimation) represent external sources/sinks ( $\text{kg m}^{-3} \text{s}^{-1}$ ), of the liquid and ice liquid equivalent soil water, respectively,  $L_f$  is the latent heat of fusion ( $3.337 \times 10^5 \text{ J kg}^{-1}$ ), and  $\rho_w$  is the density of liquid water ( $1000 \text{ kg m}^{-3}$ ). The total soil porosity is  $w_{sat}$  ( $\text{m}^3 \text{m}^{-3}$ ), and  $w_{min}$  is a minimum liquid water threshold ( $0.001 \text{ m}^3 \text{m}^{-3}$ ).

The phase change terms on the right-hand sides of Eq.s (4.57) and (4.58) represent a mass transfer between the solid and liquid phases of the soil water. The continuity equation for the total soil volumetric water content is obtained by adding Eq.s (4.57) and (4.58) and then substituting Eq. (4.59) into the resulting expression to have

$$\frac{\partial w}{\partial t} = -\frac{\partial F}{\partial z} - \frac{1}{\rho_w} (S_i + S_l) \quad (w_{min} \leq w \leq w_{sat}) .$$

#### Surface and soil heat transfer

Heat flow is along the thermal gradient, so that the soil heat flux ( $\text{W m}^{-2}$ ) can be expressed as

$$G = \lambda \frac{\partial T}{\partial z} .$$

The soil thermal conductivity and heat capacity are expression as functions of soil properties and moisture. The parameterizations are described below.

**Calculation of the thermal properties** The thermal heat capacity and thermal conductivity are parameterized as functions of the soil moisture and texture by most SVAT schemes. SVAT schemes which participated in PILPS-phase2c predicted, in general, ground heat fluxes poorly, which is most likely related to thermal

conductivity parameterization Liang *et al.* (1996). ISBA uses the formulations from McCumber and Pielke (1981 : MP81) together with parameter values from Clapp and Hornberger (1978) to evaluate the heat capacity and thermal conductivity (Noilhan and Planton (1989: NP89)), but it is known that thermal conductivity estimates using the MP81 model tend to be too large for wet conditions (nearing saturation) while underestimating thermal conductivity for dry soils. Also, there is no consideration of frozen soils in this formulation. There are several alternatives to using the MP81 model for thermal conductivity, and one such method is that discussed in Peters-Lidard *et al.* (1998). The layer-averaged soil heat capacity can be written as

$$c_{gj} = (1 - w_{sat})C_{soil}\rho_{soil} + w_{lj}c_w + w_{ij}c_i \quad (4.60)$$

where  $c_i$  and  $c_w$  are the heat capacities of ice and liquid water, ( $\text{J K}^{-1} \text{m}^{-3}$ ).  $C_{soil}$  is the specific heat of the soil ( $\text{J kg}^{-1} \text{K}^{-1}$ ) and  $\rho_{soil}$  represents the soil dry density. The specific heat ( $C_{soil}$ ) value of  $733 \text{ J kg}^{-1} \text{K}^{-1}$  for soil minerals/quartz from Peters-Lidard *et al.* (1998) is used. The dry density is sometimes measured, but it can also be estimated from the soil porosity assuming the same solids unit weight (Peters-Lidard *et al.* (1998)):

$$\rho_{soil} = (1 - w_{sat})\rho_{solids} ,$$

where  $\rho_{solids}$  represents the unit weight of the solids ( $2700 \text{ kg m}^3$ ). The heat capacity of air in the soil is neglected in Eq. (4.60).

For fine soils or coarse frozen soils, the method of Johansen (1975) was shown by Farouki (1986) to be the most accurate relative to other commonly used methods for calculating thermal conductivity. Following Peters-Lidard *et al.* (1998), the thermal conductivity is calculated as the weighted sum of the dry and saturated thermal conductivities from (Johansen (1975))

$$\lambda = K_e \lambda_{sat} + (1 - K_e) \lambda_{dry} \quad (4.61)$$

where  $K_e$  is the non-dimensional Kersten number.

The dry thermal conductivity is defined as

$$\lambda_{dry} = \frac{0.135\rho_{soil} + 64.7}{\rho_{solids} - 0.947\rho_{soil}} ,$$

where  $\lambda_{dry}$  is in  $\text{W m}^{-1} \text{K}^{-1}$ . For crushed rock,

$$\lambda_{dry} = 0.039 w_{sat}^{-2.2} .$$

The saturated thermal conductivity is written as

$$\lambda_{sat} = \lambda_{soil}^{(1-w_{sat})} \lambda_i^{(w_{sat}-\chi_u)} \lambda_w^{\chi_u} \quad (4.62)$$

where  $\chi_u$  represents the unfrozen volume fraction of the soil. It is defined as

$$\chi_u = w_{sat} (w_l/w) \quad (0 \leq \chi_u \leq w_{sat}) .$$

In Eq. (4.62),  $\lambda_i$  represents the thermal conductivity of ice ( $2.2 \text{ W m}^{-1} \text{K}$ ),  $\lambda_w$  represents the thermal conductivity of water ( $0.57 \text{ W m}^{-1} \text{K}$ ), and the thermal conductivity of solids is written as

$$\lambda_{soil} = \lambda_q^q \lambda_o^{1-q} .$$

The quartz content ( $0 \leq q \leq 1$ ) is non-dimensional. It is fit as a function of sand (following the method of Noilhan and Lacarrère (1995) using the data from PL98:

$$q = 0.038 + 0.0095 X_{sand} \quad (4.63)$$

where the fraction of the soil comprised by sand is represented by  $X_{\text{sand}}$  (%). The relation is shown graphically in Fig. (4.3). The thermal conductivity of quartz is represented as  $\lambda_q$  ( $7.7 \text{ W m}^{-1} \text{ K}$ ), and the thermal conductivity of other minerals is represented as  $\lambda_o$  ( $\text{W m}^{-1} \text{ K}$ ) where

$$\lambda_o = \begin{cases} 2.0 & q > 0.2 \\ 3.0 & q \leq 0.2 \end{cases}$$

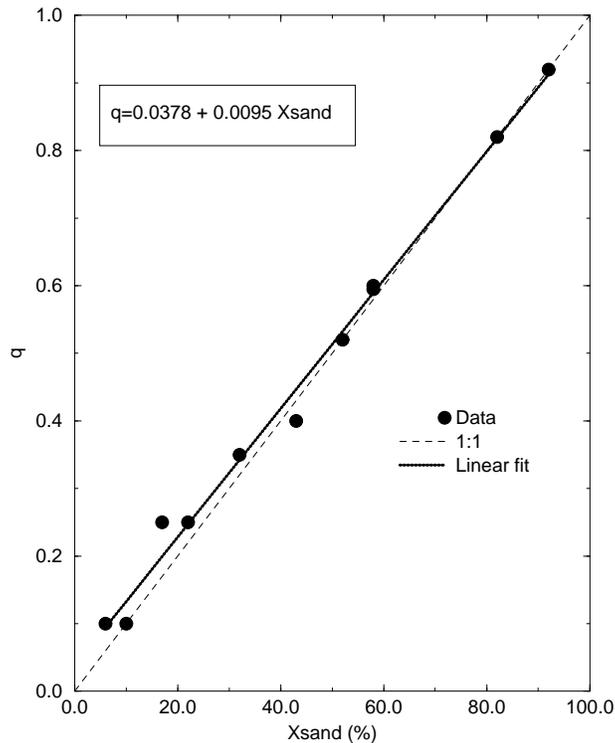


Figure 4.3: The relation between quartz content ( $q$ ) and sand fraction ( $X_{\text{sand}}$ ) of the soil (%). The relationship between quartz and sand content is described by Eq. (4.63). The data are plotted using the values of  $q$  from Peters-Lidard *et al.* (1998) and the sand fraction from Cosby *et al.* (1984).

The Kersten number is written as

$$K_e = \begin{cases} 0.7 \log_{10} \theta + 1.0 & \theta > 0.05 \quad \text{coarse} \\ \log_{10} \theta + 1.0 & \theta > 0.1 \quad \text{fine} \end{cases},$$

and for frozen soils it is

$$K_e = \theta \tag{4.64}$$

where  $\theta$  is the degree of saturation ( $w/w_{\text{sat}}$ ) of the soil layer. Because use of Eq. (4.64) can result in a large jump in  $K_e$  as a soil begins to freeze, the following expression is used for partially frozen fine soils:

$$K_e = (w_l/w) (\log_{10} \theta + 1.0) + (w_i/w) \theta \tag{4.65}$$

The same weighting scheme in Eq. (4.65) can be used for coarse soils as well.

**Integration of the heat equation** Integrating the heat transfer equation [Eq. (4.56)] downward into the soil to obtain the average temperature for  $N$  soil layers:

$$\int_{-z_j}^{-z_{j-1}} c_h \frac{\partial T_g}{\partial t} dz = \int_{-z_j}^{-z_{j-1}} \frac{\partial G}{\partial z} dz + \int_{-z_j}^{-z_{j-1}} \Phi dz \quad (4.66)$$

where

$$T_{g,j} = \frac{1}{\Delta z_j} \int_{-z_j}^{-z_{j-1}} T_g dz \quad (4.67)$$

$T_{g,j}$  is the layer averaged temperature ( $j = 1, \dots, N$ ), the vertical index  $j$  is increasing downward and  $\Delta z_j$  is defined as  $z_j - z_{j-1}$ .

Carrying out the integration in Eq. 4.66 using the operator in Eq. 4.67 yields

$$\Delta z_j c_{h,j} \frac{\partial T_{g,j}}{\partial t} = G_{j-1} - G_j + \Delta z_j \Phi_j \quad (4.68)$$

The layer average temperature  $T_{g,j}$  is assumed to be centered at  $(z_j + z_{j-1})/2$ . The layer-averaged heat capacity of each layer is represented as

$$c_{h,j} = \begin{cases} c_{g,j} & (j = 2, N) \\ 1/(C_T \Delta z_1) & (j = 1) \end{cases} .$$

where the surface thermal inertia coefficient ( $C_T$ :  $\text{K m}^{-2} \text{J}^{-1}$ ) is described in the next section. The soil heat flux across each level  $z_j$  is defined using the flux defined from Carslaw and Jaeger (1959) as

$$G_j = \bar{\lambda}_j \frac{(T_{g,j} - T_{g,j+1})}{(\Delta z_j + \Delta z_{j+1})/2} ,$$

where  $\bar{\lambda}_j$  is the thermal conductivity at the interface between two layers expressed as

$$\bar{\lambda}_j = \frac{\Delta z_j + \Delta z_{j+1}}{(\Delta z_{j+1}/\lambda_{j+1}) + (\Delta z_j/\lambda_j)} .$$

In general, the contribution of convective heating to the local soil temperature change is relatively small and can be neglected. Vapor transfer effects have been incorporated and are currently being tested: they are not outlined here. The model grid configuration is shown in Fig. 4.4. The shaded region at the surface represents a vegetation/biomass/litter layer. The prognostic variables ( $T_{g,j}$ ,  $w_l$ , and  $w_i$ ) are shown (water store variables will be discussed in subsequent sections).

## Boundary conditions

**Upper boundary condition** The surface temperature of the mixed soil-vegetation medium is expressed as:

$$\frac{1}{C_T} \frac{\partial T_s}{\partial t} = R_n - H - LE - G_1 + \Delta z_1 \Phi_1 \quad (4.69)$$

where  $T_s = T_{g,1}$ , and the flux between the atmosphere and the surface is expressed as  $G_0 = G = R_n - H - LE$ . This definition of the prognostic equation for  $T_s$  is similar to that presented by Bhumralkar (1975) and Blackadar (1979). It is the same as the standard Force-Restore method of Noilhan and Planton (1989) if  $G_1$  is expressed as a restore term. The thermal inertia coefficient for the composite surface layer is expressed as

$$C_T = \frac{1}{veg/C_V + (1 - veg)/C_G}$$

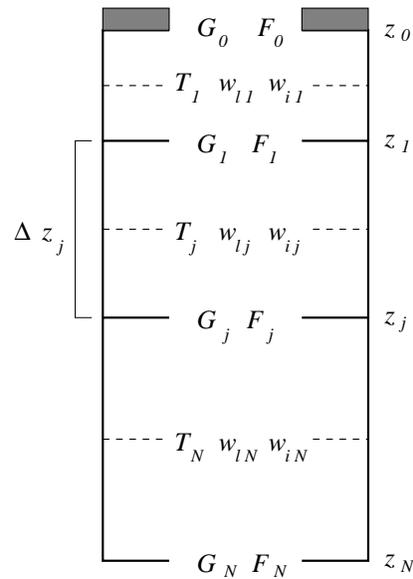


Figure 4.4: The model grid configuration: soil prognostic variables temperature ( $T_{g,j}$ ), liquid volumetric water content ( $w_{lj}$ ) and volumetric ice content ( $w_{ij}$ ) are layer mean quantities. The soil heat ( $G_j$ ) and liquid water fluxes ( $F_j$ ) are evaluated at each level,  $z_j$ . The surface energy budget is evaluated defining  $T_s = T_{g,1}$ . The shaded region at the surface represents a vegetation/biomass/litter. The soil depth,  $z$ , is increasing downward (away from the atmosphere).

where  $veg$  represents the vegetation cover fraction. The thermal inertia for the vegetation ( $C_V$ ) can be case or species dependent. The soil thermal inertia is defined following Noilhan and Planton (1989) as

$$C_G = 2 \left( \frac{\pi}{\lambda_1 c_g 1 \tau} \right)^{1/2}$$

where  $\tau$  is a time constant corresponding to one day. In ISBA, the vegetation medium and the uppermost soil layer are lumped together and are assumed to have the same temperature (i.e.  $T_s = T_v$ , where  $T_v$  represents the vegetation temperature). The uppermost soil thickness,  $\Delta z_1$ , must be chosen to be sufficiently thin in order to be consistent with the daily surface temperature cycle (i.e., several cm).

The flux between the surface layer and the sub-surface soil layer is expressed as

$$\begin{aligned} G_1 &= 2 \bar{\lambda}_1 \frac{(T_s - T_{g,2})}{\Delta z_1 + \Delta z_2} \\ \bar{\lambda}_1 &= \frac{\Delta z_1 + \Delta z_2}{(\Delta z_1 / \lambda_s) + (\Delta z_2 / \lambda_2)} \end{aligned}$$

$$(4.70)$$

The thermal conductivity of the surface layer is represented by  $\lambda_s$ . There is an option to include the effects of a vegetation/mulch/thin biomass litter layer using:

$$\lambda_s = [1 - veg(1 - f_v)] \lambda_1$$

where  $f_v$  is a reduction factor for the surface layer thermal conductivity due to the presence of mulch or organic material. The value of this parameter ranges between  $0 < f_v \leq 1$ , depending upon the insulating effect of the material. Following from the ideas of Gonzalez-Sosa *et al.* (2001), it is assumed that the humidity effects dominate the mulch thermal conductivity. Based on the aforementioned work at MUREX,  $f_v$  is currently assigned a value of 0.10 (meaning the mulch thermal conductivity is roughly a tenth of that corresponding to the soil). The impact of assuming a lower thermal conductivity for the mulch layer is to increase the insulation of the soil (relative to a baresoil case) thereby increasing the surface energy (which can then increase the surface temperature diurnal wave amplitude, augment the surface fluxes, etc.) and diminishing the thermal wave penetration depth within the soil. In the limit when there is no vegetation (i.e.,  $veg = 0$ ), the thermal inertia coefficient collapses into  $1/C_T = \Delta z_1 c_g$  and  $\lambda_s = \lambda_1$  so that Eq. (4.69) takes on exactly the same form as the sub-surface soil temperature equations. When the mulch-layer option is inactive, then  $\lambda_s = \lambda_1$ .

**Lower boundary condition** The average temperature for the lowest layer is written using Eq.(4.68) as

$$\frac{\partial T_N}{\partial t} = \frac{(G_{N-1} - G_N)}{c_{gN} \Delta z_N} .$$

where the heat flux from below  $z_N$  is assumed to be negligible, resulting in a zero-flux lower boundary condition (i.e.  $G_N = 0$ ). Note that in order for this assumption to be valid,  $z_N$  must be sufficiently large (deep). The annual temperature wave penetration depth is, in general, on the order of several meters (eg., Figs 4.5 and 4.6), so that  $z_N$  must be at least this deep in order to accurately model the soil temperature profile at time scales of an annual cycle or more. An alternate method to increasing the soil depth is to specify the lower boundary flux using an annual mean soil temperature and an appropriate scaling depth (Lynch-Stieglitz (1994)). This depth can be estimated as the annual wave penetration depth [see Eq. (4.73)]. The only drawback is that the mean annual soil temperature and the annual wave penetration depth must be known *a priori*. The advantages are that less model layers can be used (a lower total model depth) thereby reducing computational expense and memory/storage requirements, and the soil temperature profile is “constrained” to some extent by observational data. Currently in the model, there is an option to apply a prescribed  $T^*$  (either as a constant or varying in time) at  $z_N$

$$G_N = \lambda_N \frac{[T_N - T^*(z = z_N)]}{(z_N + z_{N-1})/2} ,$$

**Vertical grid** The soil model grid levels do not necessarily have constant spacing. The assumption that the vertical temperature gradients are largest near the surface and smaller deeper in the soil indicates that the grid spacing can increase with increasing soil depth. It is of interest to specify the first grid level to be thin enough to resolve the diurnal temperature wave. An estimate of this depth is calculated using conductivity calculated by Eq. (4.61) for thawed soils with the relation for wave penetration depth from Dickinson (1988):

$$z_d = \left( \frac{\lambda_1 \tau}{c_{g1} \pi} \right)^{1/2} \quad (4.71)$$

Since the diurnal wave penetration depth ( $z_d$ ) is a function of soil moisture and texture, an average or maximum value could also be used to a good approximation: this value might represent the  $z_d$  depth for the average soil moisture etc. The diurnal wave penetration depths computed using Eq. (4.71) are shown in Fig. (4.6). The depth  $z_d$  is plotted as a function of the normalized volumetric water content defined as

$$w_{norm} = \frac{w - w_{wilt}}{w_{sat} - w_{wilt}} \quad (0 \leq w_{norm} \leq 1) \quad (4.72)$$

The  $z_d$  depth usually ranges from 12-18 cm for most soils across their nominal range of soil moisture: values in the range from 12-15 cm could be used for most general cases.

It is of interest to compare the method of Johansen to the method of McCumber and Pielke (1981) which is used by many surface vegetation atmosphere transfer (SVAT) schemes including ISBA (Noilhan and Planton (1989)). The  $z_d$  values computed using the method of McCumber and Pielke (1981) together with the soil classification and hydrological parameter values For the force-restore method used by ISBA, this variability in  $z_d$  is accounted for as there are no fixed soil depths which effect the diurnal cycle. But when using a fixed grid geometry, as is the case for the diffusion method outlined here,  $z_d$  calculated from the method of Johansen is more consistent with a fixed grid geometry.

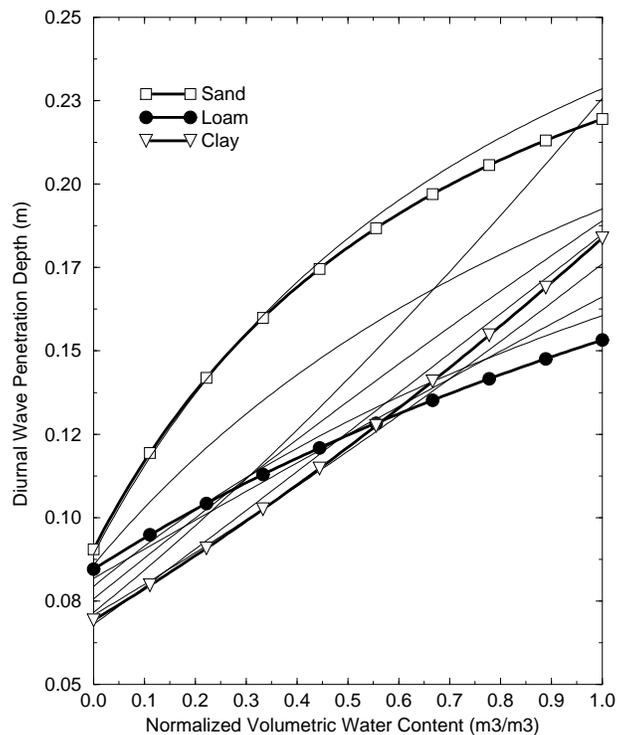


Figure 4.5: The diurnal temperature wave penetration depths ( $z_d$ ) for the 11 soil classes from Clapp and Hornberger (1978). Depths are plotted as a function of normalized soil water content [Eq. (4.72)]. Thermal conductivity is calculated using the method of McCumber and Pielke (1981) together with soil hydraulic parameter values from Clapp and Hornberger (1978). Soil depths are in m.

The depth of the lower limit of the soil-temperature model domain depends upon the time scale: if annual cycles are to be properly handled, the lower boundary depth  $z_N$  can be determined using Eq. (4.71) as

$$z_a = \left( \frac{\lambda 365 \tau}{c_g \pi} \right)^{1/2} \quad (4.73)$$

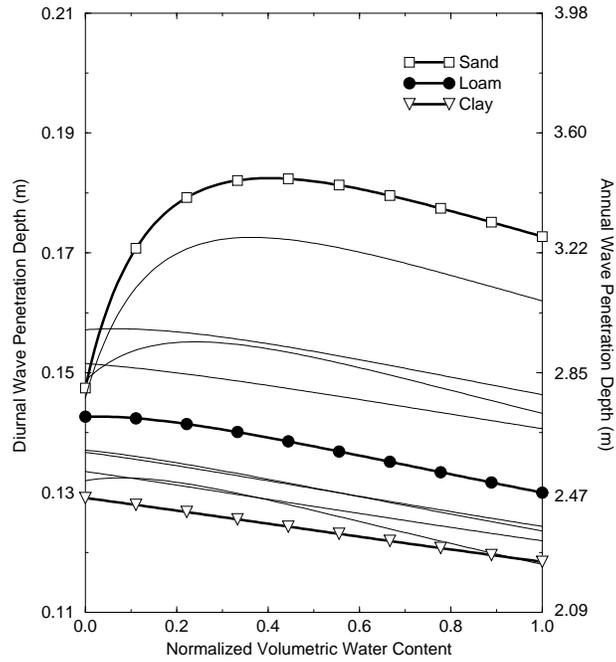


Figure 4.6: The diurnal and annual soil temperature wave penetration depths ( $z_d$ ) for the 11 soil classes from Clapp and Hornberger (1978). Depths are plotted as a function of normalized soil water content [Eq. (4.72)]. Thermal conductivity is calculated using the method of Johansen (1975) as presented by Peters-Lidard *et al.* (1998). Soil depths are in m:  $z_d$  should be used as a guide-line for determining the maximum uppermost soil layer depth,  $z_1$ , and the minimum total soil depth,  $z_N$ .

where  $z_a$  denotes the annual wave penetration depth. Note that  $c_g$  and  $\lambda$  should be evaluated using an estimate of the total soil column mean water content. The annual wave penetration depths computed using Eq. (4.73) are shown in Fig. (4.6). The depth  $z_a$  (labeled on the right side of the figure) is plotted as a function of the normalized volumetric water content.

**Numerical solution of the soil temperature equation** Neglecting the phase transformation term, Eq. (4.68) can be written using an implicit time scheme as

$$T_j^n = T_j^{n-1} + \frac{\Delta t}{c_{gj} \Delta z_j} \left[ (1 - \varphi) (G_{j-1}^{n-1} - G_j^{n-1}) + \varphi (G_{j-1}^n - G_j^n) \right] \quad (4.74)$$

where  $\varphi = 1$  (backward difference) is currently used for the soil temperature profile ( $\varphi = 1/2$  corresponds to the Crank-Nicolson scheme). Using either scheme, the linear set of diffusion equations can be cast in tridiagonal form and solved with relative ease. Although the Crank-Nicolson scheme is more accurate (second order), the surface energy budget equation is solved in ISBA using the backward difference scheme, so for consistency this scheme is used to evaluate the diffusion term in Eq. (4.68).

The superscripts  $n - 1$  and  $n$  represent the values at the beginning and end of the time step,  $\Delta t$ , respectively. The solution method is shown in Appendix B. Once the new temperature profile has been determined, phase changes are evaluated and the profile is updated. The phase change method is described in section 4.

### Liquid Soil Water

The vertical soil water flux from Eq. (4.57) is derived assuming soil water transfer arises due to pressure gradients and a background drainage, and it is expressed as

$$F = -k \frac{\partial}{\partial z} (\psi + z) - \frac{D_{\nu\psi}}{\rho_w} \frac{\partial \psi}{\partial z} - K_d \quad (4.75)$$

where  $F$  is the vertical soil water flux ( $\text{m s}^{-1}$ ),  $k$  is the hydraulic conductivity ( $\text{m s}^{-1}$ ),  $\psi$  is the soil matric potential (m),  $K_d$  is an additional linear background (low) drainage term ( $\text{m s}^{-1}$ ), and  $z$  is the soil depth (m). The first term on the right hand side of Eq. (4.75) represents Darcy's law for liquid water transfer. The second term represents the water flux due to vapor transfer. The third is used to maintain a minimum streamflow under dry conditions. The isothermal vapor conductivity  $D_{\nu\psi}$  ( $\text{kg m}^{-2} \text{s}^{-1}$ ) is a function of soil texture, water content and temperature following Braud *et al.* (1993), except for some slight modifications due to the inclusion of soil ice outlined here.

This representation of the fluxes results in the so-called "mixed-form" of the Richard's equation. It permits the use of a heterogenous soil texture profile (by considering the gradient of matric potential as opposed to soil water content).

**Flux parameterization** The vertical soil water flux term [Eq. (4.75)] can be expressed in more compact form as:

$$F = -\eta \frac{\partial \psi}{\partial z} - \zeta \quad (4.76)$$

where  $\eta$  ( $\text{m}^2 \text{s}^{-1}$ ) represents the effective diffusion coefficient and  $\zeta$  is the total drainage flux ( $\text{m s}^{-1}$ ). They are expressed as

$$\begin{aligned} \eta &= \wp (k + D_{\nu\psi}) \\ \zeta &= k + K_d \end{aligned} \quad (4.77)$$

The factor  $\wp$  is a coefficient which acts to limit vertical diffusion in the presence of a freezing front (see [Eq. (4.80)]). The first term on the RHS of Eq. (4.76) is the diffusion term and usually is positive (directed upward), the exceptions possibly being during precipitation, snowmelt or perhaps soil thaw events. The second term on the RHS of Eq. (4.76) represents total drainage and is always directed (positive) downward. Note that if vapor diffusion is neglected, the soil is not frozen and the linear drainage term (option) is negligible, the vertical flux given by Eq. (4.75) collapses into the standard Darcy flux expression for liquid water movement:

$$F = -k \frac{\partial}{\partial z} (\psi + z) .$$

**Soil Freezing** As a soil freezes, ice is assumed to become part of the soil matrix thereby reducing the liquid water holding capacity of the soil. The degree of saturation of the soil by liquid water is expressed as

$$\Theta = \frac{w - w_i}{w_{sat} - w_i} = \frac{w_l}{w_{sat l}} \quad (0 \leq \Theta \leq 1) ,$$

where  $w_{sat l}$  represents the soil liquid water holding capacity. The porosity is decreased in the presence of soil ice as it is assumed ice becomes part of the soil matrix (see Boone *et al.* (2000) for more information).

The hydraulic conductivity and soil water potential are related to the liquid volumetric soil water content through the relations (Clapp and Hornberger (1978)):

$$k = k_{sat} \Theta^{2b+3} \quad (4.78)$$

$$\psi = \psi_{sat} \Theta^{-b} \quad (4.79)$$

where  $b$  is an empirical parameter,  $k_{sat}$  is the hydraulic conductivity at saturation,  $\psi_{sat}$  is the water potential at saturation and  $w_{sat}$  is the soil porosity. In recent years, several SVATs (eg. VISA: Yang and Niu (2003)) have adopted the idea that the saturated hydraulic conductivity decreases exponentially with increasing soil depth (Beven and Kirby (1979)). This can be handled by ISBA-DIF since Richard's equation is expressed in mixed-form (i.e. a heterogeneous profile of  $k_{sat}$  can be specified).

Soil ice has the effect of decreasing the hydraulic conductivity relative to a thawed soil with the same total soil moisture. The ice impedance coefficient is represented by  $\varphi$ . It is calculated following Johnsson and Lundin (1991):

$$\varphi = 10^{-a_\varphi w_i/w} \quad (4.80)$$

where the coefficient  $a_\varphi$  is currently assigned a value of 6 proposed by Lundin (1990). This coefficient prevents an overestimation of the upward liquid water flux to the freezing front. Note that the model is rather sensitive to this parameter, and a calibration might be required to obtain optimal agreement with observations. The dependence of  $\varphi$  on ice content ratio ( $w_i/w$ ) is shown in Fig. 4.7. Note that the effect of this coefficient is currently under investigation, and that alternate formulations (such as dependence on soil temperature rather than soil ice) will also be explored.

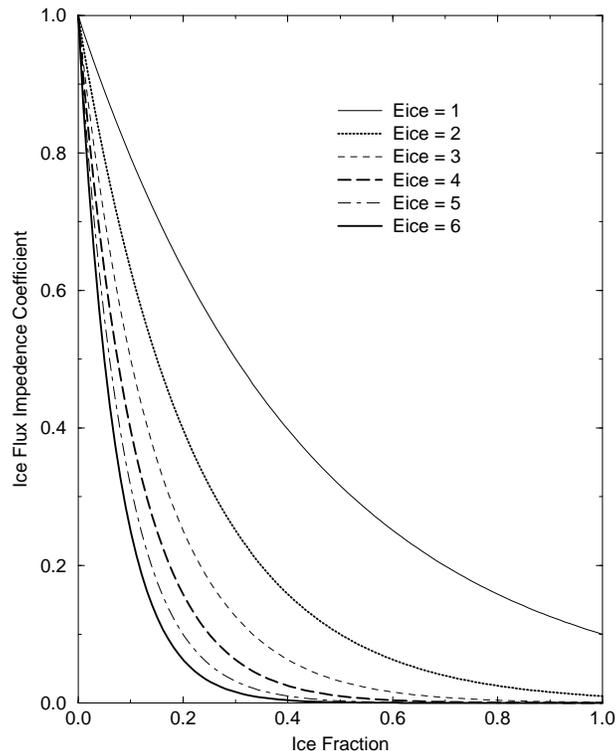


Figure 4.7: The dependence on the water flux impedance factor ( $\varphi$ ) on soil ice fraction ( $w_i/w$ ) for various values of  $a_\varphi$  (denoted as “Eice” in the figure). This coefficient is multiplied by the vertical soil water flux, and as such can strongly modulate vertical flow of liquid water and subsequent freezing.

**Vapor diffusion** The isothermal vapor conductivity can be expressed as

$$D_{\nu\psi} = D_{\nu} \frac{\partial \rho_{\nu}}{\partial \psi} \quad (4.81)$$

where  $\rho_{\nu}$  represents the water vapor density in the air-filled pore space of the soil, and  $D_{\nu}$  represents an effective molecular diffusivity (Milly (1982)). It can be written following Braud *et al.* (1993) as

$$D_{\nu} = D_{\nu a} \alpha_{\nu} f_{\nu a} \frac{p}{(p - p_{\nu})} \quad (4.82)$$

where the tortuosity is  $\alpha_{\nu} = 0.66$ , and the atmospheric and soil vapor pressures are represented by  $p$  and  $p_{\nu}$ , respectively. The function  $f_{\nu a}$  is defined as

$$f_{\nu a} = \begin{cases} [w_{sat} - (w_l + w_i)] [1 + (w_l + w_i) / (w_{sat} - w_k)] & (w > w_k) \\ w_{sat} & (w \leq w_k) \end{cases},$$

where  $w_k$  is a parameter which defines the point corresponding to the loss of continuity of the liquid phase in the soil pores ( $0.05 \text{ m}^3 \text{ m}^{-3}$  for the current study). The function  $f_{\nu a}$  is related to the available pore space for vapor, or volumetric air content ( $w_{sat} - w_l - w_i$ ). The molecular diffusivity coefficient for water vapor is given as

$$D_{\nu a} = c_{\nu} \left( \frac{p_0}{p} \right) \left( \frac{T}{T_f} \right)^{n_{\nu}},$$

where  $c_{\nu} = 2.17 \times 10^{-5} \text{ m}^2 \text{ s}^{-1}$ ,  $n_{\nu} = 1.88$ , and  $p_0 = 10^6 \text{ Pa}$ . It is assumed that the soil water vapor is in equilibrium with the liquid, and that the air is saturated with respect to the ice present in the soil so that the vapor density can be expressed as

$$\rho_{\nu} = \rho_{\nu sat}(T) \chi_{sat} h_{\nu} + (1 - \chi_{sat}) \rho_{\nu sat i} \min(T, T_f),$$

where the humidity is given by

$$h_{\nu} = \exp\left(\frac{\psi g}{R_{\nu} T}\right).$$

The soil ice factor is defined as

$$\chi_{sat} = (w_{sat} - w_i) / w_{sat} \quad (4.83)$$

Taking the derivative of  $\rho_{\nu}$  with respect to  $\psi$  and substituting the resulting expression and Eq. (4.82) into Eq. (4.81) using the ideal gas law for water vapor results in

$$D_{\nu\psi} = \frac{\alpha_{\nu} p}{(p - p_{\nu})} \frac{D_{\nu a} f_{\nu a} \chi_{sat} g p_{\nu sat} h_{\nu}}{(R_{\nu} T)^2}.$$

The diffusion coefficient ( $d_{\nu}$ ) is shown in Fig. (4.8) for four soil textures over the entire range of soil wetness ( $w_l/w_{sat}$ ) assuming a constant temperature and pressure of 300 K and 101325 Pa, respectively. It is largest, in general, for the most coarse textured soils approximately at or below the soil permanent wilting point value. A comparison between the vapor diffusion and the hydraulic conductivity are shown in Fig. (4.9). This shows that vapor diffusion comprises the most significant contribution to the net diffusion process over a soil water range around the wilting point. In the Isba force-restore method, this vapor phase transfer is parameterized within the coefficient  $C_1$  for dry soil (Braud *et al.* (1993) and Giordani (1996))

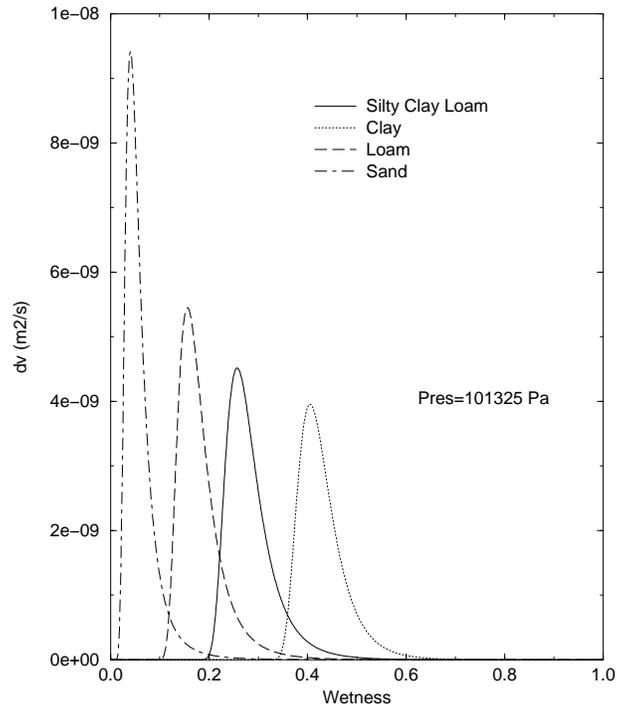


Figure 4.8: Soil vapor diffusion coefficient ( $d_v$ ) for four soil textures assuming constant soil temperature and pressure.

**Linear Drainage** ISBA is increasingly used in studies for which river hydrology is simulated. The standard Richard's equation poses a problem for dry conditions in that the observed constant minimum riverflow occurring during dry seasons is poorly simulated. The actual cause of such flows is most likely subterranean lakes, surface lakes, water table interactions, etc., which are all not currently explicitly modeled by ISBA. The most simplistic fix to this problem is to impose a linear drainage term which can be calibrated based on observed minimum riverflows outside of periods of active precipitation or snowmelt.

Etchevers *et al.* (2002) calibrated such a parameter for the 3-layer ISBA Force-Restore approach and greatly improved discharge statistics for certain sub-basins within the Rhone basin in France. In this method, a drainage is calculated assuming the water content is at some small increment just above field capacity (thereby resulting in a steady, but relatively small drainage flux). Adapting this method into the current model results in

$$K_d = k_{sat}[(w_{fc} + w_{drain})/w_{sat}]^{2b+3} \times \left\{ \frac{[\min(w_{fc}, w_l) - w_{min}]}{(w_{fc} - w_{min})} \right\}$$

The term on the left of the multiplication sign is constant in time. The rightmost term is a linear scaling term which reduces the constant drainage as the source soil layer dries out. The field capacity water content is given by  $w_{fc}$ . The  $w_{drain}$  can be calibrated and is generally on the order of  $0.001 \text{ m}^3 \text{ m}^{-3}$ , although it can vary by an order of magnitude. It is zero (therefore  $K_d = 0$ ) when this option is off (i.e. local scale studies etc.).

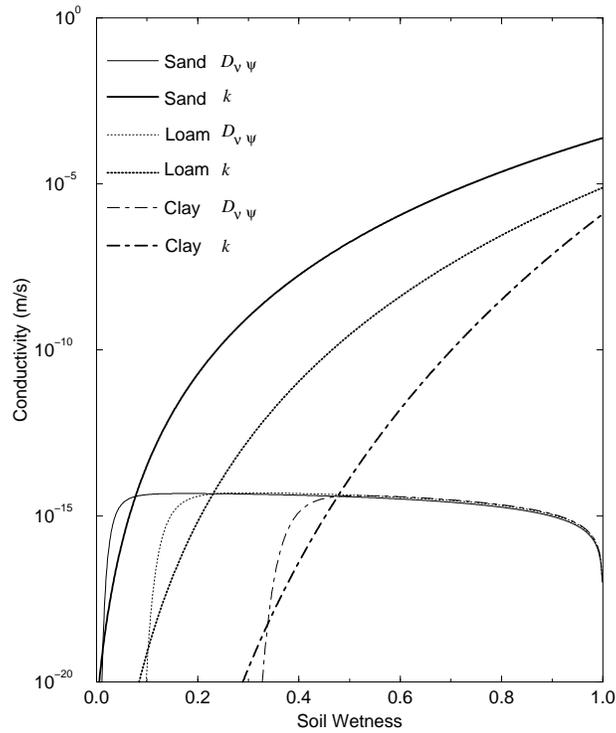


Figure 4.9: The total hydraulic conductivity contributions from liquid water ( $k$ ) and vapor ( $D_{v\psi}$ ) for three soil textures as a function of soil wetness. The soil temperature and surface atmospheric pressure have constant values of 285 K and  $10^5$  Pa, respectively.

**Layer averaging** Integrating Eq. (4.57) downward into the soil to obtain the prognostic equation for the layer-average volumetric liquid water content for each  $j$  layer gives

$$\int_{-z_j}^{-z_{j-1}} \frac{\partial w_l}{\partial t} dz = - \int_{-z_j}^{-z_{j-1}} \frac{\partial F}{\partial z} dz - \int_{-z_j}^{-z_{j-1}} \left( S_l - \frac{\Phi}{L_f \rho_w} \right) dz \quad (4.84)$$

where

$$w_{lj} = \frac{1}{\Delta z_j} \int_{-z_j}^{-z_{j-1}} w_l dz \quad (4.85)$$

$w_{lj}$  is the layer averaged volumetric liquid water content ( $j = 1, \dots, N$ ).

Carrying out the integration in Eq. 4.84 using Eq. 4.85 yields

$$\Delta z_j \frac{\partial w_{lj}}{\partial t} = F|_{-z_j} - F|_{-z_{j-1}} - Q_j - \frac{\Delta z_j \Phi_j}{L_f \rho_w},$$

where

$$Q_j = \Delta z_j S_j \quad (4.86)$$

is in  $\text{kg m}^{-2} \text{s}^{-1}$ . The flux across a model level ( $z_j$ ) is written as

$$F|_{-z_j} = F_j = \eta_j(\tilde{\psi}_j) \left[ \frac{\psi_{j+1} - \psi_j}{(\Delta z_j + \Delta z_{j+1})/2} \right] - \zeta_j(\tilde{\psi}_j) \quad (4.87)$$

$\tilde{\psi}$  represents the so-called interfacial matric potential. It is calculated from

$$\tilde{\psi}_j = \delta_{\psi_j} \psi_j + (1 - \delta_{\psi_j}) \psi_{leqj} \quad (4.88)$$

where the delta function  $\delta_{\psi_j}$  is defined as

$$\delta_{\psi_j} = \begin{cases} 1 & \psi_j \geq \psi_{leqj} \\ 0 & \psi_j < \psi_{leqj} \end{cases} .$$

$\psi_{leqj}$  is the interfaical matric potential assuming hydrostatic equilibrium. It is calculated assuming that the total matric potential or head is constant from the layer interface ( $z_j$ ) to the mid-point of the layer below (Noilhan and Planton (1989), Koster and Suarez (1996)):  $\partial\psi/\partial z = -1$ :

$$\psi_{leqj} = \psi_{j+1} - (\Delta z_j + \Delta z_{j+1})/4 .$$

From Eq. (4.88), diffusivity and conductivity are evaluated using the so-called upstream value of the matric potential, which is similar to the simple model proposed by Mahrt and Pan (1984), except that the equilibrium matric potential value is used in place of the lower layer matric potential (equivalently the volumetric water content in their case as they assumed a homogenous soil texture profile). As in Mahrt and Pan (1984), the upper layer matric potential (water content in their case) is used in the presence of a wetting front. Such an interpolation is needed due to the coarse nature of the vertical grid mesh typically used in SVATs intended for atmospheric models. A graphic representation of the interpolation method is shown for two contiguous soil layers with different textures (and therefore, different soil hydraulic properties) in Fig. 4.10.

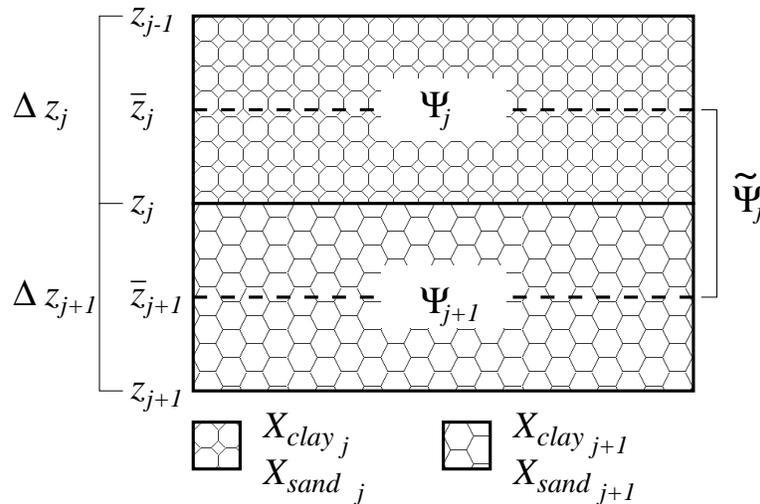


Figure 4.10: The interfacial soil matric potential.  $\tilde{\psi}_j$  represents the matric potential centered at  $z_j$ , and  $\Delta\bar{z}_j = (\Delta z_j + \Delta z_{j+1})/2$ .

This method results in a better approximation of the soil water flux than specifying that the flux from the mid-point of layer  $\Delta z_j$  to  $z_j$  is equal to that from layer  $z_j$  to the mid-point of layer  $\Delta z_{j+1}$  (as is used to derive the soil heat flux), as the diffusivity and conductivity are more consistent with the soil water gradient (Mahrt and Pan (1984)).

## Boundary Conditions

**Lower Boundary** The lower boundary condition is modeled as gravitational drainage (vertical diffusion is neglected). The mean water content of the lowest layer is used to evaluate the flux so that from Eq. (4.87)

one can write

$$F_N = -\zeta_N = -k_N - K_d .$$

Under moist conditions,  $F_N \approx -k_N$ , whereas for very dry conditions, it is possible that  $K_d$  dominates the drainage (depending on the value specified for  $K_d$ ).

The diffusion term (i.e. capillary rise across the lower model boundary) can be significant, however, when the water table is near  $z_N$ . An option exists for utilizing this information using a simple expression consistent with the vertical flux formulation used for the other model layers, however it is currently not included in the current model release (as typically water table information is not available in atmospheric models).

**Upper Boundary** The upper boundary condition represents infiltration. It is written as

$$I = -F_0 = \min(R_t - Q_r, -F_{max0}) \quad (4.89)$$

where  $I$  is infiltration ( $\text{m s}^{-1}$ ),  $R_t$  ( $\text{m s}^{-1}$ ) is the through-fall rate (sum of canopy drip, precipitation and snow-melt) and  $F_{max0}$  represents the maximum water flux into the surface soil layer. The sub-grid surface runoff,  $Q_r$ , is assumed to be zero for local spatial scales, but it can be significant at larger scales (it is described below). For simplicity, it is assumed that the maximum infiltration rate is simply given by:

$$F_{max0} = k_{sat} \quad (4.90)$$

Note that for small or point scales,  $F_{max0}$  can be sufficiently small compared to  $R_t$  to generate surface runoff from Eq. (4.89). But for climate scale applications (large time steps and spatially averaged precipitation rates),  $F_{max0}$  from Eq. (4.90) will almost always be larger than  $R_t$  (except for the cases of thoroughly frozen soils or large snowmelt rates) because rain rates are averaged over relatively large spatial (and sometimes temporal) scales.

For non-local scale applications, an alternate form of generating surface runoff is needed. A variable-infiltration capacity (VIC: Dumenil and Todoni (1992)) sub-grid surface runoff scheme is used in ISBA (Habets *et al.* (1999)).  $Q_r$  represents sub-grid surface runoff from saturated regions within the computational unit/cell which is computed as

$$\begin{aligned} Q_{r \text{ crit}} &= \left[ 1 - \frac{(\bar{w}_r - \bar{w}_{wilt})}{(\bar{w}_{sat} - \bar{w}_{wilt})} \right]^{1/(1+B)} - \frac{R_t \Delta t}{\rho_w z_r} \left[ \frac{1}{(1+B)(\bar{w}_{sat} - \bar{w}_{wilt})} \right] \\ Q_r &= R_t - \frac{\rho_w z_r}{\Delta t} \left\{ (\bar{w}_{sat} - \bar{w}_r) - (\bar{w}_{sat} - \bar{w}_{wilt}) [\max(0, Q_{r \text{ crit}})]^{1+B} \right\} \end{aligned} \quad (4.91)$$

with the constraints:

$$Q_r = 0 \quad \text{if} \quad (Q_r < 0) \quad \text{or} \quad (\bar{w}_r \leq \bar{w}_{wilt}) ,$$

$\bar{w}_r$  represents the average total water content of a soil layer (liquid and solid water:  $w$ ) integrated from the surface down to the depth  $z_r$ . It is defined as

$$\bar{w}_r = \frac{\left( \sum_{j=1}^{N_r} \Delta z_j w_j \right) + w_{N_r+1} \max(0, z_r - z_{N_r})}{\left( \sum_{j=1}^{N_r} \Delta z_j \right) + \max(0, z_r - z_{N_r})} \quad (z_r \leq z_N)$$

where  $N_r$  is the total number of soil layers for which  $z_r \geq z_j$  (i.e. the depth is greater than or equal to the lower boundary of the soil layer  $j$ ). Note that the porosity and wilting point volumetric water contents are

also averaged over  $z_r$  using the same operator. This depth should be at least several tens of centimeters thick (Liang *et al.* (1996)).

It should also be noted that several authors use a form of Darcy's law assuming the soil right at the surface is saturated as the maximum potential infiltration rate (Mahrt and Pan (1984), Abramopoulos *et al.* (1988)). This, however, has a very minimal impact on the infiltration (compared to the above equation) for the time and space scales considered in typical ISBA applications, and the linearization of such a term can pose some numerical problems (the linearized surface flux can actually exceed the amount of water available for infiltration under some rare circumstances). For these two reasons, Eq. (4.90) is used currently in ISBA.

**Solution method** The equation for liquid water transfer is solved using:

$$\varrho_j(w_{lj}^n - w_{lj}^{n-1}) = (1 - \varphi) (F_j^{n-1} - F_{j-1}^{n-1}) + \varphi (F_j^n - F_{j-1}^n) - Q_j^n .$$

where  $\varrho_j = \Delta z_j / \Delta t$ , and  $n$  indicates the value at the end of the time step,  $\Delta t$ . The Crank-Nicolson time scheme is currently used to integrate the equations in time (i.e.,  $\varphi = 1/2$ ). The flux terms can be linearized or an iterative solution method can be used. The linearization method is obviously more attractive for numerical weather prediction applications as it consumes less CPUs, and for this method, an uppermost layer of several cm thickness can safely be used for typical GCM (upper limit for  $\Delta t$ ) time steps (Bonan (1996)). Note that updates in mass owing to phase changes ( $\Phi$ ) are evaluated in a subsequent computation (see section 4).

**Soil moisture sink term** The sink term is composed of soil water losses/gains due to evapotranspiration/condensation and gains due to lateral inflow or so-called soil water excess. The production/reduction of soil ice decreases/increases the liquid soil water content while leaving the total soil water content unchanged.

**Evapotranspiration** Bare soil evaporation,  $E_g$ , is extracted from the uppermost soil layer only. Transpiration,  $E_{tr}$ , can be extracted from multiple layers. A normalized root-zone fraction is specified for each soil layer, and is zero for layers below the root zone. Normalized transpiration weights are then calculated based on the specified vertical root zone fraction and the thickness of each model soil layer:

$$\xi_j = \frac{\Upsilon_j \Delta z_j}{\sum_{j=1}^N \Upsilon_j \Delta z_j} \quad (0 \leq \xi_j \leq 1) ,$$

where  $\xi_j$  represents the transpiration weight. Note that  $\sum_{j=1}^N \xi_j = 1$  unless there are no roots, in which case  $\xi_j = 0$ .  $\Upsilon_j$  represents the root fraction:

$$\sum_j^N \Upsilon_j = 1 .$$

This parameter is not well known for many regions and transpiration from SVAT models can be highly sensitive to the vertical root zone distribution (Desborough (1997)): this study suggests the use of a uniform distribution. A uniform root zone distribution can be specified by setting  $\Upsilon_j$  constant within the root zone soil layer(s), or a simple exponential function dependent on plant cover can be specified (Jackson *et al.* (1996)). In ISBA, the effect of water stress on transpiration is modeled using a normalized soil moisture factor (Noilhan and Planton (1989), Calvet *et al.* (1998)):

$$w_{nj} = \frac{w_{lj} - \chi_{satj} w_{wiltj}}{\chi_{satj} (w_{fcj} - w_{wiltj})} \quad (\epsilon \leq w_{nj} \leq 1) \quad (4.92)$$

where  $w_{wilt}$  is the wilting point volumetric water content, and  $\epsilon$  is a small numerical value ( $\approx 10^{-3}$ ). The coefficient  $\chi_{sat}$  is related to the reduction in layer-average porosity due to the inclusion of soil ice [Eq. (4.83)]. From Eq. (4.92), soil ice in the root zone can hinder plant evaporation even if atmospheric conditions are conducive to transpiration and the total soil water content is above field capacity.

The factor in Eq. (4.92) is applied to the stomatal conductance so that transpiration can proceed at an unstressed rate relative the soil water for moisture values above field capacity, and is negligible for soils drier than wilting point. The layer-averaged water stress factor, which is applied to the net transpiration, is calculated as Pan and Mahrt (1987)

$$\bar{w}_n = \sum_{j=1}^N \xi_j w_{nj} .$$

The above coefficients are simply used to partition the transpiration among the various root-zone soil layers.

**Soil moisture excess** When the increase over a given time period in observed total soil water content exceeds that of precipitation less evapotranspiration, a laterally induced source (negative sink) is assumed to occur (Calvet *et al.* (1998)). This can be due to lateral inflow of water (most likely) or capillary rise from below the observation depth. Since vertical diffusion across the base of the model is assumed to be negligible, this source is parameterized as lateral inflow. The vertical distribution is assumed to be linear down to the depth of the soil moisture observations:

$$v_j = \frac{\delta_{vj} \Delta z_j}{\sum_{j=1}^N \delta_{vj} \Delta z_j} ,$$

where  $v_j$  represents the normalized soil water excess coefficient, and  $\delta_{vj}$  is a delta function which is either 1 or 0 depending on whether or not excess inflow is occurring in layer  $j$ . For applications where soil moisture excess is not available, this source is set to zero.

**Liquid water sink** The external soil water source/sink term [Eq. (4.86)] is expressed as

$$Q_j = \xi_j \left( \frac{w_{nj}}{\bar{w}_n} \right) E_{tr} + \delta_{gj} E_{gL} - v_j X_s .$$

$X_s$  represents the soil water excess (lateral inflow).  $E_{gL}$  is the evaporation from the bare soil surface (uppermost layer), and  $\delta_{gj}$  is a delta function which is unity only the uppermost soil layer ( $\delta_{g1} = 1$ ), and is zero for all the other soil layers. The uppermost layer is prescribed to be thin in order to capture the daily cycle in bare-soil evaporation. The root zone fraction in this layer,  $\Upsilon_1$ , is usually set to zero. The transpiration, bare-soil evaporation and water excess terms are in units of  $\text{kg m}^{-2} \text{s}^{-1}$ .

### Soil ice

Soil ice [Eq. (4.58)] increases when there is energy available for ice production, while decreases are due to melting and sublimation. In order to avoid a more computationally intensive iterative solution procedure [between Eq.s (4.56)-(4.58)], the soil temperature is first calculated using Eq. (4.74), then the phase change term ( $\Phi_j$ ) is evaluated. The temperature for a given layer at time  $n$  will then be adjusted at the end of the time step such that  $T_j^n \rightarrow T_f$  if melting or freezing occurs (where  $T_f$  is the freezing point temperature).

The method presented in Boone *et al.* (2000) and in Boone (2000) for ISBA-DIF has been modified owing to research involving PILPS-2e (Bowling *et al.* (2003)) with ISBA (Habets *et al.* (2002)). In original test simulations involving ISBA-DIF using the PILPS-2e experimental design and forcing, it was found that

nearly all of the near surface water froze, and this caused some unrealistic conditions (although no observations are available to verify this). Boone *et al.* (2000) treated NWP-time-scale events, and soil freezing was not as extensive as in the PILPS-2e domain. Thus, it was decided to adopt an approach which determines a maximum liquid water content as a function of temperature using the Gibbs free energy method. See for example Cox *et al.* (1999), Cherkauer and Lettenmaier (1999) and Koren *et al.* (1999) for examples of this method used in SVATs. Many examples exist in soil-science literature: see Boone (2000) for references. The main difference between this method and the one presented in Boone *et al.* (2000) is that not all of the available liquid water is frozen. The method outlined herein represents a near seamless model change in that it does not augment CPU's significantly, and it requires no additional parameters. The relation between the soil water potential and temperature for sub-freezing conditions is from Fuchs *et al.* (1978):

$$\psi^* = \frac{L_f (T - T_f)}{gT}$$

The potential  $\psi^*$  can be substituted in the expression for the soil matric potential in order to obtain the maximum unfrozen (liquid) water content at a given soil temperature,  $T$ . Currently for ISBA, this is the Brooks and Corey (1966) model as modified by Clapp and Hornberger (1978), so that

$$w_{l \max} = w_{\text{sat}} \left( \frac{\psi^*}{\psi_{\text{sat}}} \right)^{-1/b}$$

During phase changes, the total soil water content ( $w = w_l + w_i$ ) for each soil layer is conserved, so that, for example, as a soil freezes, the liquid water content will decrease owing to a corresponding increase in soil ice content ( $w_i$ ). This concept can be used to establish the maximum temperature at which soil ice is present (again using the Gibbs free energy concept) as

$$T_{\max} = \frac{L_f T_f}{(L_f - g\psi)}$$

where the soil liquid water potential is defined as a function of the liquid water content using the relationship from Clapp and Hornberger (1978) [Eq. (4.79)]. The maximum unfrozen fraction ( $w_{l \max}/w_{\text{sat}}$ ) and  $w_{l \max}$  as a function of temperature depression are shown in Fig. (4.11). for three soil textures. Note that a larger percentage of liquid water can freeze for more coarse textured soils and that relatively dry soils might have very cold temperatures before any freezing takes place.

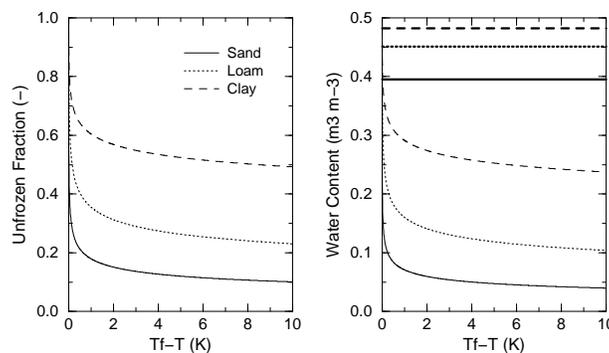


Figure 4.11: The maximum unfrozen fraction ( $w_{l \max}/w_{\text{sat}}$ ) and  $w_{l \max}$  as a function of temperature depression for three soil textures. The corresponding porosity values ( $w_{\text{sat}}$ ) are shown in the right panel (thick horizontal lines) as a reference.

The phase change term is parameterized in a manner similar to that presented in Boone (2000), Boone *et al.* (2000) and Giard and Bazile (2000), but with the available thermal energy evaluated using the difference  $T_{\max} - T$  as opposed to  $T_f - T$ , and the available liquid water for freezing being defined using  $w_l - w_{l\max}$  as opposed to  $w_l - w_{l\min}$ . The freezing and melting terms are, respectively:

$$\begin{aligned}\Phi_{fj} &= \min [K_s \epsilon_f \max(0, T_{\max j} - T_j) c_i, L_f \rho_w \max(0, w_{lj} - w_{l\max j})] / \tau_i \\ \Phi_{mj} &= \min [K_s \epsilon_m \max(0, T_j - T_{\max j}) c_i, L_f \rho_w w_{ij}] / \tau_i\end{aligned}\quad (4.93)$$

where  $c_i$  is the heat capacity of ice ( $1.883 \times 10^6 \text{ J K}^{-1} \text{ m}^{-3}$ ). A parameter which represents the characteristic time scale for phase changes is represented by  $\tau_i$  (Giard and Bazile (2000)). It can be determined through calibration, possibly (eventually) be related to soil texture. A constant value of  $3300 \text{ s}^{-1}$  is currently used. The expressions for the phase change efficiencies ( $\epsilon_f$  and  $\epsilon_m$ ) are parameterized as functions of liquid soil water for freezing and soil ice for melting (similar to the method used by Cogley *et al.* (1990) and Pitman *et al.* (1991):

$$\epsilon_j = \begin{cases} w_{lj} / (w_{\text{sat}} - w_{ij}) & (T_j \leq T_f) \\ w_{ij} / (w_{\text{sat}} - w_{\min}) & (T_j > T_f) \end{cases}.$$

The principle of using such coefficients is that it is assumed that when the grid box average liquid soil moisture is relatively large, more energy is used for freezing the soil compared to a more dry average soil with the same available energy (for freezing). It is also a rudimentary method for modeling sub-grid freezing effects. The same basic idea holds for soil ice melting.

The surface insulation coefficient,  $K_s$ , is modelled following Giard and Bazile (2000) and is written (here in non-dimensional form) as

$$K_s = \left(1 - \frac{veg}{K_2}\right) \left(1 - \frac{LAI}{K_3}\right) \quad (0 < K_s \leq 1)$$

where the values from Giard and Bazile (2000) are used:  $K_2 = 5$  and  $K_3 = 30 \text{ m}^2 \text{ m}^{-2}$ . For relatively dense vegetation covers (i.e., large  $LAI$  and  $veg$ ), more energy is used to heat or cool the vegetation while less is used to freeze/thaw the soil water/ice (compared to a surface with less vegetation).

The total phase change is then simply expressed as the difference between the freezing and melting components, although note that one or the other is always zero:

$$\Phi_j = \Phi_{fj} - \Phi_{mj}$$

Using the above model, the phase changes tend to follow the so-called soil specific freezing characteristic curve from Fuchs *et al.* (1978), although there can be considerable scatter about this line owing to  $\epsilon < 1$  and  $K_s < 1$ , and ice can be present at significantly above-freezing layer-average temperatures. In the limit as  $\epsilon$  and  $K_s$  become unity, the scatter is greatly reduced, and the presence of ice at above-freezing temperatures is also greatly reduced.

An example of the application of the above model to a cold climate is shown in Fig. (4.12). The forcing and parameters are from Goose Bay, Canada (Ross Brown, personal communication). The relationship between simulated soil temperature and liquid water content for all 5 soil layers using the model as presented herein is shown in the upper panel, and the relationship for which  $\epsilon$  and  $K_s$  have been set to zero is shown in the lower panel. Each point represents a value at a 30-minute time step for which either  $T_j \leq T_f$  or  $w_{ij} \geq 0.001 \text{ m}^3 \text{ m}^{-3}$ .

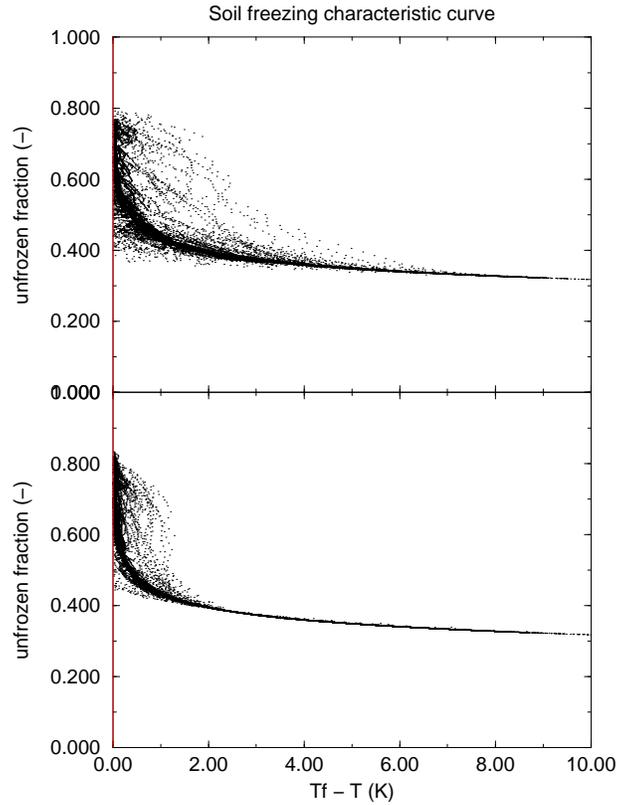


Figure 4.12: The simulated unfrozen liquid water fraction ( $w_l / (w_i + w_l)$ ) as a function of temperature depression ( $T_f - T$ ) for five soil model layers. The forcing are from Goose Bay, Canada. The parameters  $\epsilon$  and  $K_s$  have been set to one in the lower panel.

Soil ice and the overall soil water content are decreased due to sublimation. This term is expressed as

$$S_i = \Delta z_1 E_{gI} \quad ,$$

where  $E_{gI}$  represents the liquid water equivalent loss of soil ice from the bare soil (uppermost) model layer ( $\text{kg m}^{-2} \text{s}^{-1}$ ).

The temperature and soil water profiles are updated at the end of the time step,  $\Delta t$ , using the calculated phase change term together with:

$$\begin{aligned} T_j^{n'} &= T_j^n + \frac{\Delta t \Phi_j}{c_{h,j}} \\ w_{Lj}^{n'} &= w_{Lj}^n - \frac{\Delta t \Phi_j}{L_f \rho_w} \\ w_{Ij}^{n'} &= w_{Ij}^n + \frac{\Delta t \Phi_j}{L_f \rho_w} \end{aligned} \quad (4.94)$$

Additional final minor adjustments are made as needed to prevent supersaturation of a layer, etc.

### 4.1.3 Treatment of the intercepted water

Rainfall and dew intercepted by the foliage feed a reservoir of water content  $W_r$ . This amount of water evaporates in the air at a potential rate from the fraction  $\delta$  of the foliage covered with a film of water, as the

remaining part  $(1 - \delta)$  of the leaves transpires.

$$\delta = \left( \frac{W_r}{W_{rmax}} \right)^{2/3} \quad (4.95)$$

Following Deardorff (1978), we set

$$\frac{\partial W_r}{\partial t} = vegP - (E_v - E_{tr}) - R_r ; 0 \leq W_r \leq W_{rmax} \quad (4.96)$$

where  $P$  is the precipitation rate at the top of the vegetation,  $E_v$  is the evaporation from the vegetation including the transpiration  $E_{tr}$  and the direct evaporation  $E_r$  when positive, and the dew flux when negative (in this case  $E_{tr} = 0$ ), and  $R_r$  is the runoff of the interception reservoir. This runoff occurs when  $W_r$  exceeds a maximum value  $W_{rmax}$  depending upon the density of the canopy, i.e., roughly proportional to  $vegLAI$ . According to Dickinson (1984), we use the simple equation:

$$W_{rmax} = 0.2vegLAI \quad [mm] \quad (4.97)$$

#### 4.1.4 Spatial variability of precipitation intensities

With this option, the main assumption is that, generally, the rainfall intensity is not distributed homogeneously over an entire grid cell. As a first-order approximation, the sub-grid variability in liquid precipitation,  $P_i$ , can be given by an exponential probability density distribution,  $f(P_i)$ :

$$f(P_i) = \frac{\mu}{P} e^{-\mu \frac{P_i}{P}} \quad (4.98)$$

where  $P$  represent the mean rainfall rate over the grid cell and  $\mu$  a fraction of the grid cell affected by rainfall.  $\mu$  is calculated using the results of Fan *et al.* (1996), who showed an exponential relationship between the fractional coverage of precipitation and rainfall rate, based on their analyses of over 2 years radar observations and rain gauge measurements over the Arkansas-Red river basin in the southern plains of the United States. This relationship is:

$$\mu = 1 - e^{-\beta P} \quad (4.99)$$

where  $\beta$  is a parameter which depends on grid resolution,  $dx$  :

$$\beta = 0.2 + 0.5e^{-0.001dx} \quad (4.100)$$

$dx$  represents represents lengths of square grid cells ranging from 40km to 500km. In consequence, the  $\mu$  parameter is fixed to 1 at high resolution ( $\leq 10km$ ). This Spatial variability of precipitation intensities induces a new expression for the runoff from the interception reservoir,  $W_r$  :

$$W_r = P \times e^{\frac{\mu(W_r - W_{rmax})}{P\Delta t}} \quad (4.101)$$

The second consequence is that the Horton runoff,  $Q_{hort}$ , is calculated by integrating the difference between the local rainfall and the local maximum infiltration capacity,  $I_i$ , as follows:

$$Q_{hort} = \mu \int_{I_i}^{\infty} (P_i - I_i) f(P_i) dP_i \quad (4.102)$$

Another assumption is made on the spatial heterogeneity of the local maximum infiltration capacity. Its spatial distribution can also be approximated by an exponential probability density distribution:

Single-layer	D95	Douville <i>et al.</i> (1995a,1995b)
Multi-layer	Explicit-Snow (ES)	Boone (2000); Boone and Etchevers (2001)
Multi-layer	Crocus	Brun <i>et al.</i> (1989,1992); Vionnet <i>et al.</i> (2012)

Table 4.1: Summary of the snowpack schemes available in ISBA

$$g(I_i) = \frac{1}{\bar{I}} e^{-\frac{I_i}{\bar{I}}} \quad (4.103)$$

where  $\bar{I}$  is the mean maximum infiltration rate over the grid cell. As previously said,  $\bar{I}$  is calculated for unfrozen and frozen soil conditions. So Eq.4.102, without snowmelt, can be noted as :

$$\begin{aligned} Q_{hort} = & \mu(1 - \delta_f) \int_0^\infty \int_{I_{unf,i}}^\infty (P_i - I_{unf,i}) f(P_i) g(I_{unf,i}) dP_i dI_{unf,i} \\ & + \mu\delta_f \int_0^\infty \int_{I_{f,i}}^\infty (P_i - I_{f,i}) f(P_i) g(I_{f,i}) dP_i dI_{f,i} \end{aligned} \quad (4.104)$$

After some mathematical developments, the Horton runoff in presence of rainfall and snowmelt,  $S_m$ , is given following Decharme and Douville (2006):

$$\begin{aligned} Q_{hort} = & (1 - \delta_f) \left( \frac{P}{1 + \overline{I_{unf}} \frac{\mu}{P}} + \max(0, S_m - \overline{I_{unf}}) \right) \\ & + \delta_f \left( \frac{P}{1 + \overline{I_f} \frac{\mu}{P}} + \max(0, S_m - \overline{I_f}) \right) dP_i dI_{f,i} \end{aligned} \quad (4.105)$$

#### 4.1.5 Treatment of the snow

ISBA features several schemes to handle snow on the ground, which are described below. They range from single-layer schemes with a minimal number of prognostic variables and highly simplified treatment of snow thermodynamics, to state-of-the-art multi-layer snowpack schemes (Explicit Snow -ES- and Crocus). Table 4.1 provides an summary of the available snowpack schemes and the corresponding scientific references.

##### One-layer snow scheme option

The evolution of the equivalent water content of the snow reservoir is given by

$$\frac{\partial W_s}{\partial t} = P_s - E_s - melt \quad (4.106)$$

where  $P_s$  is the precipitation of snow, and  $E_s$  is the sublimation from the snow surface.

The presence of snow covering the ground and vegetation can greatly influence the energy and mass transfers between the land surface and the atmosphere. Notably, a snow layer modifies the radiative balance at the surface by increasing the albedo. To consider this effect, the albedo of snow  $\alpha_s$  is treated as a new prognostic variable. Depending if the snow is melting or not,  $\alpha_s$  decreases exponentially or linearly with time.

If there is no melting (i.e.,  $melt = 0$ ):

$$\alpha_s(t) = \alpha_s(t - \Delta t) - \tau_a \frac{\Delta t}{\tau} + \frac{P_s \Delta t}{W_{crn}} (\alpha_{smax} - \alpha_{smin}) \quad (4.107)$$

$$\alpha_{smin} \leq \alpha_s \leq \alpha_{smax} \quad (4.108)$$

where  $\tau_a = 0.008$  is the linear rate of decrease per day,  $\alpha_{smin} = 0.50$  and  $\alpha_{smax} = 0.85$  are the minimum and maximum values of the snow albedo.

If there is melting (i.e.,  $melt > 0$ ):

$$\alpha_s(t) = [\alpha_s(t - \Delta t) - \alpha_{smin}] \exp \left[ -\tau_f \frac{\Delta t}{\tau} \right] + \alpha_{smin} + \frac{P_s \Delta t}{W_{crn}} (\alpha_{smax} - \alpha_{smin}) \quad (4.109)$$

$$\alpha_{smin} \leq \alpha_s \leq \alpha_{smax} \quad (4.110)$$

where  $\tau_f = 0.24$  is the exponential decrease rate per day. Of course, the snow albedo increases as snowfalls occur, as shown by the second terms of Eqs. (21) and (23).

The average albedo of a model grid-area is expressed as

$$\alpha_t = (1 - p_{sn})\alpha + p_{sn}\alpha_s \quad (4.111)$$

Similarly, the average emissivity  $\epsilon_t$  is also influenced by the snow coverage:

$$\epsilon_t = (1 - p_{sn})\epsilon + p_{sn}\epsilon_s \quad (4.112)$$

where  $\epsilon_s = 1.0$  is the emissivity of the snow. Thus, the overall albedo and emissivity of the ground for infrared radiation is enhanced by snow.

Because of the significant variability of thermal properties related with the snow compactness, the relative density of snow  $\rho_s$  is also considered as a prognostic variable. Based on Verseghy (1991),  $\rho_s$  decreases exponentially at a rate of  $\tau_f$  per day:

$$\rho_s(t) = [\rho_s(t - \Delta t) - \rho_{smax}] \exp \left[ -\tau_f \frac{\Delta t}{\tau} \right] + \rho_{smax} + \frac{P_s \Delta t}{W_s} \rho_{smin} \quad (4.113)$$

$$\rho_{smin} \leq \rho_s \leq \rho_{smax} \quad (4.114)$$

where  $\rho_{smin} = 0.1$  and  $\rho_{smax} = 0.3$  are the minimum and maximum relative density of snow.

Finally, the average roughness length  $z_{0t}$  is

$$z_{0t} = (1 - p_{snz0})z_0 + p_{snz0}z_{0s} \quad (4.115)$$

where

$$p_{snz0} = \frac{W_s}{W_s + W_{crn} + \beta_s g z_0} \quad (4.116)$$

Here,  $\beta_s = 0.408 \text{ s}^2 \text{ m}^{-1}$  and  $g = 9.80665 \text{ m s}^{-2}$  are physical constants, whereas  $z_{0s}$  is the roughness length of the snow.

### Multi-layer snow scheme options

Two multi-layer snow schemes options are available in ISBA, namely Explicit Snow (ES) and Crocus. Explicit Snow (Boone and Etchevers (2001)) is a so-called intermediate complexity scheme which is representative of a class of snow models which use several layers and have simplified physical parameterization schemes (Loth *et al.* (1993), Lynch-Stieglitz (1994), Sun *et al.* (1999)). In contrast, Crocus features a detailed description of processes occurring within the snowpack (Brun *et al.* (1989, 1992), Vionnet *et al.* (2012)). Crocus was initially a stand-alone model, and it was recently coupled to ISBA building on the ES model structure. In what follows, the description applies to both ES and Crocus unless otherwise stated.

Compared to the baseline ISBA snow scheme, the explicit multi-layered approach shared by ES and Crocus resolves the large thermal and the density gradients which can exist in the snow cover, distinguishes the

surface energy budgets of the snow and non-snow covered portions of the surface, includes the effects of liquid water storage in the snow cover, computes the absorption of incident radiation within the pack, and calculates explicit heat conduction between the snow and the soil. Figure 4.13 provides an overview of the processes handled in the multi-layer snowpack schemes, coupled to the soil and vegetation components of ISBA. The multi-layer snowpack schemes Crocus and ES are most consistently used together with ISBA-DIF rather than the force-restore soil schemes.

Crocus additionally handles snow metamorphism, i.e. the physical transformations of snow grains through time, and interactively modifies the vertical discretization of the vertical grid of snow layers to optimize the representation of internal snow processes. In practice, Crocus is generally run with a larger total possible number of snow layers than ES. ES typically uses up to 3 snow layers, while standard Crocus runs use up to 20 or 50 snow layers. The latter configuration is appropriate when the focus is placed on the study of the properties of the snowpack itself (avalanche hazard prediction, snow physical properties, combined use of remote sensing).

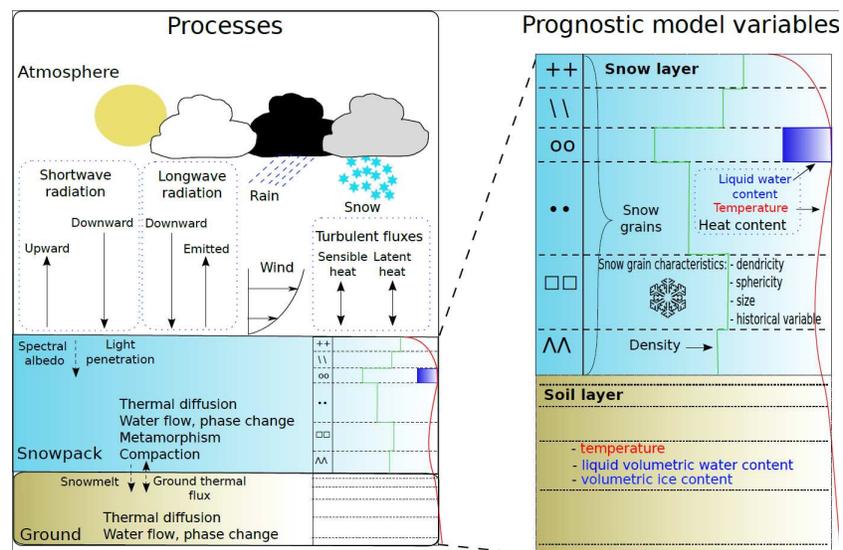


Figure 4.13: Overview of the physical processes and prognostic variables used to characterize the snowpack in the multi-layer snowpack schemes options of ISBA (ES and Crocus). The major differences between the ES and Crocus scheme is that ES does not treat snow metamorphism explicitly, and that the number of snow layers is kept significantly lower than for Crocus (on the order of 3 typically, vs. up to 20 or 50 for Crocus).

The conservation equation for the total snow cover mass is expressed as

$$\frac{\partial W_s}{\partial t} = P_s + p_{sn} (P - P_s) - E_s - E_{sl} - Q_n, \quad (4.117)$$

where  $E_{sl}$  represents evaporation of liquid water from the snow surface, and the product  $p_{sn} (P - P_s)$  represents the portion of the total rainfall that is intercepted by the snow surface while the remaining rainfall is assumed to be intercepted by the snow-free soil and vegetation canopy. The snow-runoff rate,  $Q_n$ , is the rate at which liquid water leaves the base of the snow cover.

The snow state variables are the heat content ( $H_s$ ), the layer thickness ( $D$ ), and the layer average density ( $\rho_s$ ). The temperature ( $T_{sn}$ ) and liquid water content ( $w_{sl}$ ) are defined using the heat content. The use of the Crocus scheme induces the definition of further variables, which describe the morphological properties of snow grains ( $d$  dendricity,  $s$  sphericity,  $g_s$  grain size,  $h$  historical variable and  $A$  age of a given snow layer). See Vionnet *et al.* (2012) for details.

The total snow depth,  $D_s$  (m) is defined as

$$D_s = \sum_{i=1}^{N_s} D_i \quad (4.118)$$

where a three-layer configuration is currently used by default (i.e.  $N_s = 3$ ). In ES, the thickness of the surface snow layer is always less than or equal to 0.05 m, and this temperature is used to calculate the fluxes between the atmosphere and the snow surface. In Crocus, the thickness of the surface snow layer can be as low as 1 mm although it ranges on the order of 1 to 2 cm typically. The thickness of internal snow layers is on the order of a few cm typically, with a finer mesh towards the air/snow and ground/snow interface. See Vionnet *et al.* (2012) for details.

The snow density is compacted using standard empirical relationships (Anderson (1976)). In ES, additional changes arise from snowfall which generally reduces the snow density, and densification resulting from ripening. In Crocus, snowfall induces the creation of a new snow layer at the surface ; mechanical settling is computed using a newtonian formalism where the viscosity depends mostly on the snow density and temperature but also on the snow type (see Vionnet *et al.* (2012) for details). When Crocus is used, the slope angle has an impact on the compaction rate, since only the component of the weight perpendicular to the snow layering need be taken into account. In practice, the acceleration of gravity ( $g = 9.80665 \text{ m s}^{-2}$ ) is then simply multiplied by  $\cos(\beta_i)$  where  $\beta_i$  is the slope of the grid point  $i$ .

The snow heat content ( $\text{J m}^{-2}$ ) is defined as

$$H_{s i} = c_{s i} D_i (T_{s n i} - T_0) - L_f \rho_w (w_{s i} - w_{s l i}) \quad , \quad (4.119)$$

where  $w_s$  is the total snow layer water equivalent depth (m),  $w_{sl}$  is the snow layer liquid water content (m), and  $c_s$  is the snow heat capacity ( $\text{J m}^{-3} \text{ K}^{-1}$ ) (using the same definition as the baseline ISBA snow scheme). The snow heat content is used in order to allow the presence of either cold (dry) snow which has a temperature less than or equal to the freezing point or warm (wet) snow which is characterized by a temperature at the freezing point and contains water in liquid form. The snow temperature and liquid water content can then be defined as

$$T_{s n i} = T_f + (H_{s i} + L_f \rho_w w_{s i}) / (c_{s i} D_i) ; \quad w_{l i} = 0 \quad (4.120)$$

$$w_{s l i} = w_{s i} + (H_{s i} / L_f \rho_w) ; \quad T_{s n i} = T_f \text{ and } w_{s l i} \leq w_{s l \max i} \quad (4.121)$$

where  $w_{s l \max i}$  is the maximum liquid water holding capacity of a snow layer, which is based on empirical relations. All water exceeding this flows into the layer below where it can do one or all of the following: add to the liquid water content, refreeze, or continue flowing downward.

Snow heat flow is along the thermal gradient as any snow melt or percolated water within the snow cover is assumed to have zero heat content. The layer-averaged snow temperature equation ( $T_{s i}$ ) is expressed as

$$c_{s i} D_i \frac{\partial T_{s n i}}{\partial t} = G_{s i-1} - G_{s i} + R_{s i-1} - R_{s i} - S_{s i} \quad , \quad (4.122)$$

where  $S_s$  represents an energy sink/source term associated with phase changes between the liquid and solid phases of water. Incoming short wave radiation ( $R_s$ ) transmission within the snowpack decreases exponentially with increasing snow depth. At the surface, it is expressed as

$$R_{s 0} = R_g (1 - \alpha_s) \quad (4.123)$$

where the snow albedo is defined using the same relationships as in the baseline version of ISBA (Douville *et al.* (1995)). In Crocus the solar radiation is handled using three separate spectral bands ([0.3-0.8], [0.8-1.5] and [1.5-2.8]  $\mu\text{m}$ ). First of all, the albedo is computed in each band, as a function of the snow properties

in the top 3 cm of the snowpack. In the UV and visible range ([0.3-0.8]  $\mu\text{m}$ ), snow albedo depends mostly on the amount of light absorbing impurities, but also on its microstructure. The latter is represented by the optical diameter of snow,  $d_{\text{opt}}$ , which corresponds to the diameter of a collection of mono-dispersed ice spheres possessing the same hemispherical albedo as the corresponding semi-infinite snow layer. The impact of snow browning due to the deposition of light absorbing impurities is parametrized from the age of the uppermost snow layer. In the near-infrared bands, the spectral albedo depends only on the optical diameter of snow. The optical diameter,  $d_{\text{opt}}$ , of snow is currently empirically derived from the microstructure properties of the snow (see below, and Vionnet *et al.* (2012)). Once the spectral albedo is calculated, in every spectral band the incoming radiation is depleted according to the albedo value, and the remaining part penetrates the snowpack and is gradually absorbed in the snow layers assuming an exponential decay of radiation with depth. The solar flux,  $Q_s$ , at a depth  $z$  below the snow surface is expressed as follows:

$$Q_s = \sum_{k=1}^3 (1 - \alpha_k) R_{sk} e^{-\beta_k z} \quad (4.124)$$

where  $R_{sk}$  represents the incoming solar radiation,  $\alpha_k$  the albedo and  $\beta_k$  the absorption coefficient in the spectral band  $k$ . In the current version, the incoming shortwave radiation  $R_s$  is split into three bands using empirical coefficients (0.71, 0.21 and 0.08 respectively for band [0.3-0.8], [0.8-1.5] and [1.5-2.8] mm). Future developments will allow to allow forcing where incoming shortwave radiation is partitioned into several bands. Shortwave radiation excess for thin snow cover (transmitted through the snow) is added to the snow/ground heat flux.

The sub-surface heat ( $G_s$ ) flux terms are evaluated using simple diffusion. At the surface, this flux is expressed as

$$G_{s0} = \epsilon_s \left( R_A - \sigma_{SB} T_{sn1}^4 \right) - H(T_{sn1}) - LE(T_{sn1}) - c_w p_{sn} (P - P_s) (T_f - T_r) \quad , \quad (4.125)$$

The last term on the right hand side of the above equation represents a latent heat source when rain with a temperature ( $T_r$ ) greater than  $T_0$  falls on the snow cover, where  $c_w$  represents the heat capacity of water (4187 J  $\text{kg}^{-1} \text{K}^{-1}$ ). Rainfall is simply assumed to have a temperature which is the larger of the air temperature ( $T_a$ ) and the freezing point. The latent heat flux from the snow includes the liquid fraction weighted contributions from the evaporation of liquid water and sublimation.

The ISBA surface soil/vegetation layer temperature is then coupled to the snow scheme using

$$\frac{1}{C_T} \frac{\partial T_s}{\partial t} = (1 - p_n) \left[ R_g (1 - \alpha) + \epsilon_t \left( R_A - \sigma T_s^4 \right) - H - LE - \frac{2\pi}{C_T \tau} (T_s - T_2) \right] \quad (4.126)$$

$$+ p_n [G_{sN} + R_{sN} + c_w Q_n (T_f - T_s)] \quad . \quad (4.127)$$

The term on the right hand side of the above equation involving the snow runoff ( $Q_n$ ) represents an advective term. The net surface fluxes to/from the atmosphere are then calculated as the snow-cover fraction weighted sums over the snow and non-snow covered surfaces. When either multi-layer option is used (ES or Crocus), the single-layer snowpack scheme in ISBA is used when the snow cover is relatively thin (arbitrarily defined as 0.05 m depth). When the snow depth exceeds this threshold, the snow mass and heat is transferred to the chosen multi-layer scheme. This prevents numerical difficulties for vanishingly thin snow packs.

### Additional features of the Crocus scheme

#### *Evolution of the vertical discretization of the finite-element grid*

The dynamical evolution of the number and thicknesses of the numerical snow layers is a key and original feature of Crocus, which aims at simulating the vertical layering of natural snowpacks in the best possible

way. The maximum number of numerical layers is an important user-defined set-up option. A minimum of 3 layers is imposed for solving the heat conduction through the snowpack but there is no limitation on the maximum number. As the maximum number of layers increases, the snowpack stratigraphy can be simulated in more detail. According to the research or operational objectives, the user has to find the appropriate balance between the realism and the computational cost of the simulation. An important point to mention is that the snowpack scheme dynamically manages a different vertical grid mesh, in terms of the number and the thickness of snow layers, for each grid point when it is run in parallel mode for a spatially distributed simulation ; this is a common case for snow/atmosphere coupled simulations or for distributed stand-alone simulations.

The adjustment of the snowpack layering is achieved with a set of rules. The procedure is activated at the beginning of each time step according to the following sequence:

- for snowfall over a bare soil, the snowpack is built up from identical layers, in terms of thickness and state variables. Their number depends on the amount of fresh snow and on the maximum number of layers;
- for snowfall over an existing snowpack, it is first attempted to incorporate the freshly fallen snow into the existing top layer, provided its grain characteristics are similar and its thickness is smaller than a fixed limit. The similarity between two adjacent layers is determined from the value of the sum of their differences in terms of  $d$ ,  $s$  and  $g_s$ , each weighted with an appropriate coefficient. If the merging is not possible, a new numerical layer is added to the preexisting layers. If the number of layers then reaches its maximum, a search is carried out to identify two adjacent layers to be merged. This is done by minimizing a criterion balancing the similarity between their respective grain characteristics and their thicknesses;
- for no snowfall, a check is carried out to see whether it is convenient to merge too thin snow layers or to split those which are thick. This is achieved by comparing the present thickness profile to an idealized profile, which acts as an attractor for the vertical grid. This idealized thickness profile depends on the current snow depth and on the user-defined maximal number of layers (see Figure 4.14 for an example). Merging two layers is only possible for those which are similar enough in terms of grain characteristics. Grid resizing affects only one layer per time step, with a priority given to the surface and bottom layers, in order to accurately solve the energy exchanges at the surface and at the snow/soil interface;
- for most time steps, no grid resizing is carried out, except that the thickness of each layer decreases according to its compaction rate.

The consistency of the physical prognostic variables is maintained in case of grid resizing. A projection is achieved from the former vertical grid to the new one. Mass, heat content and liquid water content are conserved. When a new numerical snow layer is built from several former layers, its grain characteristics are calculated in order to conserve the averaged weighted optical grain size of the former layers. This insures a strong consistency in the evolution of surface albedo, even when frequent grid resizing occur at the surface in case of frequent snowfalls or surface melting events.

#### *Snow metamorphism*

Snow metamorphism is implemented in the snowpack scheme Crocus through a set of quantitative laws describing the evolution rate of the type and size of the snow grains in each layer (Brun *et al.* (1992)). This is carried out within the subroutine. A distinction is made between dendritic and non-dendritic snow. Snow falls as dendritic snow and remains dendritic until  $d$  reaches 0. Snow then reaches the state of rounded

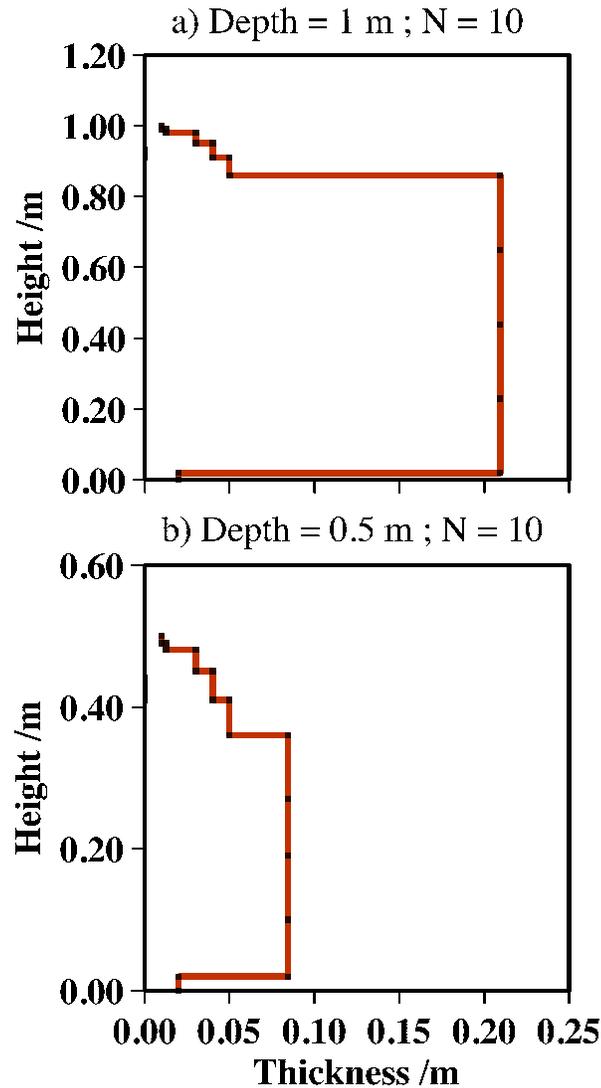


Figure 4.14: Illustration of the optimal vertical grid of Crocus, which depends on total snow depth and on the user-defined maximum number of snow layers.

crystals, faceted crystals or belongs to an intermediate state. It is then characterized by its sphericity ( $s$ ), ranging from 0 to 1, and a grain size,  $g_s$ , ranging from 0.3 to 0.4 mm. Such snow is defined as non-dendritic. The metamorphism laws that govern the evolution of snow grain depend on temperature, the temperature gradient, and include wet metamorphism. They are similar to the laws initially described by Brun *et al.* (1992) and are mostly based on empirical fits to experimental data. The metamorphism laws that govern the evolution of snow grain are given in Table 4.2 and 4.3, respectively for dry and wet metamorphism. In the case of temperature gradient metamorphism, fits to experimental data by Marbouty (1980) are used. In this case, the increase of grain size  $g_s$  follows:

$$\frac{\delta g_s}{\delta t} = f(T)h(\rho)g(G)\Phi \quad (4.128)$$

where  $G$  is the absolute value of the temperature gradient ( $|\delta T/\delta z|$ ) and  $f$ ,  $g$ ,  $h$  and  $\Phi$  are dimensionless

Table 4.2: Metamorphism laws under dry conditions.  $G$  is the vertical temperature gradient ( $|\delta T/\delta z|$ ),  $T$  the temperature (K) and  $t$  is time expressed in days.  $f$ ,  $g$ ,  $h$  and  $\Phi$  are empirical functions to predict depth-hoar growth-rate from Marbouty (1980).

	Non-dendritic snow	Dendritic snow
$G \leq 5 \text{ K.m}^{-1}$	$\frac{\delta s}{\delta t} = 10^9 e^{-6000/T}$ $\frac{\delta g_s}{\delta t} = 0$	$\frac{\delta d}{\delta t} = -2.10^8 e^{-6000/T}$ $\frac{\delta s}{\delta t} = 10^9 e^{-6000/T}$
$5 < G \leq 15 \text{ K.m}^{-1}$	$\frac{\delta s}{\delta t} = -2.10^8 e^{-6000/T} G^{0.4}$ $\frac{\delta g_s}{\delta t} = 0$	$\frac{\delta d}{\delta t} = -2.10^8 e^{-6000/T} G^{0.4}$
$G > 15 \text{ K.m}^{-1}$	if $s > 0$ : $\frac{\delta s}{\delta t} = -2.10^8 e^{-6000/T} G^{0.4}$ and $\frac{\delta g_s}{\delta t} = 0$ if $s = 0$ : $\frac{\delta s}{\delta t} = 0$ and $\frac{\delta g_s}{\delta t} = f(T)h(\rho)g(G)\Phi$	$\frac{\delta s}{\delta t} = -2.10^8 e^{-6000/T} G^{0.4}$

Table 4.3: Metamorphism laws in the presence of liquid water.  $\theta$  is the mass liquid water content and  $t$  is time expressed in days.  $v$  refers to the equivalent volume of snow grain and  $v'_0$  and  $v'_1$  are empirical constants taken from Brun (1989).

	Non-dendritic snow	Dendritic snow
$0 \leq s < 1$	$\frac{\delta g_s}{\delta t} = 0$ $\frac{\delta s}{\delta t} = \frac{1}{16}\theta^3$	$\frac{\delta d}{\delta t} = -\frac{1}{16}\theta^3$
$s = 1$	$\frac{\delta s}{\delta t} = 0$ $\frac{\delta v}{\delta t} = v'_0 + v'_1\theta^3$	$\frac{\delta s}{\delta t} = \frac{1}{16}\theta^3$

with  $\theta = 100 \frac{W_{\text{liq}}}{\rho D}$

functions varying from 0 to 1 given by:

$$f = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } T - T_{\text{fus}} < -40 \text{ K} \\ 0.011 \times (T - T_{\text{fus}} + 40) & \text{if } -40 \leq T - T_{\text{fus}} < -22 \text{ K} \\ 0.2 + 0.05 \times (T - T_{\text{fus}} + 22) & \text{if } -22 \leq T - T_{\text{fus}} < -6 \text{ K} \\ 1 - 0.05 \times (T - T_{\text{fus}}) & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \quad (4.129)$$

where  $T_{\text{fus}}$  is temperature of the melting point for water (K), and  $h$ ,  $g$  and  $\Phi$  are given below:

$$\Phi = 1.0417 \cdot 10^{-9} \text{ m s}^{-1} \quad (4.130)$$

$$h = \begin{cases} 1. & \text{if } \rho < 150 \text{ kg m}^{-3} \\ 1 - 0.004 \times (\rho - 150) & \text{if } 150 < \rho < 400 \text{ kg m}^{-3} \\ 0. & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \quad (4.131)$$

$$g = \begin{cases} 0. & \text{if } G < 15 \text{ K m}^{-1} \\ 0.01 \times (G - 15) & \text{if } 15 \leq G < 25 \text{ K m}^{-1} \\ 0.1 + 0.037 \times (G - 25) & \text{if } 25 \leq G < 40 \text{ K m}^{-1} \\ 0.65 + 0.02 \times (G - 40) & \text{if } 40 \leq G < 50 \text{ K m}^{-1} \\ 0.85 + 0.0075 \times (G - 50) & \text{if } 50 \leq G < 70 \text{ K m}^{-1} \\ 1. & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \quad (4.132)$$

*Effects of wind*

Table 4.4: Evolution rates of snow grain properties and density in layer  $i$  caused by snowdrifting.  $t$  is time expressed in hours and  $\tau$  represents the time characteristic for snow grains change under wind transport given by Eq. 4.135.

Parameters	Non-dendritic snow	Dendritic snow
Grain properties	$\frac{\delta s}{\delta t} = \frac{1-s}{\tau}$ $\frac{\delta g_s}{\delta t} = \frac{5.10^{-4}}{\tau}$	$\frac{\delta d}{\delta t} = \frac{d}{2\tau}$ $\frac{\delta s}{\delta t} = \frac{1-s}{\tau}$
Snow density	$\frac{\delta \rho}{\delta t} = \frac{\rho_{\max} - \rho}{\tau}$ with $\rho_{\max} = 350 \text{ kg m}^{-3}$	

⚠ **As a 1D model, the continental surface scheme ISBA within SURFEX is NOT designed to handle explicitly wind-induced snow redistribution. Indeed, grid points are treated independently from each other. Nevertheless, the Crocus snowpack scheme includes parameterizations that represent some effects of wind drift on the snowpack.**

The compaction and the metamorphism of the surface layers during wind drift events are taken into account in a simplified way, as described initially by Brun *et al.* (1997). A mobility index,  $M_O$ , describes the potential for snow erosion for a given snow layer and depends on the microstructural properties of snow ( $d$ ,  $s$  and  $g_s$ ):

$$M_O = \begin{cases} 0.34(0.75d - 0.5s + 0.5) + 0.66F(\rho) & \text{dendritic case} \\ 0.34(-0.583g_s - 0.833s + 0.833) + 0.66F(\rho) & \text{non-dendritic case} \end{cases} \quad (4.133)$$

where  $F(\rho) = [1.25 - 0.0042(\max(\rho_{\min}, \rho) - \rho_{\min})]$  and  $\rho_{\min} = 50 \text{ kg m}^{-3}$ . The expression for  $M_O$  in Eq. 4.133 combines the parameterization of Guyomarc'h and Merindol (1998) (first term) developed for alpine snow with a term depending on snow density ( $F(\rho)$ ). The purpose is to extend the use of  $M_O$  to polar snow which has a density generally larger than  $330 \text{ kg m}^{-3}$  (upper limit for application of Guyomarc'h and Merindol (1998)). Fresh snow (high values of  $d$ , low value of  $\rho$ ) presents high values of mobility index which tend to decrease with time due to sintering (increase of  $s$ ) and compaction (increase of  $\rho$ ). Guyomarc'h and Merindol (1998) combined the mobility index with wind speed,  $U$ , to compute a driftability index,  $S_I$ :

$$S_I = -2.868 \exp(-0.085U) + 1 + M_O \quad (4.134)$$

Positive values of  $S_I$  indicate that snowdrifting can occur while  $S_I = 0$  gives the value of the threshold wind speed for snow transport. During a drift event, blown snow particles in saltation break upon collision with the snow surface and tend towards rounded grains (Clifton *et al.* (2006)). For a given snow layer  $i$ , a time characteristic for snow grain change under wind transport is computed:

$$\tau_i = \frac{\tau}{\Gamma_{i \text{ drift}}} \quad \text{where } \Gamma_{i \text{ drift}} = \max[0, S_{Ii} \exp(-z_i/0.1)] \quad (4.135)$$

where  $\tau$  is empirically set to 48 hours. The pseudo-depth in the snow pack,  $z_i$  (in m, positive downwards), takes into account previous hardening of snow layers  $j$  situated above the current layer  $i$ :  $z_i = \sum_j (D_j \times (3.25 - S_{Ij}))$ . Therefore, through the variable  $\Gamma_{\text{drift}}$ , compaction and rounding rates in a snow layer depends on the grain driftability and are propagated to the layers below with an exponential decay until it reaches a non-transportable layer ( $S_I \leq 0$ ). Compaction and rounding rates are detailed in Table 4.4.

As an option and in case of snowdrifting, Crocus computes the associated rate of sublimation according to a parameterization developed by Gordon *et al.* (2006). This parameterization allows the estimation of

the sublimation rate in a column of blowing or drifting snow, combining existing parameterizations from Schmidt *et al.* (1982), Bintanja *et al.* (1998) and Déry *et al.* (2001). The total sublimation rate of blowing snow  $Q_s$  depends on the near-surface meteorological conditions according to:

$$Q_s = A \left( \frac{T_0}{T_a} \right)^\gamma U_t \rho_a q_{si} (1 - Rh_i) \left( \frac{U}{U_t} \right)^B \quad (4.136)$$

where  $T_a$  is the air temperature (K),  $T_0$  a constant with a value of 273.16 K,  $U$  the wind speed,  $U_t$  the threshold wind speed for snow transport,  $\rho_a$  the air density and  $Rh_i$  the relative humidity with respect to ice.  $q_{si}$  denotes the saturation specific humidity (kg/kg) at temperature  $T_a$ .  $\gamma$ ,  $A$  and  $B$  are dimensionless parameters with values 4.0, 0.0018 and 3.6, respectively.  $U_t$  is the threshold wind speed for wind transportation, obtained by setting  $S_I = 0$ . in equation (4.134):

$$U_t = - \frac{\log((M_O + 1.)/2.868)}{0.085} \quad (4.137)$$

Using this option, Crocus subtracts the corresponding mass from the snowpack surface at each model timestep.

#### 4.1.6 The surface fluxes

Only one energy balance is considered for the whole system ground-vegetation-snow (when the 3-layer snow scheme option is not in use). As a result, heat and mass transfers between the surface and the atmosphere are related to the mean values  $T_s$  and  $w_g$ .

The net radiation at the surface is the sum of the absorbed fractions of the incoming solar radiation  $R_G$  and of the atmospheric infrared radiation  $R_A$ , reduced by the emitted infrared radiation:

$$R_n = R_G(1 - \alpha_t) + \epsilon_t (R_A - \sigma_{SB} T_s^4) \quad (4.138)$$

where  $\sigma_{SB}$  is the Stefan-Boltzmann constant.

The turbulent fluxes are calculated by means of the classical aerodynamic formulas. For the sensible heat flux:

$$H = \rho_a c_p C_H V_a (T_s - T_a) \quad (4.139)$$

where  $c_p$  is the specific heat;  $\rho_a$ ,  $V_a$ , and  $T_a$  are respectively the air density, the wind speed, and the temperature at the lowest atmospheric level; and  $C_H$ , as discussed below, is the drag coefficient depending upon the thermal stability of the atmosphere. The explicit snow scheme sensible heat flux is calculated using the same formulation (but with  $T_{sn}$ ). The water vapor flux  $E$  is the sum of the evaporation of liquid water from the soil surface (i.e.,  $E_{gl}$ ), from the vegetation (i.e.,  $E_v$ ), and sublimation from the snow and soil ice (i.e.,  $E_s$  and  $E_{gf}$ ):

$$LE = LE_{gl} + LE_v + L_i (E_s + E_{gf}) \quad (4.140)$$

$$E_{gl} = (1 - veg)(1 - p_{sng}) (1 - \delta_i) \rho_a C_H V_a (h_u q_{sat}(T_s) - q_a) \quad (4.141)$$

$$E_v = veg(1 - p_{snv}) \rho_a C_H V_a h_v (q_{sat}(T_s) - q_a) \quad (4.142)$$

$$E_s = p_{sn} \rho_a C_H V_a (q_{sat}(T_s) - q_a) \quad (4.143)$$

$$E_{gf} = (1 - veg) (1 - p_{sng}) \delta_i \rho_a C_H V_a (h_{ui} q_{sat}(T_s) - q_a) \quad (4.144)$$

where  $L$  and  $L_i$  are the specific heat of evaporation and sublimation,  $q_{sat}(T_s)$  is the saturated specific humidity at the temperature  $T_s$ , and  $q_a$  is the atmospheric specific humidity at the lowest atmospheric level.

The water vapor flux  $E$  from the explicit snow surface is expressed as

$$LE(T_{sn1}) = LE_{sl} + L_i E_s \quad (4.145)$$

$$E_{sl} = \delta_{sn} \rho_a C_{Hs} V_a (q_{sat}(T_{sn1}) - q_a) \quad (4.146)$$

$$E_s = (1 - \delta_{sn}) \rho_a C_{Hs} V_a (q_{sat}(T_{sn1}) - q_a) \quad (4.147)$$

$$\delta_{sn} = w_{sl1}/w_{sl\max 1}; \quad 0 \leq \delta_{sn} \leq 1 \quad (4.148)$$

where evaporation of liquid water is zero when  $T_{sn1} < T_0$ . The transfer coefficient ( $C_{Hs}$ ) is calculated over the snow covered surface using the same formulation as  $C_H$ .

The surface ice fraction is used to partition the bare soil latent heat flux between evaporation and sublimation, and it is defined as

$$\delta_i = w_{gf}/(w_{gf} + w_g); \quad 0 \leq \delta_i < 1. \quad (4.149)$$

The relative humidity  $h_u$  at the ground surface is related to the superficial soil moisture  $w_g$  following

$$h_u = \frac{1}{2} \left[ 1 - \cos \left( \frac{w_g}{w_{fc}^*} \pi \right) \right], \text{ if } w_g < w_{fc}^* \quad (4.150)$$

$$h_u = 1, \text{ if } w_g \geq w_{fc}^* \quad (4.151)$$

where the field capacity with respect to the liquid water is defined using the modified soil porosity so that  $w_{fc}^* = w_{fc} w_{sat}^*/w_{sat}$ . The humidity for the ice covered portion of the grid box is calculated in a similar fashion as

$$h_{ui} = \frac{1}{2} \left[ 1 - \cos \left( \frac{w_{gf}}{w_{fc}^{**}} \pi \right) \right], \text{ if } w_{gf} < w_{fc}^{**} \quad (4.152)$$

$$h_{ui} = 1, \text{ if } w_{gf} \geq w_{fc}^{**} \quad (4.153)$$

where  $w_{fc}^{**} = w_{fc}(w_{sat} - w_g)/w_{sat}$ . In case of dew flux when  $q_{sat}(T_s) < q_a$ ,  $h_u$  is also set to 1 (see Mahfouf and Noilhan (1991) for details). When the flux  $E_v$  is positive, the Halstead coefficient  $h_v$  takes into account the direct evaporation  $E_r$  from the fraction  $\delta$  of the foliage covered by intercepted water, as well as the transpiration  $E_{tr}$  of the remaining part of the leaves:

$$h_v = (1 - \delta)R_a/(R_a + R_s) + \delta \quad (4.154)$$

$$E_r = veg(1 - p_{snv}) \frac{\delta}{R_a} (q_{sat}(T_s) - q_a) \quad (4.155)$$

$$E_{tr} = veg(1 - p_{snv}) \frac{1 - \delta}{R_a + R_s} (q_{sat}(T_s) - q_a) \quad (4.156)$$

When  $E_v$  is negative, the dew flux is supposed to occur at the potential rate, and  $h_v$  is taken equal to 1.

Following Deardorff (1978),  $\delta$  is a power function of the moisture content of the interception reservoir:

$$\delta = (W_r/W_{rmax})^{2/3} \quad (4.157)$$

The aerodynamic resistance is  $R_a = (C_H V_a)^{-1}$ . The surface resistance,  $R_s$ , depends upon both atmospheric factors and available water in the soil; it is given by:

$$R_s = \frac{R_{smin}}{F_1 F_2 F_3 F_4 LAI} \quad (4.158)$$

with the limiting factors  $F_1$ ,  $F_2$ ,  $F_3$ , and  $F_4$ :

$$F_1 = \frac{f + R_{smin}/R_{smax}}{1 + f} \quad (4.159)$$

$$F_2 = \frac{w_2 - w_{wilt}}{w_{fc} - w_{wilt}} \quad \text{and } 0 \leq F_2 \leq 1 \quad (4.160)$$

$$F_3 = 1 - \gamma (q_{sat}(T_s) - q_a) \quad (4.161)$$

$$F_4 = 1 - 1.6 \times 10^{-3} (T_a - 298.15)^2 \quad (4.162)$$

where the dimensionless term  $f$  represents the incoming photosynthetically active radiation on the foliage, normalized by a species-dependent threshold value:

$$f = 0.55 \frac{R_G}{R_{GI}} \frac{2}{LAI} \quad (4.163)$$

Moreover,  $\gamma$  is a species-dependent parameter (see Jacquemin and Noilhan (1990)) and  $R_{smax}$  is arbitrarily set to  $5000 \text{ sm}^{-1}$ .

The surface fluxes of heat, moisture, and momentum can be expressed as

$$(\overline{w'\theta'})_s = \frac{H}{\rho_a c_p T_a / \theta_a} \quad (4.164)$$

$$(\overline{w'r'_v})_s = \frac{E}{\rho_a (1 - q_a)} \quad (4.165)$$

$$|\overline{w'V'}|_s = C_D |V_a|^2 = u_*^2 \quad (4.166)$$

where  $r_v$  is the water vapor mixing ratio,  $w$  is the vertical motion,  $\theta_a$  is the potential temperature at the lowest atmospheric level. The primes and overbars denote perturbation and average quantities.

For the drag coefficients  $C_H$  and  $C_D$ , the formulation of Louis (1979) was modified in order to consider different roughness length values for heat  $z_0$  and momentum  $z_{0h}$  (Mascart *et al.* (1995)):

$$C_D = C_{DN} F_m ; C_H = C_{DN} F_h \quad (4.167)$$

with

$$C_{DN} = \frac{k^2}{[\ln(z/z_0)]^2} \quad (4.168)$$

$$(4.169)$$

where  $k$  is the Von Karman constant. Also

$$F_m = 1 - \frac{10Ri}{1 + C_m \sqrt{|Ri|}} \quad \text{if } Ri \leq 0 \quad (4.170)$$

$$F_m = \frac{1}{1 + \frac{10Ri}{\sqrt{1+5Ri}}} \quad \text{if } Ri > 0 \quad (4.171)$$

and

$$F_h = \left[ 1 - \frac{15Ri}{1 + C_h \sqrt{|Ri|}} \right] \times \left[ \frac{\ln(z/z_0)}{\ln(z/z_{0h})} \right] \quad \text{if } Ri \leq 0 \quad (4.172)$$

$$F_h = \frac{1}{1 + 15Ri \sqrt{1 + 5Ri}} \times \left[ \frac{\ln(z/z_0)}{\ln(z/z_{0h})} \right] \quad \text{if } Ri > 0 \quad (4.173)$$

where  $Ri$  is the gradient Richardson number. The coefficients  $C_m$  and  $C_h$  of the unstable case are given by

$$C_m = 10C_m^* C_{DN}(z/z_0)^{p_m} \quad (4.174)$$

$$C_h = 15C_h^* C_{DN}(z/z_{0h})^{p_h} \times \left[ \frac{\ln(z/z_0)}{\ln(z/z_{0h})} \right] \quad (4.175)$$

where  $C_m^*$ ,  $C_h^*$ ,  $p_m$ , and  $p_h$  are functions of the ratio  $\mu = \ln(z_0/z_{0h})$  only:

$$C_h^* = 3.2165 + 4.3431 \times \mu + 0.5360 \times \mu^2 - 0.0781 \times \mu^3 \quad (4.176)$$

$$C_m^* = 6.8741 + 2.6933 \times \mu - 0.3601 \times \mu^2 + 0.0154 \times \mu^3 \quad (4.177)$$

$$p_h = 0.5802 - 0.1571 \times \mu + 0.0327 \times \mu^2 - 0.0026 \times \mu^3 \quad (4.178)$$

$$p_m = 0.5233 - 0.0815 \times \mu + 0.0135 \times \mu^2 - 0.0010 \times \mu^3 \quad (4.179)$$

#### 4.1.7 Summary of Useful Parameters

The parameters have been chosen in order to characterize the main physical processes, while attempting to reduce the number of independent variables. They can be divided into two categories: primary parameters needing to be specified by spatial distribution, and secondary parameters which values can be associated with those of the primary parameters.

In the present state of the method, the primary parameters describe the nature of the land surface and its vegetation coverage by means of only four numerical indices: the percentage of sand and clay in the soil, the dominant vegetation type, and the land-sea mask.

The secondary parameters associated with the soil type are evaluated from the sand and clay composition of the soil, according to the continuous formulation discussed in Giordani (1993) and Noilhan and Lacarrère (1995) (see Appendix). These parameters are:

- the saturated volumetric moisture content  $w_{sat}$ ;
- the wilting point volumetric water content  $w_{wilt}$ ;
- the field capacity volumetric water content  $w_{fc}$ ;
- the slope  $b$  of the retention curve;
- the soil thermal coefficient at saturation  $C_{Gsat}$ ;
- the value of  $C_1$  at saturation (i.e.,  $C_{1sat}$ );
- the reference value of  $C_2$  for  $w_2 = 0.5w_{sat}$  (i.e.,  $C_{2ref}$ );
- the drainage coefficient  $C_3$ ;
- the diffusion coefficients  $C_{4ref}$  and  $C_{4b}$ ;
- and the coefficients  $a, p$  for the  $w_{geq}$  formulation.

On the other hand, the parameters associated with the vegetation can either be derived from the dominant vegetation type, or be specified from existing classification or observations. They are

- the fraction of vegetation  $veg$ ;

- the depth of the soil column  $d_2$  (or the root zone depth);
- the depth of the soil column  $d_3$  (if third soil layer option in use);
- the minimum surface resistance  $R_{smin}$ ;
- the leaf area index  $LAI$ ;
- the heat capacity  $C_v$  of the vegetation;
- the  $R_{GI}$  and  $\gamma$  coefficients found in the formulation of the surface resistance  $R_s$ ;
- and the roughness length for momentum  $z_0$  and for heat  $z_{0h}$ .

Other necessary parameters are

- the albedo  $\alpha$
- the emissivity  $\epsilon$ .
- and characteristic time scale for phase changes (currently constant)  $\tau_i$ .

#### 4.1.8 Appendix A: Continuous formulation of the soil secondary parameters

Following Giordani (1993), Noilhan and Lacarrère (1995), the sand and clay composition (i.e., *SAND* and *CLAY*) are expressed in percentage.

The saturated volumetric water content ( $m^3m^{-3}$ ):

$$w_{sat} = (-1.08SAND + 494.305) \times 10^{-3} \quad (4.180)$$

The wilting point volumetric water content ( $m^3m^{-3}$ ):

$$w_{wilt} = 37.1342 \times 10^{-3}(CLAY)^{0.5} \quad (4.181)$$

The field capacity volumetric water content ( $m^3m^{-3}$ ):

$$w_{fc} = 89.0467 \times 10^{-3}(CLAY)^{0.3496} \quad (4.182)$$

The slope of the retention curve:

$$b = 0.137CLAY + 3.501 \quad (4.183)$$

The soil thermal coefficient at saturation ( $Km^2J^{-1}$ ):

$$C_{Gsat} = -1.557 \times 10^{-2}SAND - 1.441 \times 10^{-2}CLAY + 4.7021 \quad (4.184)$$

The value of  $C_1$  at saturation:

$$C_{1sat} = (5.58CLAY + 84.88) \times 10^{-2} \quad (4.185)$$

The value of  $C_2$  for  $w_2 = 0.5w_{sat}$ :

$$C_{2ref} = 13.815CLAY^{-0.954} \quad (4.186)$$

The coefficient  $C_3$ :

$$C_3 = 5.327CLAY^{-1.043} \quad (4.187)$$

The coefficient  $C_{4b}$ :

$$C_{4b} = 5.14 + 0.115CLAY \quad (4.188)$$

The coefficient  $C_{4ref}$ :

$$C_{4ref} = \frac{2(d_3 - d_2)}{(d_2 d_3^2)} \log_{10}^{-1} \left[ \beta_0 + \sum_{j=1}^3 (\beta_j SAND^j + \alpha_j CLAY^j) \right] \quad (4.189)$$

where the  $\beta_j$  ( $j = 0, 3$ ) coefficients are  $4.42 \times 10^{-0}$ ,  $4.88 \times 10^{-3}$ ,  $5.93 \times 10^{-4}$  and  $-6.09 \times 10^{-6}$ . The  $\alpha_j$  ( $j = 1, 3$ ) coefficients are defined as  $-2.57 \times 10^{-1}$ ,  $8.86 \times 10^{-3}$  and  $-8.13 \times 10^{-5}$ .

The coefficients for the  $w_{geq}$  formulation:

$$a = 732.42 \times 10^{-3} CLAY^{-0.539} \quad (4.190)$$

$$p = 0.134CLAY + 3.4 \quad (4.191)$$

#### 4.1.9 Appendix B: Gaussian formulation for the $C_1$ coefficient

Following Giordani (1993) and Braud *et al.* (1993), for dry soils (i.e.,  $w_g < W_{wilt}$ ), the  $C_1$  coefficient in Eq. (13) is approximated by the Gaussian distribution:

$$C_1(w) = C_{1max} \exp \left[ -\frac{(w_g - w_{max})^2}{2\sigma^2} \right] \quad (4.192)$$

In this expression,

$$C_{1max} = (1.19w_{wilt} - 5.09) \times 10^{-2} T_s + (-1.464w_{wilt} + 17.86) \quad (4.193)$$

$$w_{max} = \eta w_{wilt} \quad (4.194)$$

with

$$\eta = (-1.815 \times 10^{-2} T_s + 6.41)w_{wilt} + (6.5 \times 10^{-3} T_s - 1.4) \quad (4.195)$$

and

$$\sigma^2 = -\frac{W_{max}^2}{2 \ln \left( \frac{0.01}{C_{1max}} \right)} \quad (4.196)$$

## 4.2 ISBA-A-gs surface scheme

### 4.2.1 The Model

#### Introduction

Météo-France is developing SURFEX (SURFace EXternalisée) to be used in operational NWP models, and offline for applications in hydrology and vegetation monitoring (Martin *et al.* (2007)). SURFEX serves the merging of a number of land and ocean surface models. Over land, SURFEX includes ISBA-A-gs, a  $CO_2$  responsive land surface model able to simulate the diurnal cycle of carbon and water vapour fluxes (Calvet *et al.* (1998), Calvet *et al.* (2004), Gibelin *et al.* (2006), Calvet *et al.* (2008)). This latter model accounts for different feedbacks in response to changes in  $[CO_2]$ , photosynthesis enhancement and transpiration reduction (fertilization and antitranspirant effects, respectively). Daily values of Leaf Area Index (LAI) and biomass can be produced by ISBA-A-gs.

ISBA-A-gs uses a  $CO_2$  responsive parameterization of photosynthesis based on the model of Goudriaan *et al.* (1985) modified by Jacobs (1994) and Jacobs *et al.* (1996). This parameterization is less detailed than that commonly used in most land surface models (Farquar *et al.* (1980)) for  $C_3$  plants and Collatz *et al.* (1992) for  $C_4$  plants), but it has the same formulation for  $C_4$  plants as for  $C_3$  plants differing only by the input parameters. The model also includes an original representation of the soil moisture stress. Two different types of drought responses are distinguished for both herbaceous vegetation (Calvet (2000)) and forests (Calvet *et al.* (2004)), depending on the evolution of the water use efficiency (WUE) under moderate stress: WUE increases in the early soil water stress stages in the case of the drought-avoiding response, whereas WUE decreases or remains stable in the case of the drought-tolerant response.

ISBA-A-gs calculates interactively the leaf biomass and the LAI (defined as the leaf area per unit ground area), using a simple growth model (Calvet *et al.* (1998)). The leaf biomass is supplied with the carbon assimilated by photosynthesis, and decreased by a turnover and a respiration terms. LAI is inferred from the leaf biomass multiplied by the Specific Leaf Area ratio, which depends on the leaf nitrogen concentration (Calvet and Soussana (2001), Gibelin *et al.* (2006)). Gibelin *et al.* (2006) showed that ISBA-A-gs simulates realistic LAI at the global scale under various environmental conditions. The physics of ISBA-A-gs has been implemented in SURFEX by CNRM. Meanwhile, the physics of ISBA-A-gs has been implemented in the ECMWF land surface scheme TESSEL (Van den Hurk *et al.* (2000)) by KNMI. The A-gs extension of TESSEL is called CTESSEL (Voogt *et al.* (2006), Lafont *et al.* (2006)).

#### Background information

**Vegetation patches** SURFEX contains the ISBA-A-gs photosynthesis model, for which particular vegetation types need to be distinguished. In each grid box several vegetation types are present, with their own water and energy budget, and their own roughness length. ISBA-A-gs has a reduced number of parameters but is able to represent contrasting vegetation types. The model includes 7 vegetation types: 3 of them are high vegetation types: deciduous broadleaf forest, coniferous forest and evergreen broadleaf forest. The other 4 are low-vegetation types:  $C_3$  grass,  $C_4$  grass,  $C_3$  crops and  $C_4$  crops. The  $C_3$  and  $C_4$  carbon fixation mechanisms correspond to contrasting photosynthetic biochemical pathways.  $C_3$  plants represent the vast majority of the Earth's plant biomass.  $C_4$  plants consist mainly of tropical grasses and some of them are cultivated (maize, sorghum, millet, sugar cane).

The canopy resistance in ISBA-A-gs is calculated in the routine COTWORES (or COTWORESTRESS for the most recent version able to differentiate drought-avoiding from drought-tolerant biomes). The photosynthesis model is called from COTWORES (or COTWORESTRESS).

Table 4.5: Options of ISBA-A-gs

Option	Drought response	Leaf Area Index and leaf biomass	Above-ground biomass (non-woody)
AGS	Calvet <i>et al.</i> (1998)	Not calculated (prescribed value is used)	Not calculated
LAI	Calvet <i>et al.</i> (1998)	Calculated (from photosynthesis)	Not calculated
AST	Avoiding or Tolerant Calvet (2000), Calvet <i>et al.</i> (2004)	Not calculated (prescribed value is used)	Not calculated
LST	Avoiding or Tolerant Calvet (2000), Calvet <i>et al.</i> (2004)	Calculated (from photosynthesis)	Not calculated
NIT	Avoiding or Tolerant Calvet (2000), Calvet <i>et al.</i> (2004)	Calculated (from photosynthesis)	Calculated (nitrogen dilution)

⚠ **The parameters of ISBA-A-gs cannot be aggregated/averaged. Spatial heterogeneity within a grid cell has to be represented by running the model several times (as many times as the number of patches found within the grid cell).**

**Options of ISBA-A-gs** Five options of ISBA-A-gs (Table 4.5) can be activated by using the NAM\_ISBA namelist

⚠ **The use of the most recent drought response formulation (present in options AST, LST, NIT) is recommended as it is based on meta-analyses of leaf-level observations and was validated successfully at the field and at the global scale (see Rivalland *et al.* (2006), Gibelin *et al.* (2006, 2008) and Calvet *et al.* (2008)).**  
**This option is used in CTESSEL (Voogt *et al.* (2006)).**

### Photosynthesis Model (no water stress)

The canopy resistance is calculated from the photosynthesis, which is the net  $CO_2$  assimilation ( $A_n$ ) of the canopy. An is calculated as a function of different environmental factors based on the approach by Goudriaan *et al.* (1985).

First,  $CO_2$  assimilation limited by the air  $CO_2$  concentration is determined via a saturation equation:

$$A_m = A_{m,max} [1 - \exp \{-g_m^*(C_i - \Gamma)/A_{m,max}\}] \quad (4.197)$$

where  $A_{m,max}$  is the maximum net  $CO_2$  assimilation,  $g_m^*$  is the mesophyll conductance (with no soil water stress),  $C_i$  is the  $CO_2$  concentration in the leaf and  $\Gamma$  is the  $CO_2$  concentration at which assimilation compensates respiration, called  $CO_2$  compensation concentration.  $A_{m,max}$  depends on temperature via a  $Q_{10}$  function:

$$A_{m,max}(T_s) = \frac{A_{m,max}(25) \times Q_{10}^{(T_s-25)/10}}{[1 + \exp \{0.3(T_1 - T_s)\}] [1 + \exp \{0.3(T_s - T_2)\}]} \quad (4.198)$$

where  $A_{m,max}(25)$  is  $A_{m,max}$  at 25°C,  $Q_{10}$  is fixed at 2.0,  $T_s$  is the skin temperature in °C and  $T_1$  and  $T_2$  are reference temperature values (see Table 4.6).  $g_m$  in unstressed soil moisture conditions,  $g_m^*$ , depends on temperature via the same  $Q_{10}$  function as  $A_{m,max}$ . The dependence on temperature of  $\Gamma$  is described by:

$$\Gamma(T_s) = \Gamma(25) \times Q_{10}^{(T_s-25)/10} \quad (4.199)$$

where  $Q_{10}$  is fixed at 1.5.

Table 4.6: Values of model parameters at 25°C and of parameters in the temperature response functions (T in °C)

Mechanism	Parameter (X)	X(@25)	$Q_{10}$	$T_1$ [°]	$T_2$ [°]
$C_3$	$\epsilon_0$ [ $mg J^{-1}$ ]	0.017	-	-	-
	$f_0^*$	0.85	-	-	-
	$\Gamma$ [ppm]	45	1.5	-	-
	$g_m^*$ [ $mm s^{-1}$ ]	7.0	2.0	5	36 <sup>1</sup>
	$A_{m,max}$ [ $mg m^{-2} s^{-1}$ ]	2.2	2.0	8	38
$C_4$	$\epsilon_0$ [ $mg J^{-1}$ ]	0.014	-	-	-
	$f_0^*$	0.50	-	-	-
	$\Gamma$ [ppm]	2.8	1.5	-	-
	$g_m^*$ [ $mm s^{-1}$ ]	17.5	2.0	13	36
	$A_{m,max}$ [ $mg m^{-2} s^{-1}$ ]	1.7	2.0	13	38

As can be seen from Table 4.6, some parameters depend only on the photosynthesis mechanism ( $C_3/C_4$ ). Others, like  $g_m^*$ , depend on the vegetation type (Table 4.9). The internal  $CO_2$  concentration  $C_i$ , is directly derived from the  $CO_2$  concentration in the air  $C_s$ . It is controlled by the air humidity via:

$$C_i = fC_s + (1 - f)\Gamma \quad (4.200)$$

and

$$f = f_0^* \left(1 - \frac{D_s}{D_{max}^*}\right) + f_{min} \left(\frac{D_s}{D_{max}^*}\right) \quad (4.201)$$

where  $D_{max}^*$  is the maximum specific humidity deficit of the air tolerated by the vegetation (with no soil water stress) and  $D_s$  is the actual deficit. If the deficit exceeds  $D_{max}^*$ , the plant closes its stomata.  $f_0^*$  is the value of  $f$  if there is no saturation deficit (with no soil water stress). Both the unstressed  $D_{max}^*$  and unstressed  $f_0^*$  are parameters that are vegetation type specific (Table 4.9). Depending on vegetation type and stress strategy, soil moisture stress influences these values (see Section 4.2.1).  $f_{min}$  is given by:

$$f_{min} = \frac{g_c}{g_c + g_m^*} \quad (4.202)$$

where  $g_c$  is the cuticular conductance, its value depending on vegetation type (Table 4.9). The  $CO_2$  assimilation limited by  $CO_2$  concentration is further limited by radiation by:

$$A_n = (A_m + R_d) [1 - \exp\{-\epsilon I_a / (A_m + R_d)\}] - R_d \quad (4.203)$$

where  $I_a$  is the photosynthetically active radiation (PAR),  $\epsilon$  is the initial quantum use efficiency and  $R_d$  is the dark respiration.  $\epsilon$  is given by:

$$\epsilon = \epsilon_0 \frac{C_i - \Gamma}{C_i + 2\Gamma} \quad (4.204)$$

<sup>1</sup>see section 4.2.3

where  $\epsilon_0$  is the maximum quantum use efficiency (Table 4.6).  $R_d$  is parameterized simply as:

$$R_d = A_m/9 \quad (4.205)$$

The stomatal conductance to  $CO_2$ ,  $g_{sc}$ , is estimated using a flux-gradient relationship, modified to account for the effect of a specific humidity deficit on stomatal aperture. The first guess  $g_{sc}^*$  is given by:

$$g_{sc}^* = \frac{A_n - A_{min} \left( \frac{D_s}{D_{max}^*} \frac{A_n + R_d}{A_m + R_d} \right) + R_d \left( 1 - \frac{A_n + R_d}{A_m + R_d} \right)}{C_s - C_i} \quad (4.206)$$

where  $A_{min}$  represents the residual photosynthesis rate (at full light intensity) associated with cuticular transfers when the stomata are closed because of a high specific humidity deficit. It is parameterized as:

$$A_{min} = g_m^*(C_{min} - \Gamma) \quad (4.207)$$

where  $C_{min}$  is the value of  $C_i$  at maximum specific humidity deficit ( $D_s = D_{max}^*$ ):

$$C_{min} = \frac{g_c C_s + g_m^* \Gamma}{g_c + g_m^*} \quad (4.208)$$

Taking into account the ratio of diffusivity of water vapour and  $CO_2$  (=1.6), the first guess of the stomatal conductance to water vapour is:

$$g_s^{first} = 1.6g_{sc}^{first} \quad (4.209)$$

The diffusion of  $CO_2$  interacts with that of water vapour. The first guess of the stomatal conductance to  $CO_2$ , must be corrected for this interaction by:

$$g_{sc} = g_{sc}^{first} + E \frac{M_a}{\rho_a M_v} \frac{C_s + C_i}{2(C_s - C_i)} \quad (4.210)$$

where  $M_a$  and  $M_v$  are molecular masses of air and water vapour respectively,  $\rho_a$  is the air density and E is leaf transpiration based on the first guess of the stomatal conductance to water vapour:

$$E = \rho_a g_s^{first} D_s \quad (4.211)$$

In order to refine the estimation of the stomatal conductances to  $CO_2$  and water vapour, a single iteration over Eqs. 4.209, 4.211 and 4.210 is applied. Finally, the stomatal conductance to water vapour is given by:

$$g_s = 1.6g_{sc} + g_c \quad (4.212)$$

### Soil moisture stress parameterization

**Initial version** In the initial version of ISBA-A-gs (Calvet *et al.* (1998)), the effect of soil moisture stress was applied to the mesophyll conductance, by multiplying  $g_m^*$  by the normalized soil moisture. This quantity is referred to by the function  $f_2$ :

$$f_2 = \frac{\bar{\theta} - \theta_{wilt}}{\theta_{fc} - \theta_{wilt}} \quad (4.213)$$

In this version  $D_{max}^*$  was fixed at  $45 \text{ g kg}^{-1}$ . The value of  $f_0$  for  $C_3$  plants was 0.85 and for  $C_4$  plants 0.5. The routine corresponding to the initial version is called COTWORES.

Table 4.7: Differences between figure 4.15 and the model

	$f_{2c}$	$D_{maxX}$	$D_{maxN}$
Figure	0.5	403	55
Model	0.3	300	30

**Improved representation of plant response to drought** The initial parameterization is replaced by a more complex one, based on a meta-analysis of several herbaceous and woody vegetation types (Calvet (2000)), Calvet *et al.* (2004)). The meta-analysis shows relationships between  $g_m$  and  $D_{max}$  for low vegetation and between  $g_m$  and  $f_0$  for high vegetation. Furthermore, it seems that plants react in two different ways to soil moisture stress. There are plants that try to avoid stress, by reducing the evaporation via stomatal regulation, and/or growing during well-watered conditions. This stress strategy is typified as drought-avoiding (or defensive). Others apply another strategy in order to resist stress, by a more efficient root water-uptake or a more rapid growing cycle. This stress strategy is typified as drought-tolerant (or offensive). Among species within the 7 vegetation classes of ISBA-A-gs both strategies may occur. Therefore, it is not easy to generalize the strategy for each class. It seems most likely that coniferous forests and  $C_3$  crops have a drought-avoiding strategy, whereas an drought-tolerant strategy is assigned to the other classes. In both stress strategies, 2 regimes are distinguished. One with moderate stress, in which the normalized soil moisture  $f_2$  exceeds the critical value  $f_{2c}$ . The other with severe stress, where  $f_2$  is less than  $f_{2c}$ . The critical value is fixed at 0.3 for global modelling. For local modelling this value may be adapted to available data.

**Low vegetation** Calvet (2000) discusses the soil moisture stress response by low vegetation types. In unstressed conditions, the following relationship holds for low vegetation types:

$$C_3 \text{ plants : } \ln(g_m^*) = 2.381 - 0.6103 \ln(D_{max}^*) \quad (4.214)$$

$$C_4 \text{ plants : } \ln(g_m^*) = 5.323 - 0.8923 \ln(D_{max}^*) \quad (4.215)$$

with  $g_m^*$  in  $mm s^{-1}$  and  $D_{max}^*$  in  $gkg^{-1}$ .

The negative correlation between  $g_m$  and  $D_{max}$  indicates that plants that are sensitive to the air humidity (low  $D_{max}$  value), compensate the early closing of the stomata by a high mesophyll conductance. On the other hand, plants that are less sensitive to the air humidity have a lower mesophyll conductance. Figure 4.15 shows the stress response for low vegetation types schematically. The symbol  $\theta$  is equal to  $f_2$ . The figure represents an example of a  $C_3$  plant with specific parameter values. Table 4.7 presents differences between the example in the figure and the model values.

The starting point is the unstressed condition ( $\theta=100\%$ ). First we follow the drought-avoiding strategy. When stress sets in,  $D_{max}$  decreases while  $g_m$  increases until the critical soil moisture is reached. This is described by:

$$D_{max} = D_{max}^N + (D_{max}^* - D_{max}^N) \frac{f_2 - f_{2c}}{1 - f_{2c}} \quad (4.216)$$

This strategy leads to less evaporation, but keeps up the  $CO_2$  assimilation, thereby increasing the water use efficiency. Under moderate stress Eq. 4.214 is still valid. Via this equation, the maximum value of  $g_m$ ,  $g_m^X$ ,

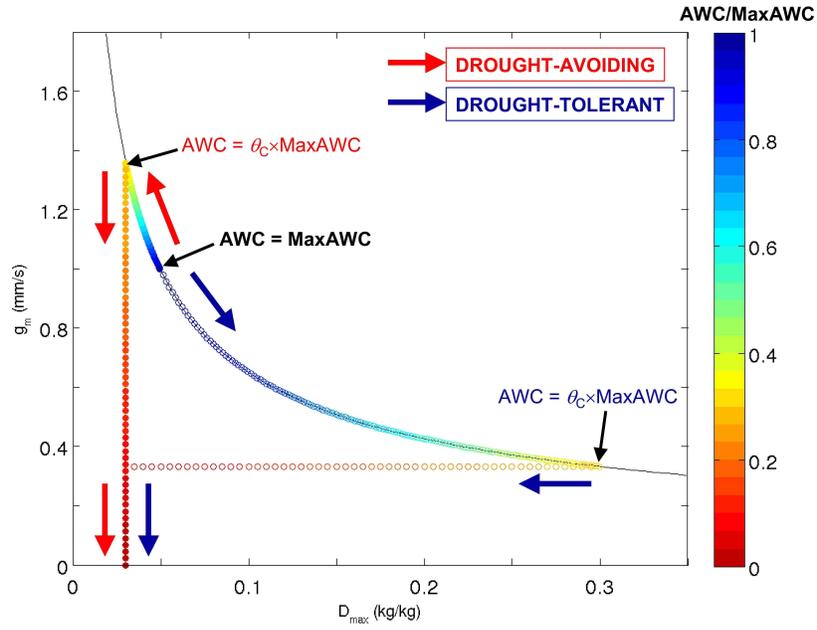


Figure 4.15: Responses of C3 herbaceous plants to soil moisture stress as represented in the ISBA-A-gs model, through the relationship between the mesophyll conductance at 25 °C,  $g_m$ , and the maximum leaf-to-air saturation deficit,  $D_{max}$  (adapted from Calvet (2000)): drought-avoiding and drought-tolerant (red and blue arrows, respectively). The soil moisture stress is represented by the ratio of the Available soil Water Content ( $AWC$ ) to the maximum  $AWC$  ( $MaxAWC$ ). For moderate soil water stress (i.e.  $AWC > \theta_C \times MaxAWC$ ), the deviation of  $D_{max}$  from its unstressed value towards its minimum ( $0.03 \text{ kg kg}^{-1}$ ) or maximum ( $0.30 \text{ kg kg}^{-1}$ ) value (drought-avoiding and drought-tolerant, respectively), is proportional to  $AWC$ , scaled between  $MaxAWC$  and  $\theta_C \times MaxAWC$ . The value of  $g_m$  is driven by  $D_{max}$  through a logarithmic equation (solid line):  $\ln(g_m) = 2.3810.6103 \times \ln(D_{max})$ , with  $g_m$  and  $D_{max}$  in units of  $\text{mm s}^{-1}$  and  $\text{g kg}^{-1}$ , respectively. For more pronounced soil water stress (i.e.  $AWC < \theta_C \times MaxAWC$ ), either  $g_m$  or  $D_{max}$  (drought-avoiding and drought-tolerant, respectively), decrease from its value at  $AWC = \theta_C \times MaxAWC$  to its minimum value, proportional to  $AWC/(\theta_C \times MaxAWC)$ . As an example, the values  $\theta_C = 0.3$  and unstressed  $g_m = 1 \text{ mm.s}^{-1}$  are used (Calvet *et al.* (2012)).

follows from the value of  $D_{maxN}$ . If the stress goes below the critical value (severe stress),  $D_{max}$  does not change anymore, but  $g_m$  drops with ongoing severity of stress:

$$g_m = g_m^X \frac{f_2}{f_{2c}} \quad (4.217)$$

Now we follow the drought-tolerant strategy. When stress sets in,  $D_{max}$  increases while  $g_m$  decreases until the critical soil moisture is reached. This is described by:

$$D_{max} = D_{max}^X + (D_{max}^* - D_{max}^X) \frac{f_2 - f_{2c}}{1 - f_{2c}} \quad (4.218)$$

This strategy leads to more evaporation, thereby possibly decreasing the water use efficiency. If the stress goes below the critical value (severe stress),  $g_m$  does not change anymore, but  $D_{max}$  drops with ongoing severity of stress:

$$D_{max} = D_{max}^X \frac{f_2}{f_{2c}} \quad (4.219)$$

For low vegetation types in the new parameterization,  $D_{max}^*$  follows from  $g_m^*$  via Eq. 4.214.  $f_0^*$  for  $C_3$  plants is fixed at 0.95 and for  $C_4$  plants at 0.6. The routine corresponding to the new version is called COTWORESTRESS.

**High vegetation** Calvet *et al.* (2004) discuss the soil moisture stress response by high vegetation types. In unstressed conditions, the following relationship holds for low vegetation types:

$$\ln(g_m^*) = 4.7 - 7f_0^* \quad (4.220)$$

with  $g_m^*$  in  $mm\ s^{-1}$ . The product  $g_m f_0$  controls  $A_m$ , since  $C_i$  is influenced by  $f_0$ . Therefore the negative correlation between the two parameters makes that  $CO_2$  assimilation flux does not drop too much. Figure 4.16 shows the stress response for high vegetation types schematically. The starting point is the unstressed condition ( $\theta=100\%$ ). First we follow the drought-avoiding strategy. When stress sets in,  $f_0$  decreases while  $g_m$  keeps its unstressed value until the critical soil moisture is reached. This is described by:

$$f_0 = f_0^* + (f_0^* - f_0^N) \frac{1 - f_2}{1 - f_{2c}} \quad (4.221)$$

where  $f_0^N$  is the value of  $f_0$  given by the relationship between  $g_m$  and  $f_0$  under severe stress conditions, with  $g_m = g_m^*$ :

$$\ln(g_m^*) = 2.8 - 7f_0 \quad (4.222)$$

This strategy leads to an increase of the water use efficiency. If the stress goes below the critical value (severe stress),  $f_0$  increases and  $g_m$  decreases via:

$$g_m = g_m^* \frac{f_2}{f_{2c}} \quad (4.223)$$

Now we follow the drought-tolerant strategy. When stress sets in,  $f_0$  keeps its unstressed value while  $g_m$  decreases until the critical soil moisture is reached. This is described by:

$$g_m = g_m^* - (g_m^* - g_m^N) \frac{1 - f_2}{1 - f_{2c}} \quad (4.224)$$

where  $g_m^N$  is the value of  $g_m$  given by Eq. 4.222 with  $f_0 = f_0^*$ . This strategy leads to a decrease of the water use efficiency. If the stress goes below the critical value (severe stress),  $f_0$  increases and  $g_m$  decreases via:

$$g_m = g_m^N \frac{f_2}{f_{2c}} \quad (4.225)$$

For high vegetation types in the new parameterization,  $f_0^*$  follows from  $g_m^*$  via Eq. 4.220. For  $D_{max}^*$  a relationship with  $g_m^*$  was developed based on results from Calvet *et al.* (2004):

$$D_{max}^* = -37.97 \ln(g_m^*) + 150.4 \quad (4.226)$$

This equation was used in Table 4.9 to determine  $D_{max}^*$  in the case of forests.

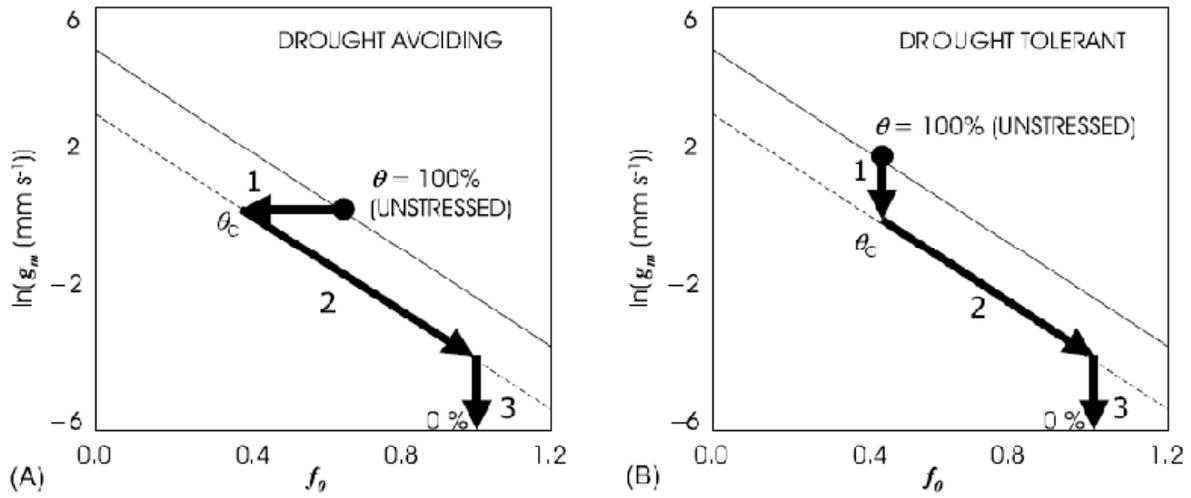


Figure 4.16: Stress responses for high vegetation. Reproduced from Calvet *et al.* (2004)

### From leaf to canopy

The photosynthesis model calculates the net  $CO_2$  assimilation at the leaf scale. For the upscaling to the canopy, integration over the canopy is needed. It is assumed that variables  $T_s$ ,  $D_s$  and  $C_s$  do not vary within the canopy together with the model parameters. In SURFEX, wet leaves from the interception of rain or leaves covered by snow do not assimilate  $CO_2$ . The tile-specific skin temperature  $T_s$  is calculated by solving the surface energy balance for each tile. In COTWORES (and COTWORESTRESS),  $D_s$  at canopy level is calculated from  $D_s$  at the reference atmospheric level from a simple flux-gradient relationship by using the aerodynamic resistance  $r_a$  and the water vapour flux of the previous time step. For  $C_s$ , this is done too, with the net  $CO_2$  flux. The incoming shortwave radiation is attenuated in the canopy. At the top of the canopy, the incoming PAR is assumed to be 48% of the incoming shortwave radiation. The PAR extinction is described by Roujean (1996). The PAR at height  $z$  in the canopy is given by:

$$I_a(z) = (1 - K(z)) \times I_a(h) \quad (4.227)$$

where  $h$  is the height of the top of the canopy and  $K$  is the extinction coefficient given by:

$$K(z) = f(\theta_s) \times K_{df}(z) + (1 - f(\theta_s)) \times K_{dr}(z) \quad (4.228)$$

Where  $K_{df}(z)$  and  $K_{dr}(z)$  are the extinction coefficients of diffuse and direct light, respectively:

$$K_{df}(z) = 1 - \exp(-0.8bLAI(h - z)/h) \quad (4.229)$$

$$K_{dr}(z) = 1 - \exp\left(-\frac{G}{\cos \theta_s} bLAI(h - z)/h\right) \quad (4.230)$$

where  $\theta_s$  is the solar zenith angle and  $G$  is a parameter that describes the distribution of leaves (a spherical angular distribution is assumed:  $G=0.5$ ).  $f$  is the ratio of diffuse to total downward shortwave radiation at the top of the canopy given by:

$$f(\theta_s) = \frac{0.25}{0.25 + \cos \theta_s} \quad (4.231)$$

$b$  is the foliage scattering coefficient:

$$b = 1 - \frac{1 - \sqrt{1 - \omega}}{1 + \sqrt{1 - \omega}} \quad (4.232)$$

where  $\omega$  (=0.2) is the leaf single scattering albedo in the part of the solar spectrum corresponding to the PAR.

Assuming an homogeneous leaf vertical distribution, the integrated canopy net  $CO_2$  assimilation and conductance can be written as:

$$A_{nI} = \frac{LAI}{h} \int_0^h A_n dz \quad (4.233)$$

$$g_{sI} = \frac{1}{r_s} = \frac{LAI}{h} \int_0^h g_s dz \quad (4.234)$$

where  $r_s$  is the canopy resistance. The integrations are parameterized with a three-point Gauss quadrature method:

$$A_{nI} = LAI \times \sum_{i=1}^3 W_i A_n(z_i) \quad (4.235)$$

$$g_{sI} = LAI \times \sum_{i=1}^3 W_i g_s(z_i) \quad (4.236)$$

where  $z_i$  and  $W_i$  are the Gauss levels and weights respectively.  $r_s$  is used in the calculation of the exchange of water vapour between the vegetation and the atmosphere.

## Biomass evolution

The user may define whether the vegetation must be calculated interactively, or must follow from surface climatology fields of LAI. This can be done via a flag (Table 4.5) in the namelist NAM\_ISBA (CPHOTO). This section presents the calculations belonging to interactive vegetation.

With a dynamic representation of LAI, the model is able to account for interannual variability, droughts in particular. The interactive LAI is based on biomass evolution due to photosynthetic activity. The biomass module simulates growth and mortality of the vegetation. Throughout SURFEX, the vegetation biomass is expressed in units of kg of dry matter per  $m^2$ .

**Initial version** In the initial version a single biomass reservoir  $B$  is considered (Calvet *et al.* (1998)). It represents the photosynthetic active biomass, including the leaves and also a proportion of the stem and roots, which provide water for transpiration. Once a day ( $\Delta t = 1$  day), at midnight, both growth and mortality is calculated:

$$B(t + \Delta t) = B(t) + \Delta B^+ - \Delta B^- \quad (4.237)$$

The growth is based on the accumulated net  $CO_2$  assimilation over the previous day:

$$\Delta B^+ = \frac{M_C}{P_C M_{CO_2}} A_{nI, day} \Delta t \quad (4.238)$$

where  $P_c$  is the proportion of carbon in the dry plant biomass, for which a constant value of 0.4 is chosen, and  $M_C$  and  $M_{CO_2}$  are the molecular weights of carbon and  $CO_2$  (12 and 44  $gmol^{-1}$ ).  $A_{nI,day}$  is the daily accumulated  $A_{nI}$ . Mortality can be due to soil moisture stress, diseases and senescence but also to the transportation of organic molecules from the active biomass to stocking and structural organs. It is given by an exponential extinction of  $B$  characterized by a time-dependent effective life expectancy:

$$\Delta B^- = B \left( 1 - \exp \left( -\frac{\Delta t}{\tau} \right) \right) \quad (4.239)$$

and

$$\tau(t) = \tau_M \frac{A_{nfm}(t)}{A_{n,max}} \quad (4.240)$$

where  $\tau_M$  is the maximum effective life expectancy, depending on vegetation type (Table 4.9),  $A_{nfm}$  is the maximum leaf  $A_n$  reached on the previous day and  $A_{n,max}$  is the optimum leaf  $A_n$  obtained when:

$$D_s = 0 \text{ g kg}^{-1}$$

$$I_a(h) = 500 \text{ W m}^{-2}$$

$$T_s = 25^\circ\text{C for } C_3 \text{ plants and } T_s = 35^\circ\text{C for } C_4 \text{ plants.}$$

In order to avoid extreme loss of biomass in periods when  $A_n$  is low, the following constraint on leaf span time is imposed:

$$\tau \geq \frac{\tau_M}{10} \quad (4.241)$$

The LAI is obtained from the biomass assuming a constant ratio, depending on vegetation type (Table 4.9):

$$\alpha_B = \frac{B}{LAI} \quad (4.242)$$

One other vegetation parameter is needed, in order to enable vegetation to start assimilating  $CO_2$  after a period of unfavourable conditions: a LAI minimum value  $LAI_{min}$  (Table 4.9). The routine of biomass loss is called LAILOSS. The routine of biomass growth is called LAIGAIN.

### Version with nitrogen dilution

**Theory** In reality,  $\alpha_B$  depends on climate (temperature and  $CO_2$  concentration) and nitrogen fertilisation. In order to account for plant morphology, the nitrogen dilution concept by Lemaire and Gastal (1997) is applied in the new version of biomass evolution. The plant N decline model is a well-established agronomical law relating the plant N in non-limiting N-supply conditions to the accumulated aboveground dry matter. The critical plant N is the value of N maximizing growth, and this value decreases for increasing biomass accumulation following a negative power law. The basis of the model is that the metabolic component of the plant biomass is related to total biomass through an allometric logarithmic law (Calvet and Soussana (2001)). In ISBA-A-gs, the metabolic biomass component is identified as the active biomass, or leaf biomass. The relationship between active biomass  $B$  and total, non-woody aboveground biomass  $B_T$  is:

$$B_T = \left( \frac{B}{c} \right)^{1/(1-a)} \quad (4.243)$$

where  $a$  and  $c$  are constant parameters:  $c = 0.754$ , and  $a$  may vary with  $CO_2$  concentration, but for the sake of simplicity a constant value  $a = 0.38$  is used (XCA\_1x\_CO2\_NIT). The total aboveground biomass

consists of the active biomass reservoir and the structural aboveground reservoir ( $B_s$ ), which can be considered as the "living" structural biomass, like the stem. For forests, wood is a dead reservoir and does not contribute to  $B_s$ . Within the nitrogen dilution model a relationship between the leaf area ratio LAR and the aboveground nitrogen concentration  $N_T$  is applied:

$$LAR = \frac{LAI}{B_T} = eN_T + f \quad (4.244)$$

where  $e$  and  $f$  are called plasticity parameters and are derived per vegetation type (Table 4.9). Eq. 4.244 can be used as a closure equation to estimate  $\alpha_B$ :

$$\alpha_B = \frac{1}{eN_a + f/(cB_T^{-a})} \quad (4.245)$$

where  $N_a$  is the nitrogen concentration in the active biomass. It depends on vegetation type and on the nitrogen fertilisation. For further details and derivations see Calvet and Soussana (2001). In this way,  $\alpha_B$  has become a model variable depending on  $B_T$ . However, for global simulations, it is desirable to keep  $\alpha_B$  as a constant parameter in order to let  $\alpha_B$  represent rather intrinsic plant characteristics denoting a biological adaptation to average climate and growing conditions (Calvet and Soussana (2001)). For that purpose, Eq. 4.245 can only be solved by iteration. Moreover, LAR and  $N_T$  data to derive the plasticity parameters by regression is lacking. However, data is available for leaves in the form of the specific leaf area SLA and the nitrogen content in leaves  $N_L$ :

$$SLA = \frac{LAI}{B_L} = eN_L + f \quad (4.246)$$

Both the iteration issue and the availability of data to derive  $e$  and  $f$  give rise to modify the nitrogen dilution module. Eq. 4.245 is simplified by considering  $\alpha_B$  as the ratio of the biomass of green leaves to LAI:

$$\alpha_B = \frac{1}{SLA} = \frac{1}{eN_L + f} \quad (4.247)$$

It must be noted that  $N_L$  may decrease for increasing  $CO_2$  concentration (Calvet *et al.* (2008)) and section 4.2.3).

**Biomass reservoirs** The different biomass reservoirs are calculated using a simplified allocation scheme (Calvet and Soussana (2001)). Figure 4.17 presents the allocation scheme schematically. Next to  $B$  and  $B_s$ , there is a belowground structural biomass reservoir  $B_{s2}$ . The active biomass is calculated in the same way as in the initial version (Eq. 40). The B-decline term (Eq. 4.239) is split into a mortality and storage term:

$$\Delta B^- = M_B + S_B \quad (4.248)$$

In the growing phase ( $\Delta B^+ \geq \Delta B^-$ ) the  $N$  decline equations can be applied. When the vegetation becomes senescent ( $\Delta B^+ < \Delta B^-$ ), the equations are no longer valid. Therefore a distinction between the two phases is made.

In the growing phase, following the  $N$  decline equations,  $B_T$  is derived from  $B$  using Eq. 4.243 and  $B_s$  is the difference between the two terms. The mortality of  $B_s$  is assumed to be independent of photosynthesis and is given by:

$$M_{B_s} = B_s \left( 1 - \exp\left(-\frac{\Delta t}{\tau_M}\right) \right) \quad (4.249)$$

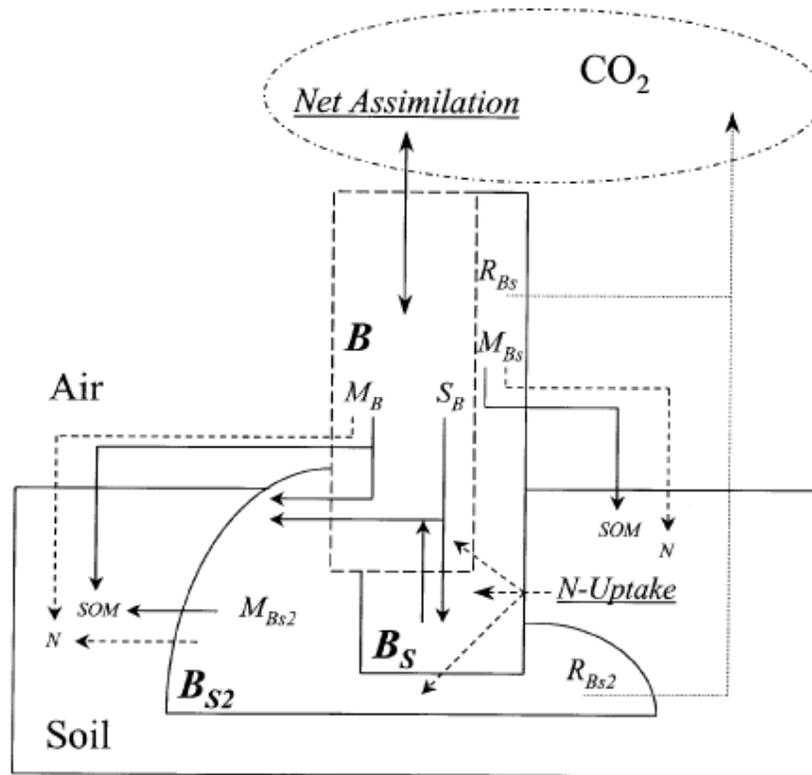


Figure 4.17: Schematic representation of the simple biomass model. Nitrogen (N) and carbon fluxes are represented by dashed and solid lines, respectively. The three biomass (B) compartments are indicated together with storage and mortality terms (S and M, respectively). Heterotrophic respiration (R) is represented by dotted lines. The mortality terms may be used as an input of a model of wood production and SOM. From: Calvet and Soussana (2001)

The structural biomass also loses carbon through respiration. This term is estimated using the common observation that maintenance respiration of non-active biomass is proportional to the biomass value, with a  $Q_{10}$  temperature dependence:

$$R_{B_s} = \eta_R B_s Q_{10}^{(T_s - 25)/10} \Delta t \quad (4.250)$$

where  $T_s$  is the skin temperature in °C,  $\eta_R$  is a respiration rate fixed at  $1\% \text{day}^{-1}$  and  $Q_{10} = 2.0$ . Finally, the storage term  $S_B$  is calculated as the residual of the structural biomass budget:

$$S_B = \Delta B_s - M_{B_s} - R_{B_s} \quad (4.251)$$

The mortality  $M_B$  in Eq. 4.248 is obtained by difference. In situations where  $S_B$  exceeds  $\Delta B^-$  (implying that  $M_B < 0$ ), an alternative formulation of B-decline is employed. It is assumed that there is no loss of active biomass outside the plant system during the considered time step, so  $M_B = 0$  and that the difference in total aboveground biomass is the difference between the biomass gain due to daily net assimilation and the mortality and respiration losses of structural biomass:

$$\Delta B_T = \Delta B^+ - M_{B_s} - R_{B_s} \quad (4.252)$$

$B_T$  is derived from this difference and the value at the previous time step.  $B$  follows from  $B_T$  via Eq. 4.243 and  $B_s$  is the difference between the two terms. A new value of the storage term  $S_B$  is given by Eq. 4.251. In the senescent phase,  $B_s$  evolves independently from  $B$ .  $S_B$  is set to zero and the mortality and respiration losses are directly applied to  $B_s$ :

$$B_s = B_s^{t-1} - M_{B_s} - R_{B_s} \quad (4.253)$$

The belowground structural biomass  $B_{s2}$  is not treated by the plant N decline model. The mortality and respiration losses of  $B_{s2}$  are calculated using equations similar to Eqs. 4.249 and 4.250:

$$M_{B_{s2}} = B_{s2} \left( 1 - \exp \left( -\frac{\Delta t}{\tau_M} \right) \right) \quad (4.254)$$

$$R_{B_{s2}} = \eta_R B_{s2} Q_{10}^{(T_{soil}-25)/10} \Delta t \quad (4.255)$$

where  $T_{soil}$  is the temperature in °C of the soil layer in the force-restore version of ISBA. Note that both  $R_{B_s}$  and  $R_{B_{s2}}$  are calculated every time step and accumulated over one day.  $B_{s2}$  is fed by two mechanisms. First, when the storage term  $S_B$  is negative (this may happen, e.g., when a cut is prescribed in the model), this quantity is redirected to  $B_{s2}$ . Second, when the total aboveground plant biomass  $B_T$  is lower than  $c^{1/a}$ , it is assumed that the mortality term  $M_B$  becomes a storage term that increases  $B_{s2}$ .

The routine corresponding to the nitro dilution version is called NITRO\_DECLINE.

The module can be coupled to a soil organic matter (SOM) model. The SOM is fed by the mortality terms (Calvet and Soussana (2001)). Besides, the model still lacks a wood (dead biomass) reservoir. Those extensions have been developed by Gibelin *et al.* (2008) (ISBA-CC, see Sect. 4.3).

Note: In the model, the biomass loss is calculated before the biomass gain. When NITRO\_DECLINE is called and values from the previous day are needed, those are the values of the previous day calculated in NITRO\_DECLINE, so before the biomass growth due to photosynthesis (calculated in LAIGAIN) is added to the biomass reservoir. In that case, LAILOSS is not called (in VEGETATION\_EVOL).

## Respiration

Since the biomass model is not coupled to a soil model, soil respiration needs to be parameterized in another way. In ISBA-A-gs, a simple  $Q_{10}$  equation is used to represent the ecosystem respiration, but this method lacks a representation of the effect of soil moisture on the soil respiration. The representation of all the respiration terms (including the heterotrophic respiration and its dependence on soil moisture) was developed by Gibelin *et al.* (2008) in ISBA-CC (see Sect. 4.3).

The  $CO_2$  ecosystem respiration is parameterised by a  $Q_{10}$  function, weighted by a soil moisture scaling factor (Albergel *et al.* (2010)):

$$RECO = RE25 \cdot f(w_g) \cdot Q_{10}^{(T_{soil}-25)/10} \quad (4.256)$$

$$f(w_g) = \min(1, w_g/w_{fc}) \quad (4.257)$$

where  $RE25$  is the reference respiration at 25 °C,  $T_{soil}$  is the temperature in °C of the root-zone soil layer (at a depth of about 20cm),  $w_g$  is the surface soil moisture, corresponding to the first top cm of the soil,  $w_{fc}$  is the soil moisture at field capacity, and  $Q_{10}$  is fixed at 2.0.

Table 4.8: Example of harvest estimates ( $t C ha^{-1} y^{-1}$ )

Vegetation type	Harvest
Deciduous	3.2
Coniferous	2.3
Evergreen	3.2
$C_3$ grass	2.3
$C_4$ grass	3.2
$C_3$ crops	2.3
$C_4$ crops	3.2

$RE25$  has to be determined per vegetation type in each grid box, assuming equilibrium between multi-annual  $CO_2$  assimilation by photosynthesis (or gross primary production,  $GPP$ , i.e. raw carbon uptake by photosynthesis), harvest and ecosystem respiration:

$$GPP_{acc} - Harvest_{acc} = RECO_{acc} = RE25 \left\{ f(w_g) \cdot Q_{10}^{(T_{soil}-25)/10} \right\}_{acc} \quad (4.258)$$

where  $acc$  stands for accumulated over the multi-year period. For harvest, examples of yearly harvest estimates per vegetation type are given in Table 4.8. Numbers are based on a 40% carbon content of dry biomass.

Once  $RE25$  is calibrated for each vegetation type within each grid box, it may be treated as a surface climatology field, which is input to the model.

### $CO_2$ fluxes

The photosynthesis model is called from COTWORES (or COTWORESTRESS) for all present vegetation tiles (Section 4.2.1).

The net ecosystem  $CO_2$  exchange (NEE) per vegetation type is given by:

$$NEE = GPP - RECO \quad (4.259)$$

Throughout SURFEX, the unit of the kinematic  $CO_2$  flux is  $kgCO_2 kgAir^{-1} m s^{-1}$  (as opposed to dynamic  $CO_2$  flux units of  $kgCO_2 m^{-2} s^{-1}$ ).

### 4.2.2 Vegetation parameters

Gibelin *et al.* (2006) have proposed default values for the parameters of the new version of ISBA-A-gs (NIT option). They are listed in Table 4.9 for 7 vegetation types.

Table 4.9: Values of ISBA-A-gs parameters for the ECOCLIMAP vegetation types ( $g_m^*$  in  $mm\ s^{-1}$ ,  $\tau_M$  in days,  $LAI_{min}$  in  $m^2\ m^{-2}$ ,  $D_{max}^*$  in  $g\ kg^{-1}$ ,  $f_0^*$  dimensionless,  $g_c$  in  $mm\ s^{-1}$ , strategy of response to soil moisture stress (drought-tolerant or drought-avoiding),  $\theta_C$  dimensionless,  $e$  in  $m^2\ kg^{-1}\ \%^{-1}$ ,  $f$  in  $m^2\ kg^{-1}$ , and  $N_l$  in %)

Vegetation type	$g_m^*$	$\tau_M$	$LAI_{min}$	$D_{max}^*$	$f_0^*$	$g_c$	Strategy	$\theta_C$	$e$	$f$	$N_l$
Deciduous broadleaf trees	3	230	0.3	109	0.51	0.15	tolerant	0.3	4.83	2.53	2
Evergreen broadleaf trees	2	365	1	124	0.57	0.15	tolerant	0.3	4.83	2.53	2.5
Needle leaf trees	2	365	1	124	0.57	0	avoiding	0.3	4.85	-0.24	2.8
$C_3$ crops	1	150	0.3	50	0.95	0.25	avoiding	0.3	3.79	9.84	1.3
$C_4$ crops	9	150	0.3	33	0.6	0.15	tolerant	0.3	7.68	-4.33	1.9
$C_3$ natural herbaceous	1	150	0.3	50	0.95	0.25	tolerant	0.3	5.56	6.73	1.3
$C_4$ natural herbaceous	6	150	0.3	52	0.6	0.15	tolerant	0.3	7.68	-4.33	1.3

⚠ **In the code,  $g_m^*$ ,  $\tau_M$ ,  $LAI_{min}$ ,  $D_{max}^*$ ,  $f_0^*$ ,  $g_c$ ,  $\theta_C$ ,  $e$ ,  $f$ ,  $N_l$  are named GMES, SEFOLD, LAIMIN, DMAX, FZERO, GC, F2I, CE\_NITRO, CF\_NITRO, CNA\_NITRO, respectively.**  
**GMES and GC are in units of  $m\ s^{-1}$ , SEFOLD in  $s$ , DMAX in  $kg\ kg^{-1}$**

**For herbaceous vegetation:  $f_0^*$  is prescribed in MODD\_CO2V\_PAR,  $D_{max}^*$  is derived from the inversion of 4.214.**

**In the case of trees:  $f_0^*$  and  $D_{max}^*$  are not prescribed in the code, they are derived from the inversion of Eqs 4.220 and 4.226, respectively.**

### 4.2.3 Discussion

In this final chapter, some issues are discussed that deserve attention for future code development.

#### Respiration

Ecosystem respiration is a major component of the net  $CO_2$  flux. ISBA-A-gs lacks a soil carbon reservoir and a wood (dead biomass) reservoir. Moreover, roots are not explicitly represented. Those extensions (and the associated respiration fluxes) are present in the ISBA-CC version, which has been coded into SURFEX (see Sect. 4.3). This provides possibilities for respiration calculations for each of the carbon reservoirs, that might replace the present respiration calibration. There is a strong need for direct respiration measurements to validate the parameterization.

With respect to the present  $Q_{10}$  calibration of ecosystem respiration, soil moisture effects are not accounted for. This hypothesis is not correct and a simple representation of the surface soil moisture effect on ecosystem respiration has to be introduced in SURFEX. Furthermore, the value of  $Q_{10}$  is fixed at 2, because it is generally used in literature about respiration. However, climate conditions may ask for a differentiation in

the  $Q_{10}$  value.

### Soil moisture stress parameterization

The soil moisture stress parameterization may depend on the way soil hydrology is represented. Since the soil moisture content depends on the soil parameterization, which is different for ISBA-FR and ISBA-DF, this may lead to divergent behaviour. The use of ISBA-A-gs with the ISBA-DF option has still to be tested.

### Temperature response of $g_m$ for $C_3$ plants

Table 4.6 presents for  $C_3$  plants a  $T_2$  of 36 °C for  $g_m$ . However, in the beginning of the ISBA-A-gs development, this value was 28 °C (Calvet *et al.* (1998)). This was changed during the development of new versions (e.g. Calvet (2000)). This implies that the temperature response of  $g_m$ , which is a sensitive parameter for photosynthesis, for  $C_3$  plants approaches the response for  $C_4$  plants, i.e. an optimal temperature for photosynthesis of 32 °C. This is certainly too high for boreal forests and grasslands adapted to cold climates (high latitudes or mountainous areas). The  $T_2$  parameter will have to be adapted as a function of a climatology of air temperature.

### Radiative transfer within the vegetation

The radiative transfer equations and the quadrature method described in section 4.2.1 are based on many approximations (Calvet *et al.* (1998)). In particular, the representation of (1) scattering of the photosynthetically active radiation (PAR), (2) the interception of the diffuse radiation, within the canopy, may be oversimplified for regions/seasons with a lot of diffuse PAR (clouds, high solar zenith angles), especially for dense canopies.

The radiative transfer influences (1) photosynthesis and the canopy conductance, (2) mortality. Moreover, Calvet *et al.* (2008) have shown that the way light interception within the canopy is modelled may impact the simulated plant response to climate change.

**Tropical evergreen forests** Simulations with ISBA-A-gs showed that  $A_n$  is underestimated in tropical evergreen forest. This may cause an underestimation of net primary production (NPP) and an overestimation of the mortality of leaves. A solution must be found to improve photosynthesis and mortality. Mortality depends on the optimum net  $CO_2$  assimilation (with  $500 W m^{-2}$  PAR). For evergreen forests that have a high radiation extinction in the canopy,  $500 W m^{-2}$  PAR may not be realistic under optimal conditions. Therefore, mortality might be overestimated. This could be dealt with by either reducing the optimum PAR or by considering a different mortality parameterization. Radiative transfer equations may also be improved for dense canopies in order to account better for diffuse radiation.

For the photosynthesis and canopy resistance, the vegetation parameter values in the photosynthesis model may be reconsidered. Therefore, data sets of tropical evergreen forests are needed to calibrate parameters like  $g_m$  and  $N_a$ .

**Representation of mortality** In NITRO.DECLINE, a correction of mortality is introduced for dense canopies. The effective life expectancy of the leaves (governing the exponential decline of  $B$ ) is increased. Indeed, Eq. 4.240 relates mortality to the factors acting on photosynthesis at the leaf level. The factors accounted for by Eq. 4.240 include self shading since  $A_{n,fm}$  is the maximum average leaf net assimilation: this quantity depends on LAI, which is employed to compute the extinction of solar radiation (see section 4.2.1). Preliminary tests of the nitrogen dilution option (NIT) showed that at very high values of LAI, the

self shading effect in Eq. 4.240 may trigger exaggerated values of mortality and, finally, underestimated values of biomass. Therefore, Eq. 4.240 was modified such as, for dense canopies, the leaf-level  $A_{n,fm}/A_{n,max}$  ratio is replaced by a value representative of the canopy:

$LAI A_{n,fm}/(X A_{n,max})$ , where  $X$  represents the maximum value of the ratio between canopy- and leaf-level optimum net assimilation. The value of  $X$  denotes the relative advantage of a well-developed canopy over a single horizontal leaf in terms of net assimilation of  $CO_2$ , in optimal conditions. This value was searched for various models parameters such as  $LAI$ , and  $g_m$ , by performing simulations over one annual cycle at several latitudes. In each configuration, a value of  $LAI$  (always higher than  $5 m^2 m^{-2}$ ) maximising the ratio between canopy- and leaf-level optimum net assimilation could be found. A logarithmic relationship between the optimal value of  $X$  and  $g_m$  was obtained ( $X$  tends to decrease for increasing values of  $g_m$ ). This relationship depends on latitude because of the influence of maximum solar elevation on  $X$  ( $X$  is lower at high latitudes). Finally, Eq. 4.240 was rewritten as:

$$\tau(t) = \tau_M \frac{A_{n,fm}(t)}{A_{n,max}} \text{Max} \left\{ 1, g_m^{0.321} LAI/LAI_B \right\} \quad (4.260)$$

where  $g_m$  is expressed in units of  $mm s^{-1}$ , and  $LAI_B$  represents a limit value of  $LAI$  depending on latitude ( $L_a$ ) as:

$$LAI_B = 5.76 - 0.64 \tan(\text{Min}\{\|L_a\|, 73^\circ\}) \quad (4.261)$$

The  $LAI_B$  parameter ranges from 5.6 to 3.6, from equator to latitudes higher than  $73^\circ$ . For values of  $g_m$  close to  $1 mm s^{-1}$ , it represents the maximum  $LAI$  value for which the leaf-level net assimilation may be employed to represent mortality. Those equations were derived with the radiative transfer parameterisation described in section 4.2.1 and may be different for another radiative transfer model.

### Representation of crops

In ISBA-A-gs, crops are represented like natural vegetation. There is no particular description of the harvested elements like fruits and e.g. grain yield (cereals) is not directly simulated. Nevertheless, Calvet *et al.* (2008) show that the maximum above-ground biomass simulated by the model correlates with the crop yield and that the model is able to simulate realistic time series of LAI values over one annual cycle, and to represent the interannual variability.

Moreover, a simple representation of irrigation was implemented in SURFEX, and the possibility to simulate crops sown at springtime.

**Irrigation** An irrigation amount of 30mm is added to the precipitation forcing each time the simulated extractable soil moisture content (dimensionless) reaches a predefined threshold. This threshold decreases from 0.70 for the first irrigation, to 0.55 for the second, 0.40 for the third, and 0.25 for the following ones (Calvet *et al.* (2008)). The threshold values are declared in MODD\_AGRI.

**Emergence** Whereas the LAI annual cycle of natural vegetation (leaf onset, senescence, regrowth) is driven by climate conditions, crops are sown at dates chosen by the farmers. In ISBA-A-gs, crops sown at wintertime (i.e. emerging at springtime like natural vegetation) like wheat, are simulated in the same way as natural vegetation. The advantage of this is that no ancillary information is needed and that possible regrowths after a drought period are simulated interactively with the climate.

On the other hand, crops developing at summertime cannot be simulated like natural vegetation. An emergence date has to be prescribed and before this date (MODD\_AGRI\_n), LAI is limited to a minimum value

(e.g.  $0.3 \text{ m}^2 \text{ m}^{-2}$ ). An harvest date is not prescribed. It is considered that climatic conditions (drought, cold) permit to drive the senescence.

In order to prescribe emergence dates, future developments should couple SURFEX to existing crop calendars, at the global scale.

### Representation of nitrogen dilution

The  $CO_2$  fertilization effect tends to increase the vegetation biomass but this effect is limited by nitrogen dilution. In Calvet *et al.* (2008), nitrogen dilution is accounted for by parameterizing the change in leaf nitrogen mass-based concentration  $N_L$  in response to  $[CO_2]$  rise. The sensitivity of leaf nitrogen concentration versus  $[CO_2]$  is accounted for by using the meta-analysis of the literature carried out by Yin 2002 (Yi02). The meta-analysis of Yi02 indicates that, on average, a  $CO_2$ -doubling causes a 18% decrease in  $N_L$ , but that the  $N_L$  response to  $CO_2$  is influenced by a number of factors. A change in  $[CO_2]$ , from  $[CO_2] = C_1$  to  $[CO_2] = C_2$ , produces a change in  $N_L$  from  $N_{L1}$  to  $N_{L2}$  following:

$$\ln\left(\frac{N_{L2}}{N_{L1}}\right) = -a \exp\left[b - \frac{N_{L1}}{N_{Lmax}}\right] \ln\left(\frac{C_2}{C_1}\right) \quad (4.262)$$

with  $a=0.048$  and  $N_{Lmax}=6.3\%$ . In the Yi02 study,  $C_2/C_1$  ranges from 0.53 to 3.2. The  $b$  parameter may vary significantly from one vegetation type to another. For example, in median radiation and air temperature ( $T_a$ ) conditions,  $b = 1.48$  for a fertilised crop,  $b = 2.56$  for a deciduous forest,  $b = 1.81$  for a coniferous forest or natural grasslands. The values of  $b$  are given by:

$$b = 0.75DF - 0.33FERT + 1.1PPFD + \frac{T_a}{23} \quad (4.263)$$

with  $DF=1$  for deciduous forests (0 for other biomes), and  $FERT=1$  for fertilized ecosystems like crops (0 for other biomes).  $PPFD$  is the average photosynthetically active solar radiation reaching the leaf within the vegetation canopy (median value of  $0.74 \text{ mmol m}^{-2} \text{ s}^{-1}$ , equivalent to a total solar radiation of  $335 \text{ W m}^{-2}$ ). In this study, no solar radiation or temperature effect is associated with a change in  $[CO_2]$  and the median  $PPFD$  and  $T_a$  values of Yi02 are used in Eq. 4.263.

### Annex 1: Description of the Fortran routine used to calculate the $CO_2$ flux

#### SUBROUTINE COTWORESTRESS

This routine is used at the time step of SURFEX (e.g. 300 s).

1. The photosynthetically active radiation (PAR) is derived from the incident shortwave radiation. A constant factor of 0.48 is used.
2. Drought-avoiding and drought-tolerant responses to soil moisture stress are simulated for herbaceous and for woody plants (depending on the vegetation type of the considered patch). Namely, the photosynthesis parameters are refreshed to be consistent with the root-zone soil moisture.
3. The  $CO_2$  compensation concentration of photosynthesis (ZGAMMT), the maximum photosynthesis (ZANMAX), and the mesophyll conductance (ZGMEST) are refreshed to be consistent with the leaf temperature (i.e. surface temperature in a single-source configuration).
4. The leaf-to-air saturation deficit within the canopy (depends on leaf temperature and air humidity) is refreshed (ZDSP).

5. The  $CO_2$  concentration within the canopy is refreshed (ZCSP).
6. Ecosystem respiration is refreshed (ZRSOIL).
7. The solar zenith angle is prescribed (PZENITH).
8. Integrated canopy values of photosynthesis (ZTPST), net assimilation (ZTAN), and leaf conductance (ZTGS) are obtained by a 3-point Gauss quadrature method (SIZE(PABC) is equal to 3 ; can be modified).
9. The PAR at each Gauss level is calculated by radiative transfer equations in SUBROUTINE CCETR. In CCETR, the interception of direct and diffuse light is represented. The fraction of diffuse radiation (ZXFD) depends on the solar zenith angle, only.
10. At each Gauss level within the canopy, the photosynthesis model (SUBROUTINE COTWO) is run.
11. The canopy resistance (PRS) is calculated, as well as the net ecosystem exchange of  $CO_2$  (PCO2FLUX).

## 4.3 The ISBA-CC model

### 4.3.1 Introduction

The ISBA-CC model is a new version of ISBA developed by Gibelin *et al.* (2008) with the aim of simulating the terrestrial carbon cycle.

ISBA-CC is based on the ISBA-A-gs model (Calvet and Soussana (2001)). The latter simulates the gross photosynthesis rate, the dark leaf respiration, and changes in leaf biomass. Also, ISBA-A-gs simulates the ecosystem respiration using a  $Q_{10}$  parameterization based on soil temperature and surface soil moisture (Albergel *et al.* (2010)). ISBA-CC and ISBA-A-gs share the same photosynthesis model (Jacobs *et al.* (1996)), and the same representation of the photosynthesis response to drought (Calvet (2000), Calvet *et al.* (2004)) and of the carbon allocation to the leaf biomass compartment (Calvet and Soussana (2001)). The added value of ISBA-CC is a more detailed representation of (1) the ecosystem respiration, including its autotrophic and heterotrophic components, (2) the biomass compartments, including roots and wood (in the case of trees).

The heterotrophic respiration, produced by the decomposition of the soil organic matter, is represented following the STOMATE carbon model included into the IPSL ORCHIDEE model (Krinner *et al.* (2005)). The litter and the soil organic matter pools are simulated, together with the carbon fluxes from one carbon pool to another, and with the respiration flux to the atmosphere.

The various litter pools are supplied by the fluxes of dead biomass. A specific carbon allocation scheme was implemented in order to represent various biomass components, which were not accounted for by ISBA-A-gs: an explicit representation of roots, and (in the case of trees) of the above-ground and below-ground wood. For all the biomass compartments, turnover and respiration terms are calculated. Also, ISBA-CC simulates the autotrophic respiration, the net primary production (NPP), and the total biomass of the plant.

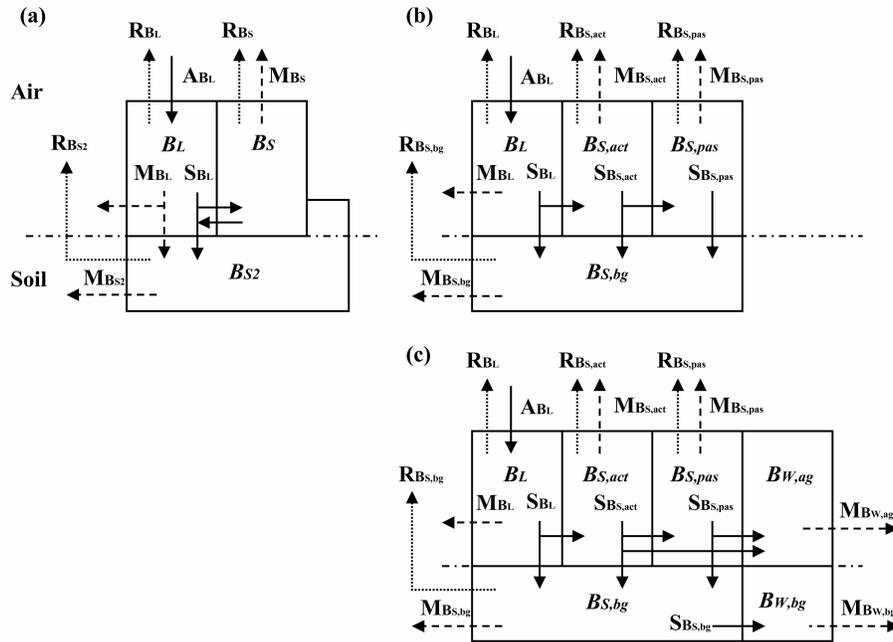


Figure 4.18: Schematic representation of the plant carbon reservoirs and fluxes in (a) ISBA-A-gs (Calvet and Soussana (2001)), and in ISBA-CC for (b) herbaceous (c) and woody vegetation. The various biomass reservoirs are prefixed by B. Input and output fluxes are indicated for each reservoir: allocation and storage (A and S, solid arrows), mortality (M, dashed arrows) and respiration (R, dotted arrows). The autotrophic respiration is the sum of all the biomass respiration terms.

### 4.3.2 Allocation scheme

#### Evolution of the biomass compartments

The ISBA-CC allocation scheme simulates the various carbon reservoirs of the plant. Six biomass pools are considered, in units of  $kg\ m^{-2}$ , including four above-ground pools and two below-ground pools:

- $B_L$  leaf biomass,
- $B_{s,act}$  active structural biomass, linked to  $B_L$  through nitrogen dilution,
- $B_{s,pas}$  passive structural biomass,
- $B_{s,bg}$  below ground structural biomass,
- $B_{w,ag}$  above ground woody biomass (for trees),
- $B_{w,bg}$  below ground woody biomass (for trees).

This new allocation scheme was based, as much as possible, on the structure of the "NIT" option of ISBA-A-gs, described in (Calvet and Soussana (2001)). The  $B_L$  and  $B_{s,act}$  compartments were not modified and correspond to the  $B_L$  and  $B_s$  compartments of ISBA-A-gs. Therefore ISBA-CC and ISBA-A-gs simulate the same values of LAI, as LAI is derived from the leaf biomass  $B_L$ .  $B_{s,pas}$  is a buffer reservoir corresponding to a fraction of the  $B_{s2}$  compartment. It is used for the storage of the biomass released by  $B_{s,act}$  during the senescence phase.  $B_{s,bg}$  represents non-woody roots.  $B_{w,ag}$  and  $B_{w,bg}$  correspond to above-ground and below-ground wood components, respectively. They are used for woody vegetation types (i.e. broadleaf deciduous and evergreen forests, and coniferous forests).

Figure 4.18 shows the plant carbon reservoirs and fluxes simulated by ISBA-A-gs and by ISBA-CC.

The evolution of all the biomass reservoirs is calculated with a time step  $\Delta t$  of 1 day, following the generic equation 4.264.

$$\Delta B = A_B - D_B - R_B \quad (4.264)$$

A  $B$  biomass term is driven by an incoming allocation term  $A_B$ , by a respiration carbon loss term  $R_B$ , and by a turnover term  $D_B$ , expressed in units of  $kg\ m^{-2}$ . These three terms are detailed below, for all the biomass compartments.

### Respiration

The autotrophic respiration results from the oxydation of organic molecules, as part of the plant metabolism. Generally, two autotrophic respiration terms are considered: the growth respiration associated to the production of new plant tissues, and the maintenance respiration, corresponding to the existing biomass.

The respiration terms are calculated at the time step of the model  $dt$  and accumulated at the  $\Delta t = 1day$  time step.

The  $B_L$  respiration term of ISBA-A-gs,  $R_d$ , is used in ISBA-CC, also. It is included in the leaf net assimilation term, which is the difference between photosynthesis and dark respiration  $R_d$ .  $R_d$  corresponds to the sum of the growth respiration and of the maintenance respiration of the leaves.

$$R_{B_L} = \sum_{dt} 10^{-6} \frac{M_C}{P_c M_{CO_2}} R_{dC} dt \quad (4.265)$$

where  $\sum dt = \Delta t$ ,  $P_c$  is the fraction of carbon of the dry biomass, assumed to be equal to 40%,  $M_C$  and  $M_{CO_2}$  are the molecular weights of carbon and  $CO_2$  (12 and 44  $g\ mol^{-1}$ , respectively), and  $R_{dC}$  is the dark respiration rate integrated from the leaf to the canopy.

The  $B_s$  respiration term of ISBA-A-gs, is used in ISBA-CC for  $B_{s,act}$ .

$$R_{B_{s,act}} = \sum_{dt} B_{s,act} \eta_R Q_{10}^{(T_s-25)/10} dt \quad (4.266)$$

where  $Q_{10} = 2$ , and  $\eta_R = 0.01\ g\ g^{-1}\ j^{-1}$ , corresponding to a  $B_{s,act}$  biomass loss of 1 % per day through respiration, at a temperature of 25°C.

For the other structure biomass pools ( $B_{s,pas}$  and  $B_{s,bg}$ ), the linear response to temperature of the maintenance respiration proposed by Ruimy *et al.* (1996) is used:

$$R_{B_{s,pas}} = \sum_{dt} B_{s,pas} R_0 (1 + 0.16 T_s) dt \quad (4.267)$$

$$R_{B_{s,bg}} = \sum_{dt} B_{s,bg} R_0 (1 + 0.16 T_p) dt \quad (4.268)$$

where  $R_0$  is the respiration value at 0°C, equal to  $1.19\ 10^{-4}\ g\ g^{-1}\ j^{-1}$  (as proposed by Ruimy *et al.* (1996) for the sapwood compartment),  $T_s$  is leaf temperature and  $T_p$  is soil temperature in units of °C. This value can be compared with the scaling factor of  $B_{s,act}$  at 0°C in equation 4.266:  $2\ 10^{-3}\ g\ g^{-1}\ j^{-1}$ .

$B_{w,ag}$  and  $B_{w,bg}$  represent the wood, and no respiration term is associated to these reservoirs.

### Decline term

The decline term represents the various processes, other than respiration, able to trigger a biomass decrease. It includes decreases due to mortality and reallocation to other plant elements. It is expressed simply, as an exponential decrease of the biomass. The decline term of the biomass  $B$  is expressed by the generic equation:

$$D_B = B (1 - e^{-\frac{\Delta t}{\tau}}) \quad (4.269)$$

where  $\tau$  is a residence time (in days).

The residence time of all the non-woody reservoirs is determined using the  $\tau_M$  parameter of the ISBA-A-gs model (the maximum leaf span time). For the leaf biomass  $B_L$ , the leaf span time  $\tau_{B_L}$  is calculated daily, based on the photosynthesis efficiency (see Eq. 4.240). The residence time is  $\tau_M$  for the  $B_{s,act}$  and  $B_{s,bg}$  biomass compartments, and  $\tau_M/4$  for  $B_{s,pas}$ . For the woody biomass compartments, the span time  $\tau_w$  is equal to 40 years for broadleaf deciduous forests, 50 years for the coniferous forests, and 30 years for the broadleaf evergreen forests. For the sake of comparison, in the ORCHIDEE model (Krinner *et al.* (2005)), the residence time of the wood compartment depends on the climatic zones: 80 years for boreal forests, 40 years for temperate forests, and 30 years for the tropical forests.

$$\begin{aligned} D_{B_L} &= B_L (1 - e^{-\frac{\Delta t}{\tau_{B_L}}}) \\ D_{B_{s,act}} &= B_{s,act} (1 - e^{-\frac{\Delta t}{\tau_M}}) \\ D_{B_{s,pas}} &= B_{s,pas} (1 - e^{-\frac{4\Delta t}{\tau_M}}) \\ D_{B_{s,bg}} &= B_{s,bg} (1 - e^{-\frac{\Delta t}{\tau_M}}) \\ D_{B_{w,ag}} &= \begin{cases} 0 & \text{for herbaceous species,} \\ B_{w,ag} (1 - e^{-\frac{\Delta t}{\tau_w}}) & \text{for woody species.} \end{cases} \\ D_{B_{w,bg}} &= \begin{cases} 0 & \text{for herbaceous species,} \\ B_{w,bg} (1 - e^{-\frac{\Delta t}{\tau_w}}) & \text{for woody species.} \end{cases} \end{aligned} \quad (4.270)$$

Then, the decline term is broken down into storage and mortality terms, dedicated to the carbon allocation to other biomass reservoirs, and to the litter, respectively.

$$D_B = M_B + S_B \quad (4.271)$$

### Allocation

Allocation of carbon to  $B_L$ ,  $A_{B_L}$ , is the same as in the "NIT" option of ISBA-A-gs (Calvet and Soussana (2001)). The leaf biomass is directly supplied by gross assimilation (photosynthesis). The latter includes the net carbon assimilation ( $A_{nC}$ ), and the dark respiration ( $R_{dC}$ ) combining the leaf growth respiration and the leaf maintenance respiration.  $A_{nC}$  may present negative values, for example at nighttime.

$$A_{B_L} = \sum_{dt} 10^{-6} \frac{M_C}{P_c M_{CO_2}} (A_{nC} + R_{dC}) dt \quad (4.272)$$

where  $P_c$  is the carbon fraction of the dry biomass, equal to 40%,  $M_C$  and  $M_{CO_2}$  are the molecular weights of carbon and  $CO_2$  (12 and 44  $g\ mol^{-1}$ , respectively), and  $A_{nC}$  and  $R_{dC}$  are the net assimilation rate of carbon and the dark respiration, integrated at the canopy level.

The other reservoirs are supplied through biomass translocation. A storage term  $S_B$  is derived from the decline term  $D_B$ , depending on the reservoir and on the plant type. The following reservoirs can be used to allocate carbon to other reservoirs:  $B_L$ ,  $B_{s,act}$  and  $B_{s,pas}$  for herbaceous plants;  $B_L$ ,  $B_{s,act}$ ,  $B_{s,pas}$  and  $B_{s,bg}$  for woody plants, as shown in figure 4.18). For the other reservoirs, the decline is entirely converted into mortality:  $B_{s,bg}$  for herbaceous vegetation types ;  $B_{w,ag}$  and  $B_{w,bg}$  for woody vegetation types. Also, allocation and mortality depend on the phase of plant growth: the growing phase corresponds to an increase of the leaf biomass, i.e. to the net gain of carbon resulting from net assimilation values higher than the decline term  $B_L$ ; the senescence phase corresponds to a decrease of the leaf biomass. During the growing phase, all the decline  $D_B$  terms are converted to storage  $S_B$ , whereas during the senescence phase, only a fraction of the decline terms is reallocated, and the other fraction becomes a mortality term  $M_B$  supplying the litter.

During the growing phase, the storage terms are calculated as:

$$\begin{aligned}
 S_{B_L} &= D_{B_L} \\
 S_{B_{s,act}} &= D_{B_{s,act}} \\
 S_{B_{s,pas}} &= D_{B_{s,pas}} \\
 S_{B_{s,bg}} &= \begin{cases} 0 & \text{for herbaceous species,} \\ D_{B_{s,bg}} & \text{for woody species} \end{cases} \\
 S_{B_{w,ag}} &= 0 \\
 S_{B_{w,bg}} &= 0
 \end{aligned} \tag{4.273}$$

During the senescence phase,

$$\begin{aligned}
 S_{B_L} &= \begin{cases} 0 & \text{si } A_{B_L} - R_{B_L} \leq 0 \\ f_{A,B_L} (A_{B_L} - R_{B_L}) & \text{si } 0 < f_{A,B_L} (A_{B_L} - R_{B_L}) \leq f_{D,B_L} D_{B_L} \\ f_{D,B_L} D_{B_L} & \text{si } f_{A,B_L} (A_{B_L} - R_{B_L}) > f_{D,B_L} D_{B_L} \end{cases} \\
 S_{B_{s,act}} &= f_{D,B_{s,act}} D_{B_{s,act}} \\
 S_{B_{s,pas}} &= f_{D,B_{s,pas}} D_{B_{s,pas}} \\
 S_{B_{s,bg}} &= \begin{cases} 0 & \text{for herbaceous species,} \\ f_{D,B_{s,bg}} D_{B_{s,bg}} & \text{for woody species;} \end{cases} \\
 S_{B_{w,ag}} &= 0 \\
 S_{B_{w,bg}} &= 0
 \end{aligned} \tag{4.274}$$

where  $f_{D,B}$  is the biomass  $B$  decline fraction reallocated towards other compartments during the senescence.  $f_{D,B_L}$ ,  $f_{D,B_{s,act}}$ ,  $f_{D,B_{s,pas}}$  and  $f_{D,B_{s,bg}}$  are equal to 0.5. A number of tests showed that this value permits realistic simulations of the biomass allocation to the various compartments. The senescence  $B_L$  storage rate, used to supply the  $B_{s,bg}$  compartment (see below), cannot be higher than a fraction of the net carbon supply provided by photosynthesis ( $A_{B_L} - R_{B_L}$ ), and this fraction  $f_{A,B_L}$  is equal to 0.5.

Then, the storage terms are used to supply one or several reservoirs.

The supply of  $B_{s,act}$  follows Calvet and Soussana (2001). During the growing phase,  $B_{s,act}$  is derived from  $B_L$  using the nitrogen dilution law. It must be noted that during the growing phase, while the leaf biomass increases, the model is able to simulate a decrease of  $B_{s,act}$ . This may happen when the growing phase occurs after a temporary senescence phase or after a cut.  $A_{B_{s,act}}$  is the supply term of  $B_{s,act}$ . This term is calculated a posteriori as the sum of the changes in  $B_{s,act}$ , of the respiration terms  $R_{B_{s,act}}$  and of the decline  $D_{B_{s,act}}$ .  $A_{B_{s,act}}$  corresponds to the decline of  $B_L$ . During the senescence,  $B_{s,act}$  is not supplied any longer.

$$A_{B_{s,act}} = \begin{cases} \Delta B_{s,act} + D_{B_{s,act}} + R_{B_{s,act}} & \text{during the growing phase,} \\ 0 & \text{during the senescence phase.} \end{cases} \quad (4.275)$$

When  $B_{s,act}$  decreases while the leaf biomass increases,  $B_{s,pas}$  is supplied by the carbon lost by the  $B_{s,act}$  reservoir. The  $B_{s,pas}$  buffer reservoir avoids the irreversible loss of  $B_{s,act}$  biomass through mortality.

During the senescence,  $B_{s,pas}$  is not supplied any longer.

$$A_{B_{s,pas}} = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{during the growing phase with } A_{B_{s,act}} \geq 0, \\ -A_{B_{s,act}} & \text{during the growing phase with } A_{B_{s,act}} < 0, \\ 0 & \text{during the senescence phase.} \end{cases} \quad (4.276)$$

During the growing phase,  $B_{s,bg}$  is supplied by the storage reservoirs:  $B_L$ ,  $B_{s,act}$  et  $B_{s,pas}$ . During the senescence phase,  $B_{s,bg}$  is supplied by the leaf biomass storage reservoir, only.

$$A_{B_{s,bg}} = f_{S,B_L,B_{s,bg}} S_{B_L} + f_{S,B_{s,act},B_{s,bg}} S_{B_{s,act}} + f_{S,B_{s,pas},B_{s,bg}} S_{B_{s,pas}} \quad (4.277)$$

During the growing phase,  $f_{S,B_L,B_{s,bg}}$  is the remaining  $S_{B_L}$  fraction after the carbon allocation to  $B_{s,act}$ , following the nitrogen dilution law (equation 4.275). This quantity is updated at the daily time step. During the senescence phase,  $f_{S,B_L,B_{s,bg}} = 1$ .  $f_{S,B_{s,act},B_{s,bg}}$  and  $f_{S,B_{s,pas},B_{s,bg}}$  are constant. During the growing phase, they are equal to 1 for herbaceous vegetation types and 0.3 for woody vegetation types, only, as the other fraction is allocated to the wood compartments (equations 4.278 and 4.279). During the senescence phase, they are equal to 0.

For woody vegetation types, the wood compartments are supplied by the storage of  $B_{s,act}$  and  $B_{s,pas}$  for  $B_{w,ag}$ , and by the storage of  $B_{s,bg}$  for  $B_{w,bg}$ .

$$A_{B_{w,ag}} = (1 - f_{S,B_{s,act},B_{s,bg}}) S_{B_{s,act}} + (1 - f_{S,B_{s,pas},B_{s,bg}}) S_{B_{s,pas}} \quad (4.278)$$

$$A_{B_{w,bg}} = S_{B_{s,bg}} \quad (4.279)$$

## Mortality

The mortality of a biomass compartment results from high decline term values, higher than the storage term (if any). The mortality is used to supply the above- and below-ground litter compartments of the soil organic matter scheme. This definition of the mortality differs slightly from the definition used by Calvet and Soussana (2001), who allow the use of a fraction or the  $B_L$  mortality to supply the below-ground reservoir  $B_{s2}$ . In the ISBA-CC model, this contribution supplies the storage term.

$$M_B = D_B - S_B \quad (4.280)$$

### 4.3.3 Coupling with the soil organic matter scheme

In order to simulate the terrestrial carbon cycle in a more realistic way, the simple ecosystem respiration equation used in ISBA-A-gs (Albergel *et al.* (2010)) is replaced by the soil organic matter scheme used in ORCHIDEE (Krinner *et al.* (2005)).

## Overview

The soil respiration scheme used in ISBA-CC is derived from the STOMATE (Saclay Toulouse Orsay Model for the Analysis of Terrestrial Ecosystems) carbon model included in the ORCHIDEE (ORganizing Carbon and Hydrology in Dynamic Ecosystems) (Krinner *et al.* (2005)) land surface model. The latter is an adaptation of one of the first versions of the CENTURY (Parton *et al.* (1987, 1988)) model.

CENTURY simulates the carbon flux and storage and their interactions with the water cycle and nutrient (nitrogen N, sulfur S, and phosphorus P) cycles, in the soil-plant system. It includes a plant growth module, together with a representation of the soil organic matter. Initially, CENTURY was designed for the simulation of the crops and grasslands of the US Great Plains (Parton *et al.* (1987, 1988)).

The current version of CENTURY differs from the older version used in STOMATE, but the main attributes are the same ([www.nrel.colostate.edu/projects/century/](http://www.nrel.colostate.edu/projects/century/), last access January 2012). Also, CENTURY was improved and validated for other vegetation types and other biomes (Parton *et al.* (1993), Peng *et al.* (1998)), and has become a reference model in the international scientific community.

The model simulates several carbon pools of the soil, corresponding to different organic matter categories, residence time, and location, together with the carbon fluxes from one pool to another.

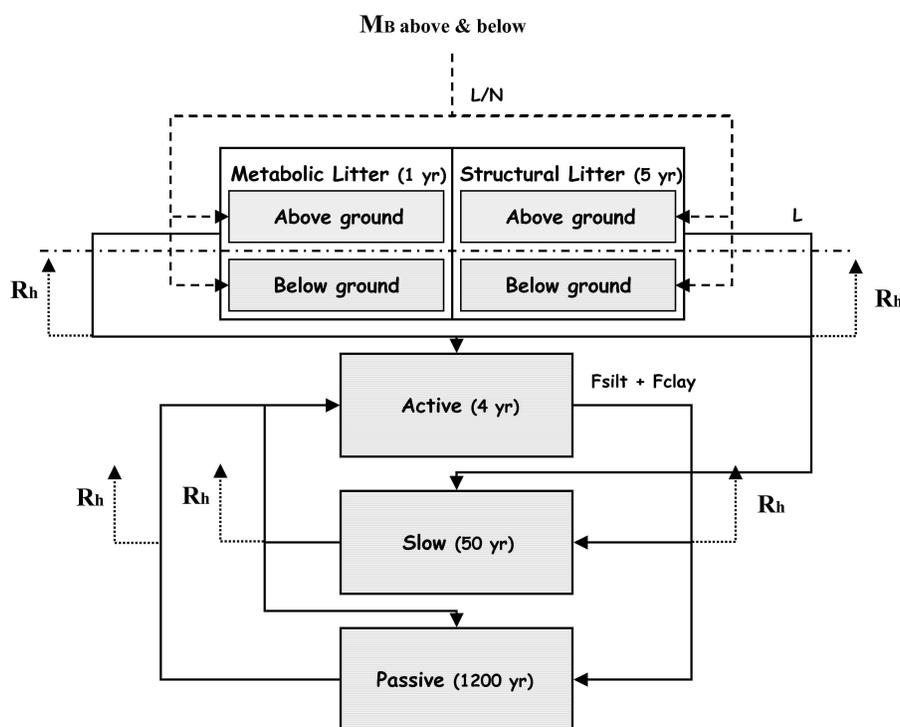


Figure 4.19: Schematic representation of the heterotrophic respiration parameterization of ISBA-CC, adapted from Parton *et al.* (1987). The soil carbon pools are indicated together with input mortality terms (dashed lines), fluxes of carbon exchanged between the pools (solid lines), and fluxes of mineralized carbon (dotted lines). The heterotrophic respiration is the sum of all the fluxes of mineralized carbon. The various carbon pools are reported in Table 4.11.

Four litter categories are simulated: two surface litter compartments, supplied by the mortality fluxes of the above-ground biomass, and two soil litter compartments, supplied by the mortality fluxes of the below-ground biomass. For both above- and below-ground litter, two carbon reservoirs displaying contrasting residence times are considered. The structural litter is made of the lignin and cellulose of the dead vegetation residues, with a residence time of 2 to 5 years. The metabolic litter is made of more labile organic components, with a residence time of 0.1 to 1 year (Parton *et al.* (1988)).

Also, three soil organic matter pools are simulated. They are supplied by the organic matter flux produced by the litter compartments (figure 4.19). The active pool represents the soil microorganisms, together with the decomposition products with a short residence time (2 to 4 years). The slow pool represents the soil organic molecules/components characterized by a residence time ranging from 20 to 50 years. The passive pool represents the soil organic molecules/components characterized by a residence time ranging from 800 to 1200 years (Parton *et al.* (1988)). These simulated carbon pools do not represent distinct physical entities but, rather, various chemical status of the soil organic matter. At a given soil depth, the soil may contain several types of organic matter, at various decomposition stages. Decomposition is controlled by climatic conditions (soil moisture and soil temperature), by the physical properties of the soil (e.g. texture), and by the chemical composition of the substrate (i.e. the carbon, nitrogen, lignin content of the residues). While CENTURY simulates the nutrient (nitrogen N, sulfur S, and phosphorus P) cycles, and their interactions with the carbon cycle (Parton *et al.* (1987, 1988)), this capability was not implemented so far in either STOMATE or ISBA-CC.

### Supply of litter compartments

The ISBA-CC allocation scheme, described in Sect. 4.3.2, provides a flux of dead vegetation residues from the various plant elements. These residues supply the litter compartments according to which plant element is considered.

The residues of the above-(below-)ground biomass supply the above-(below-)ground litter compartments. Also, the structural/metabolic litter compartments are supplied according to the lignin to nitrogen ratio of the residues. The fraction allocated to the metabolic litter  $F_M$  is:

$$F_M = 0.85 - 0.018 \frac{L}{N} \quad (4.281)$$

The other fraction  $F_S$  is allocated to the structural litter:

$$F_S = 1 - F_M \quad (4.282)$$

Therefore, high  $L/N$  values tend to produce more structural litter.

In CENTURY, the lignin content of the biomass depends on the accumulated yearly precipitation, and the nitrogen concentration of the biomass is calculated by the model. In STOMATE, the  $L/N$  values are constant and result from the values of  $L/C$  and  $C/N$ . Table 4.10 shows the  $L/C$ ,  $C/N$ , and  $L/N$  values used by ISBA-CC (see Sect. 4.3.2), derived from those used by STOMATE. It must be noted that the  $C/N$  could be derived, also, from the  $P_c/N_L$  ratio.

### Decomposition of the soil organic matter

Changes in soil organic matter pools are represented as:

$$\frac{dC_i}{dt} = K_i^a M_d T_d C_i \quad (4.283)$$

Biomass Compartment	L/C	C/N	L/N
$B_L$	0.22	40	8.8
$B_{s,act}$	0.35	40	14
$B_{s,pas}$	0.35	40	14
$B_{s,bg}$	0.35	40	14
$B_{w,ag}$	0.35	40	14
$B_{w,bg}$	0.35	40	14

Table 4.10: Lignin to carbon, carbon to nitrogen, and lignin to nitrogen ratio for all the biomass compartments of the ISBA-CC model.

where  $C_i$  is the carbon content (in units of  $gC\ m^{-2}$ ) of the soil organic matter pool  $i$  (see Table 4.11),  $K_i^a$  is the decomposition rate (in units of  $yr^{-1}$ ) of the soil organic matter pool  $i$ ,  $M_d$  is the response of the decomposition to soil wetness (dimensionless, ranging between 0 and 1), and  $T_d$  is the response of the decomposition to soil temperature (dimensionless, ranging between 0 and 1).

Reservoir	Index
Structural above-ground litter	1
Metabolic above-ground litter	2
Structural below-ground litter	3
Metabolic below-ground litter	4
Active carbon pool	5
Slow carbon pool	6
Passive carbon pool	7

Table 4.11: Indices  $i$  of the soil carbon pools.

The decomposition rate  $K_i^a$  is derived from the maximum decomposition rate  $K_i$ , possibly modulated by physical characteristics:

$$\begin{aligned}
K_1^a &= K_1 \exp(-3 L_{s1}) \\
K_2^a &= K_2 \\
K_3^a &= K_3 \exp(-3 L_{s3}) \\
K_4^a &= K_4 \\
K_5^a &= K_5(1 - 0.75(f_{silt} + f_{clay})) \\
K_6^a &= K_6 \\
K_7^a &= K_7
\end{aligned} \tag{4.284}$$

where  $L_{si}$  is the fraction of lignin in the structural litter pools,  $f_{silt}$  and  $f_{clay}$  are the fractions of silt and clay in the soil. High lignin fraction values tend to slow down the decomposition of the structural litter (small values of  $K_i^a$ ). Similarly, fine-textured soils (high fractions of either silt or clay) tend to stabilize the organic molecules and a lower decomposition rate of the active carbon pool is simulated. In ISBA-CC, the original CENTURY expression for  $K_5^a$ , depending on  $(f_{silt} + f_{clay})$ , is used, while in STOMATE, the  $(f_{silt} + f_{clay})$  term is replaced by  $f_{clay}$ .

Table 4.12 presents the equivalent residence time values  $K_i^{-1}$  (where  $K_i$  is the maximum decomposition rate) used in the initial version of CENTURY (Parton *et al.* (1987)) and in STOMATE (Krinner *et al.* (2005)),

Reservoir	$1/K_i$ CENTURY	$1/K_i$ STOMATE
Structural above-ground litter	0.252	0.245
Metabolic above-ground litter	0.068	0.066
Structural below-ground litter	0.204	0.245
Metabolic below-ground litter	0.055	0.066
Active carbon pool	0.137	0.149
Slow carbon pool	5.05	5.37
Passive carbon pool	147.5	241.

Table 4.12: Values of the equivalent residence time  $K_i^{-1}$  (*year*) used in the initial version of CENTURY (Parton *et al.* (1987)) and in STOMATE (Krinner *et al.* (2005)).

for the various carbon pools of the soil. While in CENTURY the maximum decomposition rate  $K_i$  is 20% smaller for the above-ground litter than for the below-ground litter, the same value is used for the two litter compartments in STOMATE. Moreover, the  $K_i$  value of the passive carbon pool is smaller in STOMATE than in CENTURY. In ISBA-CC, the STOMATE values are used.

In CENTURY, the dependence of the decomposition on soil moisture is represented by a normalized factor,  $M_d$ , driven by the ratio of monthly precipitation to the potential evaporation rate. In STOMATE, the original representation of  $M_d$  was replaced by a function depending on soil moisture (Krinner *et al.* (2005)). It must be noted that while the minimum value of  $M_d$  is 0 in (Krinner *et al.* (2005)), the value actually used in the ORCHIDEE code is 0.25:

$$M_d = \min(0.25, \max(1, -1.1\theta^2 + 2.4\theta - 0.29)) \quad (4.285)$$

where  $\theta$  is a normalized soil moisture value ranging between 0 and 1:

$$\theta = \min(0, \max(1, \frac{w - w_{wilt}}{w_{fc} - w_{wilt}})) \quad (4.286)$$

where  $w$  is either the surface or the root-zone soil moisture (see below), in units of  $m^3 m^{-3}$ ,  $w_{wilt}$  is soil moisture at wilting point (in units of  $m^3 m^{-3}$ ), and  $w_{fc}$  is soil moisture at field capacity (in units of  $m^3 m^{-3}$ ). In ISBA-CC, this equation was modified, in order to account for the drop in the decomposition rate for high soil moisture values, ranging between wilting point and saturation values (equation 4.287). Indeed, while water is a limiting factor for microbial growth at moderate soil moisture values, above field capacity, an increase in soil moisture content tends to slow down the exchanges of oxygen in the soil, down to anaerobic conditions at saturation. In the latter situation, less  $CO_2$  is emitted through heterotrophic respiration. Following Probert *et al.* (1998) (the APSIM model), the modified equation allows a linear decrease of  $M_d$ , from 1 to 0.5, when soil moisture increases from field capacity to saturation. Moreover, the minimum  $M_d$  value (at low soil moisture values) is taken as 0.05. The latter is consistent with the group of models described by Paul (2001).

$$\begin{aligned} \text{For } \theta \leq w_{fc}, \quad M_d &= \min(0.05, \max(1, -1.1\theta^2 + 2.4\theta - 0.29)) \\ \text{For } \theta \geq w_{fc}, \quad M_d &= \max(0.5, 1 - 0.5\theta_{sat}) \end{aligned} \quad (4.287)$$

where  $\theta_{sat}$  is another soil moisture index defined as:

$$\theta_{sat} = \frac{w - w_{fc}}{w_{sat} - w_{fc}} \quad (4.288)$$

where  $w_{sat}$  is the saturation soil moisture value.

The  $M_d$  values used in STOMATE and ISBA-CC are shown by Fig. 4.20.

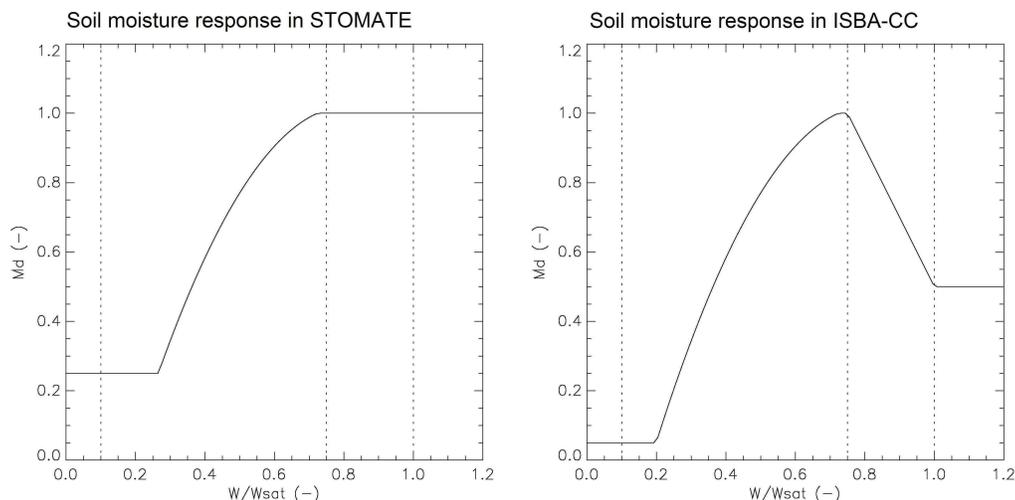


Figure 4.20: Normalized decomposition response function to soil moisture used in (left) STOMATE-ORCHIDEE and (right) ISBA-CC. The three vertical dashed lines indicate (from left to right)  $w_{wilt}$ ,  $w_{fc}$  and  $w_{sat}$ .

Since the soil organic matter model does not represent the profile carbon content of the soil, two soil moisture quantities are used in ISBA-CC: the surface soil moisture (a skin soil moisture corresponding to a thin soil layer of about 1cm) and the root-zone soil moisture. For the litter reservoirs,  $w$ ,  $w_{wilt}$ ,  $w_{fc}$  and  $w_{sat}$  correspond to the surface soil moisture. For the other reservoirs,  $w$ ,  $w_{wilt}$ ,  $w_{fc}$  and  $w_{sat}$  correspond to the root-zone soil moisture.

In CENTURY, the dependence of the decomposition on temperature is represented by a normalized factor,  $T_d$ , driven by the average monthly temperature, according to a bell curve (Parton *et al.* (1987)).

In STOMATE,  $T_d$  is defined as:

$$T_d = 2^{\left(\frac{T-30}{10}\right)} \quad (4.289)$$

where  $T$  is soil temperature in units of °C. This formulation is used in ISBA-CC, also.

The  $T_d$  values used in STOMATE and ISBA-CC are shown by Fig. 4.21.

Since the soil organic matter model does not represent the profile carbon content of the soil, two soil temperature quantities are used in ISBA-CC: the surface temperature  $T_s$  and a deep soil temperature  $T_p$ . For the litter reservoirs,  $T = T_s$ . For the other reservoirs,  $T = T_p$ .

### Carbon fluxes

The decomposition of the organic matter contained in the soil carbon reservoir  $i$ ,  $dC_i/dt$ , triggers various carbon fluxes (Fig. 4.19). A fraction of the decomposed organic matter  $f_{i,CO_2}$  is mineralized through the respiration process and released as  $CO_2$  to the atmosphere. The other fraction is allocated to the other carbon

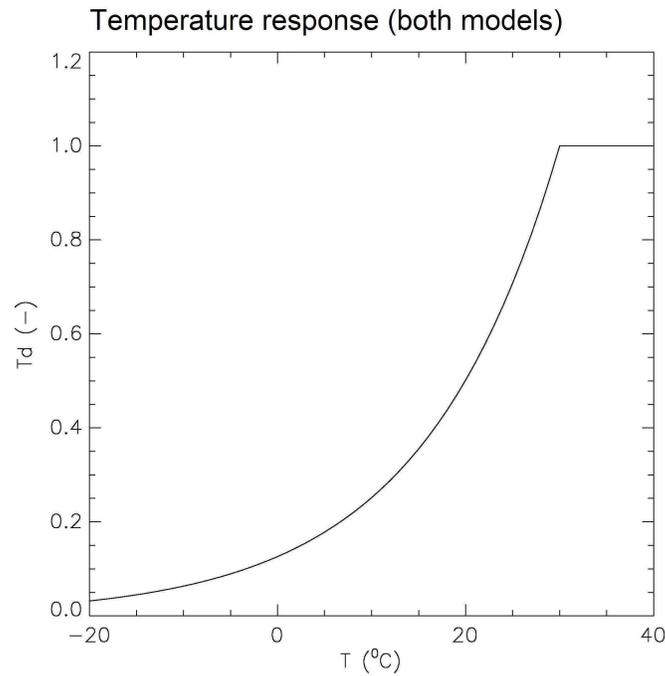


Figure 4.21: Normalized decomposition response function to soil temperature used in both STOMATE-ORCHIDEE and ISBA-CC.

pools of the soil, based on their resistance to decomposition. The fraction of the decomposition flux from reservoir  $i$  to reservoir  $j$  is  $f_{i,j}$ , and:

$$\sum_j f_{i,j} + f_{i,CO_2} = 1 \quad (4.290)$$

For the structural litter reservoirs, the decomposition supplies the respiration flux and the stabilisation of carbon into a soil organic matter carbon pool, either active or slow, depending on the lignin content of the litter and on the nature of the litter (above-ground or below-ground). The lignin tends to reduce both the mineralization and the decomposition of the plant residues.

For the above-ground structural litter, the fractions are defined as:

$$\begin{aligned} f_{1,5} &= 0.55 (1 - L_1) \\ f_{1,6} &= 0.7 L_1 \\ f_{1,CO_2} &= 0.45 (1 - L_1) + 0.3 L_1 \end{aligned} \quad (4.291)$$

where  $L_1$  is the lignin fraction of the above-ground structural litter reservoir.

For the below-ground structural litter, the fractions are slightly different, in relation to a lower efficiency of the decomposition process to stabilize carbon into the active soil organic matter pool:

$$\begin{aligned} f_{3,5} &= 0.45 (1 - L_3) \\ f_{3,6} &= 0.7 L_3 \\ f_{3,CO_2} &= 0.55 (1 - L_3) + 0.3 L_3 \end{aligned} \quad (4.292)$$

where  $L_3$  is the lignin fraction of the below-ground structural litter reservoir.

The decomposition of the metabolic litter reservoirs supplies the respiration flux and the stabilisation of carbon into the active soil organic matter carbon pool. The fractions are the same for above-ground and below-ground reservoirs:

$$\begin{aligned} f_{2,5} &= 0.45 \\ f_{2,CO_2} &= 0.55 \end{aligned} \tag{4.293}$$

$$\begin{aligned} f_{4,5} &= 0.45 \\ f_{4,CO_2} &= 0.55 \end{aligned}$$

The decomposition of the active soil organic matter carbon pool supplies the respiration flux and the slow and passive soil organic matter carbon pools, based on soil texture:

$$\begin{aligned} f_{5,6} &= 1 - 0.004 - (0.85 - 0.68 (f_{silt} + f_{clay})) \\ f_{5,7} &= 0.004 \\ f_{5,CO_2} &= 0.85 - 0.68 (f_{silt} + f_{clay}) \end{aligned} \tag{4.294}$$

The  $f_{5,6}$  and  $f_{5,CO_2}$  terms are identical to those used in CENTURY. Note that in STOMATE,  $f_{clay}$  is used instead of the  $(f_{silt} + f_{clay})$  term.

The decomposition of the slow soil organic matter carbon pool supplies the respiration flux and the active and passive soil organic matter carbon pools, based on soil texture:

$$\begin{aligned} f_{6,5} &= 0.42 \\ f_{6,7} &= 0.03 \\ f_{6,CO_2} &= 0.55 \end{aligned} \tag{4.295}$$

Finally, the decomposition of the passive soil organic matter carbon pool supplies the respiration flux and the active soil organic matter carbon pool.

$$\begin{aligned} f_{7,5} &= 0.45 \\ f_{7,CO_2} &= 0.55 \end{aligned} \tag{4.296}$$

#### 4.3.4 Description of a simulation with ISBA-CC

ISBA-CC describes the evolution of several prognostic variables: the plant biomass reservoirs and the soil organic matter reservoirs. Prescribing initial or equilibrium values of these reservoirs is not easy, at both local and global scales. Indeed, accurate observations of these quantities are lacking. More often than not, the various biomass components are not measured separately, or do not correspond to the definition of the modelled compartments. Also, the soil carbon observations are sparse, and generally concern the first top centimeters of the soil, rarely below 30cm, and barely ever below 1m.

In order to avoid drifts in the carbon reservoirs, spin-up simulations must be performed, until equilibrium reservoir values are reached. Whereas the initial CENTURY model was designed to work at a monthly scale, ISBA-CC accounts for the diurnal cycle and is coupled with a land surface model working at the half-hourly time scale or better. As the time scale for reaching equilibrium values is about a few hundred years for wood and several thousand years for the passive soil carbon pool, the spin-up simulations concern very long periods of time. Therefore, the spin-up simulations cannot involve the whole coupled model. Instead, the carbon reservoir spin-up is performed offline, in several steps described below.

1. A first spin-up simulation (a few years) is performed with ISBA-CC in order to initialize the soil moisture reservoirs, together with the biomass reservoirs presenting a relatively high turnover such as

leaves and the plant structural biomass. For the woody plant types, the wood allocation terms resulting from this simulation are stored at a daily time step (see Section 4.3.2).

2. An offline program produces the evolution of wood reservoirs, at a daily time step, until equilibrium has been reached, using the allocation and decline terms. The latter depends on the amount of carbon stored in the reservoir (Section 4.3.2), and as such must be recalculated every day.
3. A second ISBA-CC simulation is performed, in order to calculate and store daily surface and deep soil temperature and soil moisture values. Also, the mortality fluxes of the plant biomass reservoirs are obtained.
4. An offline program produces the evolution of the soil carbon reservoirs, at a monthly time step, until equilibrium has been reached, using the mortality fluxes and the soil temperature and soil moisture values, based on the equations listed in Section 4.3.3. The equilibrium is reached after several thousand years. It must be noted that since the use of a monthly time step tends to filter out the variability of the surface soil moisture, the obtained equilibrium values may differ from those that would have been obtained using a daily time step.
5. Finally, a last ISBA-CC simulation permits the spin-up of the litter reservoirs and of the active soil organic matter.

A major shortcoming of this equilibrium method is that on an annual or multi-annual basis, the litter supply and the gross primary production are counterbalanced by the heterotrophic respiration, and by the autotrophic respiration, respectively. Therefore, the average net carbon exchange and net primary production present null values. This method does not permit the determination of long term land carbon sinks and sources. Performing more refined carbon budgets at a global scale is very difficult, as a perfect knowledge of the initial values of the carbon reservoirs and of the land cover/land use history is needed, especially for managed forests and for agricultural lands. However, the seasonal variability of the carbon fluxes can be represented by this method, as well as the impact of extreme events (e.g. droughts). Also, the equilibrium state can be used to initialize impact simulations related to the response of the terrestrial carbon cycle to long term perturbations.

In practise, two SURFEX namelists (NAM\_ISBA and NAM\_PREP\_ISBA\_CARBON) have to be modified before performing ISBA-CC runs. In NAM\_ISBA, CPHOTO = 'NCB'. In NAM\_PREP\_ISBA\_CARBON, CRESPSL = 'CNT'. The former activates the 6 biomass pools, and the latter activates the soil heterotrophic respiration and the soil organic matter pools. The different steps of spin-up have been coded in a script called spinup\_CC.bsh, available on the SURFEX web site. This script automatically performs the namelist changes and the simulation repetitions needed for the spin-up. This script can be used as a template and be adapted for specific needs. Please note that the spin-up procedure is designed for inputs and outputs in ASCII format. In particular, the NetCDF, and FA formats cannot be used.

### 4.3.5 Conclusion

The ISBA-CC model is a new version of ISBA permitting the detailed simulation of the land-atmosphere carbon exchange. It results from the coupling between ISBA-A-gs (Calvet and Soussana (2001)) and the heterotrophic respiration parameterization used in ORCHIDEE (Krinner *et al.* (2005)). This coupling has required a number of developments.

The ISBA-A-gs allocation scheme was upgraded, in order to simulate all the plant biomass compartments, roots and wood in particular (Section 4.3.2). The principles of the initial allocation scheme, proposed by

Calvet and Soussana (2001), were extended to the new biomass reservoirs. All the plant respiration terms are now calculated and their sum represents the autotrophic respiration. Also, the mortality of the biomass elements is calculated, and supplies the heterotrophic respiration module. The latter is derived from the parameterization used in ORCHIDEE (Krinner *et al.* (2005)), based on the CENTURY model (Parton *et al.* (1987)). It simulates several soil organic matter pools (above-ground and below-ground litter, and the decomposed organic matter), the carbon fluxes between these pools, and the CO<sub>2</sub> flux to the atmosphere generated by the heterotrophic respiration (Section 4.3.3).

A few equations differ from the ORCHIDEE parameterization. The soil texture effect is based on the original CENTURY formulation, i.e. using the silt and clay fraction sum ( $f_{silt} + f_{clay}$ ) instead of the mere clay fraction  $f_{clay}$  in ORCHIDEE. Also, the decomposition response to soil moisture is based on the saturation soil moisture value  $w_{sat}$ , available in ISBA simulations. This permits the representation of the lower decomposition rates which are observed in anaerobic conditions.

The added value of ISBA-CC is the calculation of the two heterotrophic and autotrophic respiration terms, allowing the simulation of the net primary production (NPP). The latter describes the net carbon flux absorbed by the vegetation. Also, wood compartments are simulated, and even if forest management processes are not represented so far, forest biomass estimates can be used, to some extent, to validate the model simulations.

A complete ISBA-CC simulation has to be made in several steps, including three simulations separated by offline spin-up simulations of (1) the plant biomass reservoirs, and (2) the soil carbon pools.

This method produces equilibrium simulations and does not permit the determination of long term land carbon sinks and sources. However, the seasonal variability of the carbon fluxes can be represented by this method, as well as the impact of extreme events (e.g. droughts) and of climate change.

## Bibliography

- [1] F. Abramopoulos, C. Rosenzweig, and B. Choudhury. Improved ground hydrology calculations for global climate models (gcms): Soil water movement and evapotranspiration. *J. Clim.*, 1:921–941, 1988.
- [2] C. Albergel, J.-C. Calvet, J.-F. Mahfouf, C. Rüdiger, A. L. Barbu, S. Lafont, J.-L. Roujean, J. P. Walker, M. Crapeau, and J.-P. Wigneron. Monitoring of water and carbon fluxes using a land data assimilation system: a case study for southwestern france. *Hydrol. and Earth Syst. Sci.*, 14(6):1109–1124, 2010.
- [3] E. A. Anderson. A point energy and mass balance model of a snow cover. Technical report, NOAA Tech. Rep. NWS 19, 150 p., 1976.
- [4] K. J. Beven and M. J. Kirkby. A physically based, variable contributing area model of basin hydrology / un modle base physique de zone d'appel variable de l'hydrologie du bassin versant. *Hydrol. Sci. Bull.*, 24(1):43–69, March 1979.
- [5] Chandrakant M. Bhumralkar. Numerical experiments on the computation of ground surface temperature in an atmospheric general circulation model. *J. Appl. Meteor.*, 14(7):1246–1258, October 1975.
- [6] R. Bintanja and M.R. Van den Broeke. The surface energy balance of antarctic snow and blue ice. *J. Appl. Meteor.*, 34(4):902–926, 1995.

- [7] A.-K. Blackadar. Modeling the nocturnal boundary layer. In *Third Symp. on Atmospheric Turbulence, Diffusion and Air Quality*, Boston, Amer. Meteor. Soc., pages 46–49, 1976.
- [8] G. B. Bonan. A land surface model (Ism version 1.0) for ecological, hydrological, and atmospheric studies: technical description and user's guide. Technical report, National Center for Atmospheric Research, Boulder, CO, Tech. Note TN-417+STR, 150 p, 1996.
- [9] A. Boone. *Modelisation des processus hydrologiques dans le schema de surface ISBA: Inclusion d'un reservoir hydrologique, du gel et modelisation de la neige*. PhD thesis, University Paul Sabatier, Toulouse, France, 2000.
- [10] A. Boone, J. C. Calvet, and J. Noilhan. Inclusion of a third soil layer in a land surface scheme using the force-restore method. *J. Appl. Meteorol.*, 38(11):1611–1630, November 1999.
- [11] A. Boone and P. Etchevers. An intercomparison of three snow schemes of varying complexity coupled to the same land surface model: Local-scale evaluation at an alpine site. *J. Hydrometeorol.*, 2(4):374–394, 2001.
- [12] A. Boone, V. Masson, T. Meyers, and J. Noilhan. The influence of the inclusion of soil freezing on simulations by a soil-vegetation-atmosphere transfer scheme. *J. Appl. Meteorol.*, 39(9):1544–1569, September 2000.
- [13] L.C. Bowling, D.P. Lettenmaier, B. Nijssen, L.P. Graham, D.B. Clark, M. El Maayar, R. Essery, G. Gonsky, Y. S., Gusev, F. Habets, B. van den Hurk, J. Jin, D. Kahan, D. Lohmann, X. Ma, S. Mahanama, D. Mocko, O. Nasonova, G. Niu, P. Samuelsson, A.B. Shmakin, K. Takata, D. Verseghy, P. Viterbo, Y. Xia, Y. Xue, and Z.L. Yang. Simulation of high-latitude hydrological processes in the torne kalix basin: Pilps phase 2(e): 1. experiment description and summary intercomparisons. *Global and Planetary Change*, 38:1–30, 2003.
- [14] I. Braud, J. Noilhan, P. Bessemoulin, P. Mascart, R. Haverkamp, and M. Vauclin. Bare-ground surface heat and water exchanges under dry conditions: Observations and parameterization. *Bound.-Layer Meteorol.*, 66(1):173–200, 1993.
- [15] R. H. Brooks and A. T. Corey. Properties of porous media affecting fluid flow. *J. Irrig. Drain. Am. Soc. Civil Eng.*, 17:187–208, 1966.
- [16] E. Brun, P. David, M. Sudul, and G. Brunot. A numerical model to simulate snow-cover stratigraphy for operational avalanche forecasting. *J. Glaciol.*, 38:13–22, 1992.
- [17] E. Brun, E. Martin, V. Simon, C. Gendre, and C. Colou. An energy and mass model of snow cover suitable for operational avalanche forecasting. *J. Glaciol.*, 35(121):333–342, 1989.
- [18] Y. Caballero, S. Voirin-Morel, F. Habets, J. Noilhan, P. Le Moigne, A. Lehenaff, and A. Boone. Hydrological sensitivity of the adour-garonne river basin to climate change. *Water. Resour. Res.*, 43:–, 2007.
- [19] J. C. Calvet, A. L. Gibelin, J. L. Roujean, E. Martin, P. Le Moigne, H. Douville, and J. Noilhan. Past and future scenarios of the effect of carbon dioxide on plant growth and transpiration for three vegetation types of southwestern france. *Atmos. Chem. and Phys.*, 8(2):397–406, 2008.

- [20] J.-C. Calvet, S. Lafont, E. Cloppet, F. Souverain, V. Badeau, and C. Le Bas. Use of agricultural statistics to verify the interannual variability in land surface models: a case study over France with ISBA-AGS. *Geosci. Model Dev.*, 5(1):37–54, 2012.
- [21] J. C. Calvet and J. Noilhan. From near-surface to root-zone soil moisture using year-round data. *J. Hydrometeorol.*, 1(5):393–411, October 2000.
- [22] J. C. Calvet, J. Noilhan, and P. Bessemoulin. Retrieving the root-zone soil moisture from surface soil moisture or temperature estimates: A feasibility study based on field measurements. *J. Appl. Meteorol.*, 37(4):371–386, April 1998.
- [23] J. C. Calvet, J. Noilhan, J. L. Roujean, P. Bessemoulin, M. Cabelguenne, A. Olioso, and J. P. Wigneron. An interactive vegetation SVAT model tested against data from six contrasting sites. *Agric. and For. Meteorol.*, 92(2):73–95, July 1998.
- [24] J. C. Calvet, V. Rivalland, C. Picon-Cochard, and J. M. Guehl. Modelling forest transpiration and CO<sub>2</sub> fluxes - response to soil moisture stress. *Agric. and For. Meteorol.*, 124(3-4):143–156, August 2004.
- [25] J. C. Calvet and J. F. Soussana. Modelling CO<sub>2</sub>-enrichment effects using an interactive vegetation SVAT scheme. *Agric. and For. Meteorol.*, 108(2):129–152, June 2001.
- [26] H. S. Carslaw and J. C. Jaeger. *Conduction of Heat in Solids, 2nd ed.* Oxford University Press, London, 1959.
- [27] Keith A. Cherkauer and Dennis P. Lettenmaier. Hydrologic effects of frozen soils in the upper Mississippi river basin. *J. Geophys. Res.*, 104(D16):19599–19610, 1999.
- [28] Roger B. Clapp and George M. Hornberger. Empirical equations for some soil hydraulic properties. *Water Resour. Res.*, 14(4):601–604, 1978.
- [29] A. Clifton, J.D. Ruedi, and M. Lehning. Snow saltation threshold measurements in a drifting-snow wind tunnel. *J. Glaciol.*, 52(179):585–596, 2006.
- [30] A. J. Pitman Cogley, J. G. and A. Henderson-Sellers. A land surface for large scale climate models, tech. note 90-1. Technical report, Trent Univ., Peterborough, Ont., 1990.
- [31] GJ Collatz, M Ribas-Carbo, and JA Berry. Coupled photosynthesis-stomatal conductance model for leaves of C<sub>4</sub> plants. *Funct. Plant Biol.*, 19(5):519–538, January 1992.
- [32] B. J. Cosby, G. M. Hornberger, R. B. Clapp, and T. R. Ginn. A statistical exploration of the relationships of soil moisture characteristics to the physical properties of soils. *Water Resour. Res.*, 20:682–690, 1984.
- [33] P. M. Cox, R. A. Betts, C. B. Bunton, R. L. H. Essery, P. R. Rowntree, and J. Smith. The impact of new land surface physics on the GCM simulation of climate and climate sensitivity. *Clim. Dyn.*, 15:183–203, 1999.
- [34] J. W. Deardorff. A parameterization of ground-surface moisture content for use in atmospheric prediction models. *J. Appl. Meteor.*, 16(11):1182–1185, November 1977.
- [35] B. Decharme and H. Douville. Introduction of a sub-grid hydrology in the ISBA land surface model. *Clim. Dyn.*, 26(1):65–78, January 2006.

- [36] B. Decharme and H. Douville. Global validation of the isba sub-grid hydrology. *Clim. Dyn.*, 29(1):21–37, July 2007.
- [37] B. Decharme, H. Douville, A. Boone, F. Habets, and J. Noilhan. Impact of an exponential profile of saturated hydraulic conductivity within the isba lsm: Simulations over the rhone basin. *J. Hydrometeorol.*, 7(1):61–80, February 2006.
- [38] S.J. Déry and MK Yau. Large-scale mass balance effects of blowing snow and surface sublimation. *J. Geophys. Res.*, 107(D23):4679, 2002.
- [39] C. E. Desborough. The impact of root-weighting on the response of transpiration to moisture stress in a land surface scheme. *Mon. Weather Rev.*, 125:1920–1930, 1997.
- [40] R. E. Dickinson, M. Shaikh, R. Bryant, and L. Graumlich. Interactive canopies for a climate model. *J. Clim.*, 11:2823–2836, 1998.
- [41] H. Douville. Développement et validation locale d’une nouvelle paramétrisation du manteau neigeux. Technical report, Note de travail de GMGEC, N36, Météo-France, 1994.
- [42] H. Douville, J. F. Royer, and J. F. Mahfouf. A new snow parameterization for the meteo-france climate model .2. validation in a 3-d gcm experiment. *Clim. Dyn.*, 12(1):37–52, November 1995.
- [43] H. Dumenil and E. Todoni. A rainfall-runoff scheme for use in the hamburg climate model. *Adv. Theor. Hydrol.*, 9:129–157, 1992.
- [44] P. Etchevers, C. Golaz, F. Habets, and J. Noilhan. Impact of a climate change on the rhone river catchment hydrology. *J. Geophys. Res.-Atmos.*, 107(D16):4293, August 2002.
- [45] Y. Fan, ML. Wood, E. and Baeck, and JA. Smith. The fractional coverage of rainfall over a grid: Analyses of nexrad data over the southern plains. *Water Resour. Res.*, 32:2787–2802, 1996.
- [46] O.T. Farouki. *Thermal Properties of Soils*. Series on Rock and Soil Mechanics, 11, Trans. Tech., 1986.
- [47] G. D. Farquhar, S. von Caemmerer, and J. A. Berry. A biochemical model of photosynthetic co<sub>2</sub> assimilation in leaves of c<sub>3</sub> species. *Planta*, 149:78–90, 1980.
- [48] M. Fuchs, G. S. Campbell, and R. I. Papendick. An analysis of sensible and latent heat flow in a partially frozen unsaturated soil. *Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J.*, 42:379–385, 1978.
- [49] D. Giard and E. Bazile. Implementation of a new assimilation scheme for soil and surface variables in a global nwp model. *Mon. Weather Rev.*, 128(4):997–1015, April 2000.
- [50] A. L. Gibelin, J. C. Calvet, J. L. Roujean, L. Jarlan, and S. O. Los. Ability of the land surface model isba-a-gs to simulate leaf area index at the global scale: Comparison with satellites products. *J. Geophys. Res.-Atmos.*, 111(D18):D18102, September 2006.
- [51] Anne-Laure Gibelin, Jean-Christophe Calvet, and Nicolas Viovy. Modelling energy and co<sub>2</sub> fluxes with an interactive vegetation land surface model-evaluation at high and middle latitudes. *Agric. and For. Meteorol.*, 148(10):1611–1628, 2008.

- [52] H. Giordani. Expériences de validation unidimensionnelles du schéma de surface np89 aux normes arpège sur trois sites de la campagne efeda 91. Technical report, Note de travail 24 GMME/Météo-France, 1993.
- [53] H. Giordani, J. Noilhan, P. Lacarrere, P. Bessemoulin, and P. Mascart. Modelling the surface processes and the atmospheric boundary layer for semi-arid conditions. *Agric. and For. Meteorol.*, 80:263–287, 1996.
- [54] E. Gonzalez-Sosa, I. Braud, J.L. Thony, M. Vauclin, and J.C. Calvet. Heat and water exchanges of fallow land covered with a plant-residue mulch layer: a modelling study using the three year murex data set. *J. Hydrol.*, 244(34):119–136, April 2001.
- [55] M Gordon, K. Simon, and P. Taylor. On snow depth predictions with the canadian land surface scheme including a parametrization of blowing snow sublimation. *Atmos.-Ocean, CMOS*, 44:239–255, 2006.
- [56] J. Goudriaan, van Laar, H.H., H. van Keulen, and W. Louwerse. *Photosynthesis, CO2 and plant production*, pages 107–122. Plenum Press, New York, Series A, 86, 1985.
- [57] G. Guyomarc'h and L. Merindol. Validation of an application for forecasting blowing snow. *Ann. Glaciol.*, 26:138–143, 1998.
- [58] F. Habets, A. Boone, J. L. Champeaux, P. Etchevers, L. Franchisteguy, E. Leblois, E. Ledoux, P. Le Moigne, E. Martin, S. Morel, J. Noilhan, P. Q. Segui, F. Rousset-Regimbeau, and P. Viennot. The safran-isba-modcou hydrometeorological model applied over france. *J. Geophys. Res.-Atmos.*, 113(D6):D06113, March 2008.
- [59] F. Habets, P. Etchevers, C. Golaz, E. Leblois, E. Ledoux, E. Martin, J. Noilhan, and C. Otle. Simulation of the water budget and the river flows of the rhone basin. *J. Geophys. Res.-Atmos.*, 104(D24):31145–31172, December 1999.
- [60] F. Habets and G.-M. Saulnier. Subgrid runoff parameterization. *Phys. and Chem. of the Earth, Part B: Hydrol., Ocean. and Atmos.*, 26 (5-6):455–459, 2001.
- [61] R. B. Jackson, J. Canadell, J. R. Ehleringer, H. A. Mooney, O. E. Sala, and E. D. Schulze. A global analysis of root distributions for terrestrial biomes. *Oecologia*, 108(3):389–411, 1996.
- [62] C. M. J. Jacobs. *Direct impact of CO2 enrichment on regional transpiration*. PhD thesis, Agricultural University, Wageningen, The Netherlands, 1994.
- [63] C.M.J. Jacobs, B.M.M. van den Hurk, and H.A.R. de Bruin. Stomatal behaviour and photosynthetic rate of unstressed grapevines in semi-arid conditions. *Agric. and For. Meteorol.*, 80(24):111–134, July 1996.
- [64] B. Jacquemin and J. Noilhan. Validation of a land surface parameterization using the hapex-mobilhy data set. *Bound.-Layer Meteorol.*, 52:93–134, 1990.
- [65] O. Johansen. *Thermal conductivity of soils*. PhD thesis, University of Trondheim, Norway, 1975.
- [66] Holger Johnsson and Lars-Christer Lundin. Surface runoff and soil water percolation as affected by snow and soil frost. *J. Hydrol.*, 122(14):141–159, January 1991.

- [67] V. Koren, J. Schaake, K. Mitchell, Q.-Y. Duan, F. Chen, and J. M. Baker. A parameterization of snow-pack and frozen ground intended for ncap weather and climate models. *J. Geophys. Res.*, 104:19569–19585, 1999.
- [68] R. D. Koster and M. J. Suarez. Energy and water balance calculations in the mosaic lsm. Technical report, NASA Tech. Memo. 104606, Vol. 9., 58 pp, 1996.
- [69] G. Krinner, Nicolas Viovy, Nathalie de Noblet-Ducoudr, Jrme Oge, Jan Polcher, Pierre Friedlingstein, Philippe Ciais, Stephen Sitch, and I. Colin Prentice. A dynamic global vegetation model for studies of the coupled atmosphere-biosphere system. *Glob. Biogeochem. Cycles*, 19(1):1015–, February 2005.
- [70] S. Lafont, A. Beljaars, M. Voogt, L. Jarlan, P. Viterbo, B. van den Hurk, and J.-C. Calvet. Comparison of c-tessel co2 fluxes with transcom co2 fluxes. In *Proc. Second Recent Advances in Quantitative Remote Sensing II, Torrent (Valencia), Spain, 474-477*, 2006.
- [71] G. Lemaire and F. Gastal. *N uptake and distribution in plant canopies*, pages 3–43. Springer, Berlin, 1997.
- [72] E. Wood Liang, Xu and D. Lettenmaier. Surface soil moisture parameterization of the vic-2l model: Evaluation and modification. *Glob. and Planet. Change*, 13:195–206, 1996.
- [73] Bettina Loth, Hans-F. Graf, and Josef M. Oberhuber. Snow cover model for global climate simulations. *J. Geophys. Res.*, 98(D6):10451–10464, 1993.
- [74] J.-F. Louis. A parametric model of vertical eddy fluxes in the atmosphere. *Bound.-Lay. Meteorol.*, 17:187–202, 1979.
- [75] L.-C. Lundin. Hydraulic properties in an operational model of frozen soil. *J. Hydrol.*, 118:289–310, 1990.
- [76] Marc Lynch-Stieglitz. The development and validation of a simple snow model for the giss gcm. *J. Clim.*, 7(12):1842–1855, December 1994.
- [77] J.-F. Mahfouf and J. Noilhan. Comparative study of various formulations of evaporation from bare soil using in situ data. *J. Appl. Meteorol.*, 9:1354–1365, 1991.
- [78] J. F. Mahfouf and J. Noilhan. Inclusion of gravitational drainage in a land surface scheme based on the force-restore method. *J. Appl. Meteorol.*, 35(6):987–992, June 1996.
- [79] L. Mahrt and H. Pan. A two-layer model of soil hydrology. *Bound.-Layer Meteorol.*, 29:1–20, 1984.
- [80] D. Marbouty. An experimental study of temperature-gradient metamorphism. *J. Glaciol.*, 26:303–312, 1980.
- [81] E. Martin, P. Le Moigne, and V. Masson. Le code de surface externalisée surfex de météo- france. In *Ateliers de Modélisation de l'Atmosphère*, 2007.
- [82] P. Mascart, J. Noilhan, and H. Giordani. A modified parameterization of flux-profile relationships in the surface layer using different roughness length values for heat and momentum. *Bound.-Layer Meteorol.*, 72:331–344, 1995.
- [83] M. C. McCumber and R. A. Pielke. Simulation of the effects of surface fluxes of heat and moisture in a mesoscale numerical model. *J. Geophys. Res.*, 86 (C10):9929–9938, 1981.

- [84] P. C. D. Milly. Moisture and heat transport in hysteretic, inhomogeneous porous media: a matrix head-based formulation and a numerical model. *Water Resour. Res.*, 18 (3):489–498, 1982.
- [85] J. Noilhan and P. Lacarrrre. Gcm grid-scale evaporation from mesoscale modeling. *J. Clim.*, 8(2):206–223, 1995.
- [86] J. Noilhan and J. F. Mahfouf. The isba land surface parameterisation scheme. *Glob. and Planet. Change*, 13(1-4):145–159, June 1996.
- [87] J. Noilhan and S. Planton. A simple parameterization of land surface processes for meteorological models. *Mon. Weather Rev.*, 117(3):536–549, 1989.
- [88] H. Pan and L. Mahrt. Interaction between soil hydrology and boundary layer development. *Bound.-Layer Meteorol.*, 38:185–202, 1987.
- [89] W.J. Parton, D.S. Schimel, C.V. Cole, and D.S. Ojima. Analysis of factors controlling soil organic matter levels in great plains grasslands. *Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J.*, 51:1173–1179, 1987.
- [90] W.J. Parton, J.M.O. Scurlock, D.S. Ojima, T.G. Gilmanov, R.J. Scholes, D.S. Schimel, T. Kirchner, J.-C. Menaut, T. Seastedt, E. Garcia Moya, A. Kamnalrut, and J.I. Kinyamario. Observations and modeling of biomass and soil organic matter dynamics for the grassland bioma worldwide. *Glob. Biogeochem. Cycles*, 7:785–809, 1993.
- [91] W.J. Parton, J.W.B. Stewart, and C.V. Cole. Dynamics of c, n, p and s in grassland soils: a model. *Biogeochem.*, 5:109–131, 1988.
- [92] K. Paul. Temperature and moisture effects on decomposition. In M. Kirschbaum and R. Mueller, editors, *Net ecosystem exchange*, pages 95–102. CRC for greenhouse accounting, 18-20 April 2001.
- [93] C. Peng, M.J. Apps, D.T. Price, I.A. Nadler, and D.H. Halliwell. Simulating carbon dynamics along the boreal forest transect case study (bftcs) in central canada: 1, model testing. *Glob. Biogeochem. Cycles*, 12:381–392, 1998.
- [94] C. D. Peters-Lidard, E. Blackburn, X. Liang, and E. F. Wood. The effect of soil thermal conductivity parameterization on surface energy fluxes and temperatures. *J. Atmos. Sci.*, 55(7):1209–1224, April 1998.
- [95] A. J. Pitman, Z.-L. Yang, J. G. Cogley, and A. Henderson-Sellers. Description of bare essentials of surface transfer for the bureau of meteorology research centre agcm. Technical report, BMRC Research Report No. 32, 1991.
- [96] M.E. Probert, J.P. Dimers, B.A. Keating, R.C. Dalal, and W.M. Strong. Apsim’s water and nitrogen modules and simulation of the dynamics of water and nitrogen in fallow systems. *Agric. Syst.*, 56:1–28, 1998.
- [97] V. Rivalland, J.-C. Calvet, P. Berbigier, Y. Brunet, and A. Granier. Transpiration and co2 fluxes of a pine forest: modelling the undergrowth effect. *Ann. Geophys.*, 23:291–304, 2006.
- [98] J.-L. Roujean. A tractable physical model of shortwave radiation interception by vegetative canopies. *J. Geophys. Res.*, 101D5:9523–9532, 1996.

- [99] A. Ruimy, L. Kergoat, C. Field, and B. Saugier. The use of co2 flux measurements in models of the global terrestrial carbon budget. *Global Change Biology*, 2(3):287–296, 1996.
- [100] R.A. Schmidt. Vertical profiles of wind speed, snow concentration, and humidity in blowing snow. *Bound.-Layer Meteorol.*, 23(2):223–246, 1982.
- [101] Beven K.J. Silvapalan, M. and E.F. Wood. On hydrologic similarity: 2. a scaled model of storm runoff production. *Water Resour. Res.*, 23:2266–2278, 1987.
- [102] S. Sun, J. Jin, and Y. Xue. A simple snow-atmosphere-soil transfer (sast) model. *J. Geophys. Res.*, 104:19587–19579, 1999.
- [103] B. J. J. M. Van den Hurk, P. Viterbo, A. C. M. Beljaars, and A. K. Betts. Offline validation of the era40 surface scheme, ecmwf techmemo. 295, 42 p. Technical report, ECMWF, Reading, 2000.
- [104] Diana L. Verseghy. Class: A canadian land surface scheme for gcms. i. soil model. *Int. J. Clim.*, 11(2):111–133, 1991.
- [105] V. Vionnet, E. Brun, S. Morin, A. Boone, S. Faroux, P. Le Moigne, E. Martin, and J.-M. Willemet. The detailed snowpack scheme crocus and its implementation in surfex v7.2. *Geoscientific Model Development*, 5(3):773–791, 2012.
- [106] M. Voogt, B.J.J.M. van den Hurk, and C. Jacobs. The ecmwf land surface scheme extended with a photosynthesis and lai module tested for a coniferous site, knmi publication: Wr-06-02, 22 pp. Technical report, KNMI, De Bilt, The Netherlands, 2006.
- [107] E. F. Wood, D. P. Lettenmaier, X. Liang, D. Lohmann, A. Boone, S. Chang, F. Chen, Y. J. Dai, R. E. Dickinson, Q. Y. Duan, M. Ek, Y. M. Gusev, F. Habets, P. Irannejad, R. Koster, K. E. Mitchel, O. N. Nasonova, J. Noilhan, J. Schaake, A. Schlosser, Y. P. Shao, A. B. Shmakin, D. Verseghy, K. Warrach, P. Wetzel, Y. K. Xue, Z. L. Yang, and Q. C. Zeng. The project for intercomparison of land-surface parameterization schemes (pilps) phase 2(c) red-arkansas river basin experiment: 1. experiment description and summary intercomparisons. *Glob. and Planet. Change*, 19(1-4):115–135, December 1998.
- [108] Z.-L. Yang and G.-Y. Niu. The versatile integrator of surface atmospheric processes (visa): Part 1. model description. *Glob. Planet. Change*, 38:175–189, 2003.
- [109] R. J. Zhao. The xinanjiang model applied in china. *J. Hydrol.*, 134:317–381, 1992.



# Chapter 5

## Surface boundary layer scheme

### Contents

---

<b>5.1 Introduction</b>	<b>163</b>
<b>5.2 Theory</b>	<b>165</b>
5.2.1 Atmospheric equations	165
5.2.2 Atmospheric equations modified by canopy obstacles	166
5.2.3 Implementation of the SBL equations into a surface scheme	167
5.2.4 Boundary conditions	169
5.2.5 Turbulence scheme	170
<b>5.3 conclusion</b>	<b>170</b>
<b>5.4 Appendix: Vertical and temporal discretization</b>	<b>172</b>
5.4.1 Vertical discretization	172
5.4.2 Temporal discretization	172
5.4.3 Implicit coupling with the atmospheric model	172

---

### 5.1 Introduction

Surface atmosphere exchanges, mainly momentum, water and heat surface fluxes, drive the boundary layer evolution, and influence the formation of low level clouds and more generally the synoptic flows and climate system. The modelling of these fluxes is performed by specific surface schemes: Soil-Vegetation-Atmosphere Transfer (SVATs) schemes for vegetation (Chen *et al.* (1997) review the vegetation schemes used in the intercomparison exercise on Cabauw grass site), urban schemes for cities (see a review in Masson (2006)), or schemes dedicated to sea or ice surfaces. The degree of complexity of these schemes is wide. The simplest models are bucket models (e.g. Manabe (1969), Robock *et al.* (1995)), with only one water reservoir in the soil. Next are the so-called big leaf models (Deardorff (1978), Noilhan and Planton (1989) with only one surface energy balance and no canopy. The more detailed schemes have several layers in the soil, several energy budgets (low vegetations, snow and tree canopy) and photosynthesis production to simulate the carbon cycle (see Simon *et al.* (2005)). The same degree of variability exists in the complexity of the physical processes described in urban schemes (see Masson (2006)).

However, the present paper will not discuss on the complexity of the physical and physiological processes of the soil or plants in these schemes. The topic of this paper is to discuss the coupling of surface schemes

to atmospheric models. Independantly of the complexity of the processes, two coupling methods are usually used (fig 5.1):

- single-layer coupled schemes: these surface schemes are forced by only one atmospheric layer (i.e. the lowest atmospheric layer of an atmospheric model, as in fig 5.1b). The surface schemes respond to atmospheric variables at this level (temperature, wind, humidity, incoming radiation, etc...) and they produce averaged upwards turbulent fluxes and radiative quantities (albedo, emissivity, surface temperature). Note that this level is physically supposed to be high enough above the surface to be in the inertial sublayer (or constant flux layer), most schemes using Monin-Obukhov theory to parameterize turbulent fluxes. These exchanges have been normalized in the Assistance for Land-surface Modelling activities (ALMA) norm (see Best *et al.* (2004) and Polcher *et al.* (1998)).

Because of the simplicity of this type of coupling, these surface schemes can be used off-line (e.g. forced directly by observations), so that they can be used for a wide range of applications (e.g. hydrology). All schemes presented in the offline intercomparison by Chen *et al.* (1997) are single-layer schemes. These schemes can have a separate modelling of the soil and of the canopy, but the coupling with the atmosphere is always done at a forcing level above the canopy. The link between the forcing level and the soil/canopy to compute energy fluxes is usually done using systems of aerodynamical/stomatal resistances (as in Deardorff (1978)), that may depend on many factors, such as plant stress or atmospheric stability.

- multi-layer coupled schemes: these schemes are coupled with several atmospheric levels (fig 5.1c). They interact not by surface fluxes (except for the lowest level), but directly throughout the prognostic variables equations of the atmospheric model at each level. For example, drag forces by the obstacles (trees or buildings) will slow the wind and increase the turbulence, heat (water) fluxes by these obstacles will produce differential heating (moistening) between the levels. Xinmin *et al.* (1999) use such a scheme coupled inline to a planetary boundary layer model to study the influence of the tree density in a forest on the air characteristic within the canopy at day and at night. Recently Simon *et al.* (2005) built a multilayer scheme to describe precisely the water and carbon dioxyde fluxes inside the Amazonian forest. For building canopies, Martilli *et al.* (2002), Coceal and Belcher (2005) and Kondo *et al.* (2005) are example of multi-layer schemes. The drawback of this high resolution description of the atmospheric processes is an intimate coupling of the surface scheme and the atmospheric model. Furthermore, because atmospheric layers are thin near the surface (depth of the order of 1m) to finely describe the air profile in the Surface Boundary Layer (SBL), the time step of the atmospheric model must usually be much smaller in order to insure numerical stability.

Such schemes are used when one wants to describe very finely the interaction between the atmosphere and the surface features. For example, low vegetation and soil will interact with air temperature near the surface (say 1m), while tree leaves exchange temperature and humidity with higher level air (with other temperature, humidity). This therefore allows a priori a better simulation of the physical and physiological processes. Another interest of these schemes is the direct simulation of air characteristics down to the surface itself, allowing several specific applications (wind stress in forest ridges, air temperature profile between buildings, etc...).

The objective of this paper is to implement into single-layer schemes the fine description of air profiles near the ground of the multi-layer schemes. That way, the single-layer schemes will gain the explicit physical representation of the surface boundary layer thanks to additionnal air layers, and still be coupled to atmospheric models through only one layer.

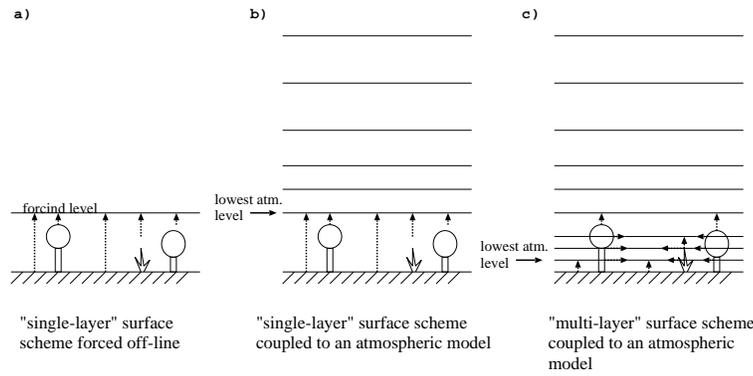


Figure 5.1: Schematic view of surface scheme coupling: a) single-layer surface scheme forced offline. b) single-layer surface scheme forced by an atmospheric model. c) multi-layer scheme forced by an atmospheric model. Dotted arrows show the interactions between surface and coupling/atm. forcing: (a) with the forcing level, (b) the lowest atm level and (c) with all levels intersecting the canopy.

## 5.2 Theory

### 5.2.1 Atmospheric equations

The atmosphere can be described by dynamical (3 wind components) and thermodynamical variables (heat content or temperature, water vapor, possibly other water phases quantities). In this study, only the Planetary Boundary Layer was considered, neglecting mean vertical velocity and horizontal turbulent fluxes. The Boussinesq hypothesis is applied for the sake of simplicity. However, the following derivation can be generalized to more complex equation systems. Only the theory is described in the main part of the paper. The numerics for implementation and coupling in models are discussed in the last section.

Using mean horizontal wind components ( $U$ ,  $V$ ), potential temperature ( $\theta$ ) and water vapor specific humidity ( $q$ ), without water phase changes, the equations describing the atmosphere evolution can be written as:

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \frac{\partial U}{\partial t} = \underbrace{-U \frac{\partial U}{\partial x} - V \frac{\partial U}{\partial y}}_{Adv} \underbrace{-fV}_{Cor} \underbrace{+fV_g}_{Pres.} \underbrace{-\frac{\partial \overline{u'w'}}{\partial z}}_{Turb} \\ \frac{\partial V}{\partial t} = \underbrace{-U \frac{\partial V}{\partial x} - V \frac{\partial V}{\partial y}}_{Adv} \underbrace{+fU}_{Cor} \underbrace{-fU_g}_{Pres.} \underbrace{-\frac{\partial \overline{v'w'}}{\partial z}}_{Turb} \\ \frac{\partial \theta}{\partial t} = \underbrace{-U \frac{\partial \theta}{\partial x} - V \frac{\partial \theta}{\partial y}}_{Adv} + \underbrace{\dot{Q}}_{Diab.} \underbrace{-\frac{\partial \overline{w'\theta'}}{\partial z}}_{Turb} \\ \frac{\partial q}{\partial t} = \underbrace{-U \frac{\partial q}{\partial x} - V \frac{\partial q}{\partial y}}_{Adv} \underbrace{-\frac{\partial \overline{w'q'}}{\partial z}}_{Turb} \end{array} \right. \quad (5.1)$$

where  $U_g = -\frac{1}{f\rho} \frac{\partial p}{\partial x}$  and  $V_g = -\frac{1}{f\rho} \frac{\partial p}{\partial y}$  are the geostrophic wind components,  $\overline{u'w'}$ ,  $\overline{v'w'}$ ,  $\overline{w'\theta'}$  and  $\overline{w'q'}$  are the turbulent fluxes, and  $\dot{Q}$  represents the diabatic sources of heat (e.g. radiative tendency).

In addition, a Turbulent Kinetic Energy (TKE, noted  $e = \frac{1}{2}(\overline{u'^2} + \overline{v'^2} + \overline{w'^2})$ ) equation can be used to

describe the turbulence in some atmospheric models:

$$\frac{\partial e}{\partial t} = \underbrace{-U \frac{\partial e}{\partial x} - V \frac{\partial e}{\partial y}}_{Adv} - \underbrace{u'w' \frac{\partial U}{\partial z} - v'w' \frac{\partial V}{\partial z}}_{Dyn.Prod.} + \underbrace{\frac{g}{\theta} \overline{w'\theta'_v}}_{Therm.Prod.} - \underbrace{\frac{\partial \overline{w'e}}{\partial z}}_{Turb} - \underbrace{\epsilon}_{Diss.} \quad (5.2)$$

where Right Hand Side terms stand for advection of TKE, dynamical production, thermal production, turbulent transport of TKE and dissipation respectively.

## 5.2.2 Atmospheric equations modified by canopy obstacles

The above equations refer to air parcels that do not interact with any obstacles. Near the surface, when one wants to take into account the influence of obstacles on the flow, these equations must be modified. In atmospheric models, this is done by adding additional terms for each variable, representing the average effect of these obstacles on the air contained in the grid mesh. One should note here that ideally, the volume of the obstacles (trees, buildings) contained into the grid mesh should be removed from the volume of air of the grid mesh. However, this significantly complexifies a lot the atmospheric model, and the approximation to keep the air volume constant even in the presence of obstacles is normally done. This simplification is also chosen here. Then, obstacles impact on the flow is parameterized as:

$$\begin{cases} \frac{\partial U}{\partial t} = Adv + Cor + Pres. + Turb(U) + Drag_u \\ \frac{\partial V}{\partial t} = Adv + Cor + Pres. + Turb(V) + Drag_v \\ \frac{\partial \theta}{\partial t} = Adv + Diab. + Turb(\theta) + \frac{\partial \theta}{\partial t}_{canopy} \\ \frac{\partial q}{\partial t} = Adv + Turb(q) + \frac{\partial q}{\partial t}_{canopy} \end{cases} \quad (5.3)$$

and

$$\frac{\partial e}{\partial t} = Adv + Dyn.Prod. + Therm.Prod. + Turb + Diss. + \frac{\partial e}{\partial t}_{canopy} \quad (5.4)$$

where,

- $Drag_u$  and  $Drag_v$  are the drag forces (due to pressure forces against the obstacles) that slow the flow,
- $\frac{\partial \theta}{\partial t}_{canopy}$  is the heating/cooling rate due to the heat release/uptake by the surfaces of the canopy obstacles in the grid mesh,
- $\frac{\partial q}{\partial t}_{canopy}$  is the moistening/drying impact of these obstacles,
- and  $\frac{\partial e}{\partial t}_{canopy}$  represents the TKE production due to wake around and behind obstacles as well as the additional dissipation due to leaves-induced small-scale turbulence.

The prescription of these terms due to the obstacle impact on the flow are parameterized differently for each multi-level surface scheme, and this is not described in detail here. Parameterizations for dynamical variables are often similar for forest canopies. Wind drag is usually parameterized as the opposite of the square of the wind, as in Shaw and Schumann (1992) or Patton *et al.* (2001):  $Drag_u = -C_{da}(z)U\sqrt{U^2 + V^2}$  and  $Drag_v = -C_{da}(z)V\sqrt{U^2 + V^2}$ , where  $C_d$  is a drag coefficient and  $a(z)$  is the leaf area density at height  $z$  (this parameter can be derived from Leaf Area Index and vegetation height, assuming a normalized vertical profile of leaves distribution in the canopy). The TKE production/destruction term can be parameterized as the sum of two effects: wake production by the leaves (parameterized as proportionnal to the cubic

power of wind:  $\frac{\partial e}{\partial t}_{canopy} \propto C_d(U^2 + V^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}$  as in Kanda and Hino (1994)) and the energy loss due to fast dissipation of small scale motions (leaves are of a much smaller scale than the grid mesh). The latter term is often parameterized as proportionnal to the product of wind by TKE ( $\frac{\partial e}{\partial t}_{canopy} \propto -C_d e \sqrt{U^2 + V^2}$  as in Kanda and Hino (1994), Shen and Leclerc (1997), Patton *et al.* (2003)). Because of the high degree of complexity of the processes involved (and hence of possibles simplifications), parameterizations for temperature and humidity exchanges are much more variables. For example, Sun *et al.* (2006) parameterize heating effects simply as a function of radiation vertical divergence, while more complex vegetation models, as in Park and Hattori (2004), solve leaves temperature and use it to estimate at each atmospheric layer the heat and water vapor exchanges between the forest canopy and the air:  $\frac{\partial \theta}{\partial t}_{canopy} \propto a(z)(\theta_l - \theta)$  and  $\frac{\partial q}{\partial t}_{canopy} \propto a(z)(q_{sat}(\theta_l) - q)$ , where  $\theta_l$  is the leaves potential temperature and  $q_{sat}$  is humidity at saturation (proportionnality coefficients depend on physiological processes of the plant).

For urban canopies, the same drag approach is chosen in general for the effect on wind, and only the wake production term is kept for TKE (because turbulent eddies are large behind buildings, so their dissipation is not as fast as those produced by leaves). Heat exchanges are however more complex and detailed (see Masson (2006) for a review), as radiative trapping and shadows, different building heights, and sometimes even road trees are taken into account in state-of-the-art urban models. An exemple of urban canopy parameterization is given in Hamdi and Masson (2008).

As stated above, these additional terms allow a fine description of the mean variable profiles in the atmospheric model in the SBL (e.g. wind and temperature profile as a function of stability, wind speed in forest canopy, etc...) and of the flow statistics (non constant flux layer inside the canopy for example).

### 5.2.3 Implementation of the SBL equations into a surface scheme

The objective of this paper is to provide a way to implement such a description of the SBL with a lot of atmospheric layers directly into the surface scheme. Such a scheme could be used offline (figure 5.2a) or coupled to an atmospheric model (figure 5.2b). As seen by comparing with figure 5.2c, the vertical resolution is the same as with a multi-layer model. The problem is that the computation of most of the terms of the equations (advection, pressure forces, diabatic heating) requires the atmospheric model dynamics and physical parameterizations.

The set of equation (5.3) is rewritten by separating the processes as (i) 'large scale forcing' (LS, that are solved by the atmospheric model), (ii) the turbulence and (iii) the canopy effects:

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \frac{\partial U}{\partial t} = LS(U) + Turb(U) + Drag_u \\ \frac{\partial V}{\partial t} = LS(V) + Turb(V) + Drag_v \\ \frac{\partial \theta}{\partial t} = LS(\theta) + Turb(\theta) + \frac{\partial \theta}{\partial t}_{canopy} \\ \frac{\partial q}{\partial t} = LS(q) + Turb(q) + \frac{\partial q}{\partial t}_{canopy} \end{array} \right. \quad (5.5)$$

The TKE equation remains the same:

$$\frac{\partial e}{\partial t} = Adv(e) + Dyn.Prod. + Therm.Prod. + Turb + Diss. + \frac{\partial e}{\partial t}_{canopy} \quad (5.6)$$

To represent the SBL into the single-layer surface scheme, one considers prognostic atmospheric layers, between the surface and the forcing level of the surface scheme (that is the level that is coupled to the

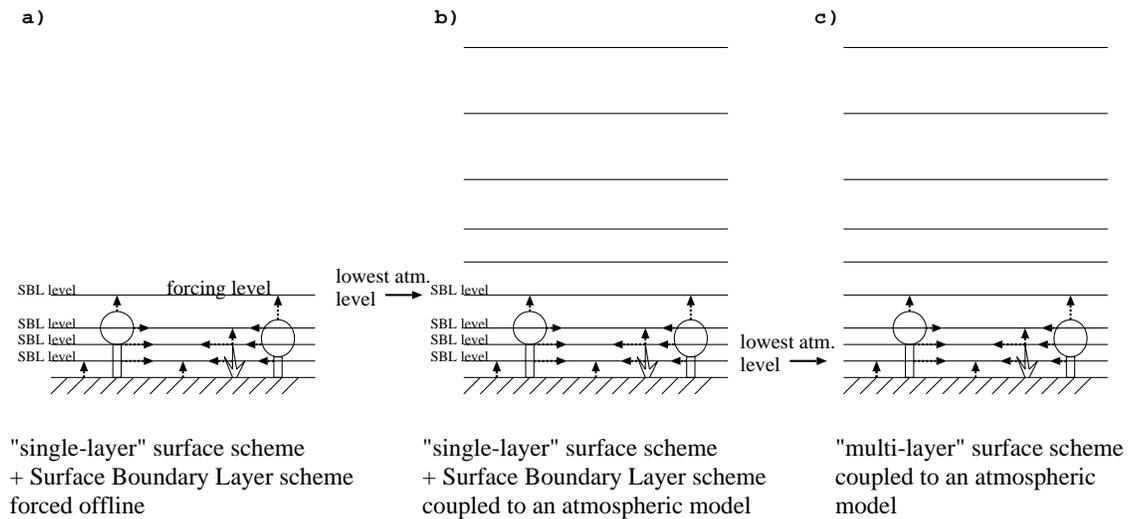


Figure 5.2: Schematic view of the coupling between surface scheme and SBL scheme : a) single-layer surface scheme with SBL scheme forced offline. b) single-layer surface scheme with SBL scheme forced by an atmospheric model. c) multi-layer scheme coupling (as c) in figure 5.1). Dotted arrows show the interactions between surface and SBL scheme (a and b). Upper SBL level is at same height as atmospheric forcing level.

atmosphere). Each of these layers is represented by the wind speed, the potential temperature, the humidity and the Turbulent kinetic energy (all these variables being prognostically computed). They satisfy the set of equations (5.5). In order to solve them, the following assumptions are made:

- The mean wind direction does not vary in the SBL (Rotation due to Coriolis inside the SBL is neglected).
- The advection of TKE is negligible. This assumption is not valid for horizontal scales (and grid meshes) of the order of a few times the canopy height, as equilibrium with forcing condition above is not reached (Belcher *et al.* (2003), Coceal and Belcher (2005)), but it is valid for larger scales.
- The turbulent transport of TKE ( $\overline{w'e}$ ) is negligible near the ground and in the SBL. This assumption is fairly valid, this term being generally important only higher in the BL .
- Above the canopy, the turbulent fluxes are uniform with height (constant flux layer).
- The Large Scale forcing terms ( $LS(U)$ ,  $LS(V)$ ,  $LS(\theta)$ ,  $LS(q)$ ) are supposed to be uniform with height in the SBL. It is assumed, for example, that advection and pressure forces are driven by synoptic flow or by the mesoscale BL flow (e.g. sea breeze). Diabatic effects on temperature are also supposed to be uniform.

Then, the equations can be solved if the turbulent terms in the SBL (see subsection (5.2.5)), the canopy terms (depending on each surface scheme physics), and the (uniform with height) large scale forcing are known or parameterized.

Writing the equations at the forcing level ( $z = z_a$ ), which is supposed to be above the canopy (all canopy terms are set to zero) and therefore in the constant flux layer (the turbulent fluxes are supposed to be uniform,

so that the divergences of turbulent fluxes are small), large scale terms can be estimated from the temporal evolution of the variables at the forcing level:

$$\begin{cases} \frac{\partial U}{\partial t}(z = z_a) = LS(U) \\ \frac{\partial V}{\partial t}(z = z_a) = LS(V) \\ \frac{\partial \theta}{\partial t}(z = z_a) = LS(\theta) \\ \frac{\partial q}{\partial t}(z = z_a) = LS(q) \end{cases} \quad (5.7)$$

In reality, the constant flux layer hypothesis supposes not a constant turbulent flux but a small variation of the turbulent flux compared to its value. The small decrease/increase of the turbulent flux can lead to tendencies of the mean variables. However, this small variation is generally relatively uniform in the whole boundary layer (e.g. uniform heating of the convective boundary layer). This impact of the fluxes at the scale of the whole BL is included in the LS terms.

#### 5.2.4 Boundary conditions

Finally, one obtains (using only one wind component, as the wind does not veer with height in the SBL):

$$\begin{cases} \frac{\partial U}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial U}{\partial t}(z = z_a) + Turb(U) + Drag_u \\ \frac{\partial \theta}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial \theta}{\partial t}(z = z_a) + Turb(\theta) + \frac{\partial \theta}{\partial t} canopy \\ \frac{\partial q}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial q}{\partial t}(z = z_a) + Turb(q) + \frac{\partial q}{\partial t} canopy \end{cases} \quad (5.8)$$

And

$$\frac{\partial e}{\partial t} = Dyn.Prod. + Therm.Prod. + Diss. + \frac{\partial e}{\partial t} canopy \quad (5.9)$$

The surface condition for the wind equation is given by the turbulent flux at the surface  $\overline{u'w'}(z = 0)$ . The value at the top of the SBL scheme is given by wind at forcing level:  $U = U(z = z_a)$ .

The surface condition for the potential temperature equation is given by the turbulent flux at the surface  $\overline{w'\theta'}(z = 0)$ . The value at the top is given by the temperature at forcing level:  $\theta = \theta(z = z_a)$ .

The surface condition for the humidity equation is given by the turbulent flux at the surface  $\overline{w'q'}(z = 0)$ . The value at the top is given by humidity at forcing level:  $q = q(z = z_a)$ .

The turbulent fluxes at the surface are computed by the surface scheme, using the atmospheric variables of the lowest level of the SBL (and not at the usual forcing level at  $z_a$ ). The exact formulation depends on the surface scheme used. For example, a lot of (1 layer) surface schemes use to compute the surface heat (vapor) flux a formulation with exchange coefficients  $C_h$  (including a dependency with stability), surface and air temperatures (humidity)  $\overline{w'\theta'}(z = 0) = C_h(\theta_s - \theta_a)$ . With the SBL scheme,  $\theta_a$  is the temperature at first SBL level, and the stability in the lowest layer is near neutral (because of the proximity to the ground -we used 50cm as first layer-).

There is no need of boundary condition for the TKE at the surface or at the forcing level, as no vertical gradient of TKE is used. The only term that needs special computation near the surface is the Dynamical production term, as it uses a vertical gradient of mean wind.

### 5.2.5 Turbulence scheme

One turbulence scheme is of course needed in the SBL. A TKE turbulence scheme, developed by Cuxart *et al.* (2000), is chosen here. The mixing length is computed as in Redelsperger *et al.* (2001). Mixing and dissipative length scales are not equal, in order to represent accurately the dissipation modification due to the -1 power law of the turbulence in the SBL. Other turbulence schemes may be used.

A summary of the turbulence scheme is given below:

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \overline{u'w'} = -C_u l \sqrt{e} \frac{\partial U}{\partial z} \\ \overline{w'\theta'} = -C_\theta l \sqrt{e} \frac{\partial \theta}{\partial z} \\ \overline{w'q'} = -C_q l \sqrt{e} \frac{\partial q}{\partial z} \\ \frac{\partial e}{\partial t} = \underbrace{-\overline{u'w'} \frac{\partial U}{\partial z}}_{Dyn.Prod.} + \underbrace{\frac{g}{\theta} \overline{w'\theta'_v}}_{Therm.Prod.} - \underbrace{C_\epsilon \frac{e^{\frac{3}{2}}}{l_\epsilon}}_{Diss.} + \frac{\partial e}{\partial t}_{canopy} \end{array} \right. \quad (5.10)$$

with  $C_u = 0.126$ ,  $C_\theta = C_q = 0.143$ ,  $C_\epsilon = 0.845$  (from Cheng *et al.* (2002) constants values for pressure correlations terms and using Cuxart *et al.* (2000) derivation). The mixing and dissipative lengths,  $l$  and  $l_\epsilon$  respectively, are equal to (from Redelsperger *et al.* (2001),  $\alpha = 2.42$ ) :

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{ll} l = \kappa z / [\sqrt{\alpha} C_u \phi_m^2(z/L_{MO}) \phi_e(z/L_{MO})]^{-1} & \\ l_\epsilon = l \alpha^2 C_\epsilon / C_u / (1 - 1.9z/L_{MO}) & \text{if } z/L_{MO} < 0 \\ l_\epsilon = l \alpha^2 C_\epsilon / C_u / (1 - 0.3\sqrt{z/L_{MO}}) & \text{if } z/L_{MO} > 0 \end{array} \right. \quad (5.11)$$

Where  $L_{MO}$  is the Monin-Obukhov length,  $\phi_u$  and  $\phi_e$  the Monin-Obukhov stability functions for momentum and TKE.

## 5.3 conclusion

A formulation allowing to include prognostic atmospheric layers in offline surface schemes is derived from atmospheric equations. The interest of this approach is to use the advanced physical description of the SBL-canopy interactions that was available only in complex coupled multi-layer surface schemes. The coupling only occurs at the bottom level of the atmospheric model that should be coupled above the surface+SBL scheme. Variables that must be exchanged are: incoming radiation and forcing level air characteristics towards the surface scheme, upward radiative and turbulent fluxes from it. The air layers prognostically simulated with the SBL scheme take into account:

- The term that is related to large-scale forcing (e.g. advection). The detail of this term is not known by the SBL scheme. The evolution of the air characteristics at the forcing level is supposed to take into account all these large-scale forcing terms.
- The turbulent exchanges in the SBL (including in the canopy, if any). They will modify vertical profiles in the SBL. For example, the logarithmic profile of wind is directly induced by these turbulent fluxes, and is well reproduced by the SBL scheme.
- The drag and canopy forcing terms. These are computed for each layer, due to the interaction between air and the canopy. These exchanges have to be modeled by the surface scheme to which the SBL scheme is coupled. In the present paper, for forests, it takes into account the dynamical terms: drag and impact on Tke.

The possible applications of a SBL scheme included in surface schemes can be:

- a more physical determination of standard 2m variables and 10m wind. It can be seen as a drastic increase of the vertical resolution of the atmospheric models near the ground, without the drawback of a smaller time step (that would be necessary to resolve the advection on a very fine grid). Furthermore, because the additional air layers are not handled by the atmospheric model, the SBL scheme (associated to a surface single-layer scheme) is easy to couple with Numerical Weather Prediction or research atmospheric models.
- a better description of the turbulent exchanges and the stability in the SBL, including over complex terrain, for low-level flow and dispersion studies near the surface. As future applications, the dispersion processes in presence of canopy (e.g. chemistry vertical diffusion in urban areas) could then be more accurately simulated.
- the inclusion of the detailed physics of the multi-layer schemes (e.g. the interactions of forest or urban canopy with atmospheric layers in the SBL) into single-layer schemes.

## 5.4 Appendix: Vertical and temporal discretization

### 5.4.1 Vertical discretization

The vertical grid for the SBL scheme is a staggered grid (figure 5.3). Historical variables ( $U$ ,  $\theta$ ,  $q$ ,  $e$ ) are defined on 'full' levels. The temporal evolution terms due to canopy obstacles ( $Drag_u$ ,  $\frac{\partial \theta}{\partial t}_{canopy}$ ,  $\frac{\partial q}{\partial t}_{canopy}$ ,  $\frac{\partial e}{\partial t}_{canopy}$ ) are also located on these full levels. The turbulent fluxes computed by the SBL scheme are computed on the 'flux' levels, staggered between the full levels. The height of full levels is exactly at middle height between half levels. Note that the grid can be (and is most of the time) stretched, with a higher resolution near the ground. The ground is the first flux level (to be consistent with the boundary condition provided: the surface turbulent fluxes). The atmospheric forcing level is the upper full level (to be consistent with the upper boundary condition).

### 5.4.2 Temporal discretization

For any variable  $X$  ( $U$ ,  $\theta$ ,  $q$  or  $e$ ), the evolution equation can be written as:

$$\frac{\partial X}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial X}{\partial t}(z = z_a) - \frac{\partial F(\frac{\partial X}{\partial z})}{\partial z} + For(X) \quad (5.12)$$

where  $F$  is the turbulent flux for  $X = [U, \theta, q]$ , and  $For$  contains canopy forcing terms ( $\frac{\partial X}{\partial t}_{canopy}$  for  $X = [U, \theta, q, e]$ ) and other RHS forces for  $X = [e]$ . Note that the turbulent flux terms  $F$  depend formally on the vertical derivative of the variable ( $\frac{\partial X}{\partial z}$ ) while canopy forces and RHS TKE forces depend on the variable itself ( $X$ ).

In order to satisfy the stability of the SBL scheme at large time-steps, an implicit solving is performed. If the coupling at the atmospheric level is explicit, the atmospheric forcing is not modified in the current time-step by the SBL and surface schemes (i.e.  $\frac{\partial X}{\partial t}(z = z_a)$  does not change during the SBL solving). Of course, the atmosphere will further evolve in response to the turbulent SBL fluxes (through the atmospheric model turbulence parameterization). In these conditions, the SBL implicit solving writes:

$$\frac{X^+ - X^-}{\Delta t} = \frac{\partial X^-}{\partial t}(z = z_a) - \frac{\partial F^-}{\partial z} - \frac{\partial \frac{\partial F^-}{\partial z}}{\partial z} \times \left( \frac{\partial X^+}{\partial z} - \frac{\partial X^-}{\partial z} \right) + For^- + \frac{\partial For^-}{\partial X} \times (X^+ - X^-) \quad (5.13)$$

Where  $\Delta t$  is the time step,  $-$  subscript stands for previous time-step variable (known), and  $+$  subscript for the future time-step variable (which one seeks to calculate). Such an implicit scheme leads to a linear system linking all variables at each level to those from the levels below and above (due to the vertical gradient at instant  $+$ ). This system is tridiagonal, and easy to solve numerically.

### 5.4.3 Implicit coupling with the atmospheric model

It may be necessary in some atmospheric models (essentially due to very long time steps - half an hour- and the turbulence scheme used in the atmospheric model) to couple implicitly the surface (including the SBL scheme here) and the atmosphere. First RHS term in Equation 5.13 is now equal to  $[X^+_{(z=z_a)} - X^-_{(z=z_a)}]/\Delta t$ . The atmospheric variable at time  $+$  is modified by the surface flux at the forcing level. It is formalized by

Best *et al.* (2004) :  $X_{(z=z_a)}^+ = A \times F_{(z=z_a)}^+ + B$  (where A and B are known). Therefore, Equation 5.13, in case of implicit coupling with the atmosphere, writes:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{X^+ - X^-}{\Delta t} = & \frac{B - X_{(z=z_a)}^-}{\Delta t} + \frac{A}{\Delta t} \times \left\{ F_{(z=z_a)}^- + \frac{\partial F}{\partial(\frac{\partial X}{\partial z})}^-(z = z_a) \times \left( \frac{\partial X}{\partial z}^+(z = z_a) - \frac{\partial X}{\partial z}^-(z = z_a) \right) \right\} \\ & - \frac{\partial F}{\partial z}^- - \frac{\partial \frac{\partial F}{\partial z}}{\partial \frac{\partial X}{\partial z}}^- \times \left( \frac{\partial X}{\partial z}^+ - \frac{\partial X}{\partial z}^- \right) + For(X)^- + \frac{\partial For}{\partial X}^- \times (X^+ - X^-) \end{aligned} \quad (5.14)$$

This is still a linear system involving variables at future time step at all levels of the SBL scheme, but this system is no longer tridiagonal, because the term  $\frac{\partial X}{\partial z}(z = z_a)^+$  (i.e. at upper SBL level) influences directly the variable  $X^+$  at each level. However, such a system is still resolvable, showing the generality of the SBL scheme method proposed here.

## Bibliography

- [1] S. E. Belcher, N. Jerram, and J. C. R. Hunt. Adjustment of a turbulent boundary layer to a canopy of roughness elements. *J. Fluid Mech.*, 488:369–398, 2003.
- [2] M. J. Best, A. Beljaars, J. Polcher, and P. Viterbo. A proposed structure for coupling tiled surfaces with the planetary boundary layer. *J. Hydrometeorol.*, 5(6):1271–1278, December 2004.
- [3] T. H. Chen, A. Henderson-Sellers, P. C. D. Milly, A. J. Pitman, A. C. M. Beljaars, J. Polcher, F. Abramopoulos, A. Boone, S. Chang, F. Chen, Y. Dai, C. E. Desborough, R. E. Dickinson, L. Dmenil, M. Ek, J. R. Garratt, N. Gedney, Y. M. Gusev, J. Kim, R. Koster, E. A. Kowalczyk, K. Laval, J. Lean, D. Lettenmaier, X. Liang, J.-F. Mahfouf, H.-T. Mengelkamp, K. Mitchell, O. N. Nasonova, J. Noilhan, A. Robock, C. Rosenzweig, J. Schaake, C. A. Schlosser, J.-P. Schulz, Y. Shao, A. B. Shmakin, D. L. Verseghy, P. Wetzell, E. F. Wood, Y. Xue, Z.-L. Yang, and Q. Zeng. Cabauw experimental results from the project for intercomparison of land-surface parameterization schemes. *J. Clim.*, 10(6):1194–1215, June 1997.
- [4] V. Canuto Cheng, Y. and A. Howard. An improved model for the turbulent pbl. *J. Atmos. Sci.*, 59:1550–1565, 2002.
- [5] O. Coceal and S. E. Belcher. A canopy model of mean winds through urban areas. *Quart. J. Roy. Meteor. Soc.*, 130:1349–1372, 2005.
- [6] P. Bougeault Cuxart, J. and J.-L. Redelsperger. A turbulence scheme allowing for mesoscale and large-eddy simulations. *Q. J. R. Meteorol. Soc.*, 116:1–30, 2000.
- [7] J. Deardorff. Efficient prediction of ground temperature and moisture with inclusion of a layer of vegetation. *J. Geophys. Res.*, 83:1889–1903, 1978.
- [8] R. Hamdi and V. Masson. Inclusion of a drag approach in the town energy balance (teb) scheme: Offline 1d evaluation in a street canyon. *J. Appl. Meteorol. Climatol.*, 47(10):2627–2644, October 2008.
- [9] M. Kanda and M. Hino. Organized structures in developing turbulent flow within and above a plant canopy, using a large eddy simulation. *Bound.-Layer Meteorol.*, 68:237–257, 1994.

- [10] Hiroaki Kondo, Yutaka Genchi, Yukihiro Kikegawa, Yunitaka Ohashi, Hiroshi Yoshikado, and Hiroshi Komiyama. Development of a multi-layer urban canopy model for the analysis of energy consumption in a big city: Structure of the urban canopy model and its basic performance. *Bound.-Layer Meteorol.*, 116:395–421, 2005. 10.1007/s10546-005-0905-5.
- [11] S. Manabe. Climate and the ocean circulation 1. the atmospheric circulation and the hydrology of the earth's surface. *Mon. Weather Rev.*, 97:739–774, 1969.
- [12] Alberto Martilli. Numerical study of urban impact on boundary layer structure: Sensitivity to wind speed, urban morphology, and rural soil moisture. *J. Appl. Meteorol.*, 41(12):1247–1266, December 2002.
- [13] V. Masson. Urban surface modeling and the meso-scale impact of cities. *Theor. and Appl. Clim.*, 84:35–45, 2006. 10.1007/s00704-005-0142-3.
- [14] J. Noilhan and S. Planton. A simple parameterization of land surface processes for meteorological models. *Mon. Weather Rev.*, 117(3):536–549, 1989.
- [15] H. Park and S. Hattori. Modeling scalar and heat sources, sinks, and fluxes within a forest canopy during and after rainfall events. *J. Geophys. Res.*, 109:D14 301, 2004.
- [16] E. G. Patton, K. J. Davis, M. C. Barth, and P. P. Sullivan. Decaying scalars emitted by a forest canopy - a numerical study. *Bound.-Layer Meteorol.*, 100:91–129, 2001.
- [17] E. G. Patton, P. P. Sullivan, and C.-H. Moeng. The influence of a forest canopy on topdown and bottom-up diffusion in the planetary boundary layer. *Q. J. R. Meteorol. Soc.*, 129:1415–1434, 2003.
- [18] J. Polcher, B. McAvaney, P. Viterbo, M. A. Gaertner, A. Hahmann, J. F. Mahfouf, J. Noilhan, T. Phillips, A. Pitman, C. A. Schlosser, J. P. Schulz, B. Timbal, D. Verseghy, and Y. Xue. A proposal for a general interface between land surface schemes and general circulation models. *Glob. and Planet. Change*, 19(1-4):261–276, December 1998.
- [19] J.-L. Redelsperger, F. Mahe, and P. Carlotti. A simple and general subgrid model suitable both for surface layer and free-stream turbulence. *Bound.-Layer Meteorol.*, 101:375–408, 2001.
- [20] A. Robock, K. Y. Vinikov, C. A. Schlosser, N. A. Speranskaya, and Y. Xue. Use of midlatitude soil moisture and meteorological observations to validate soil moisture simulations with biosphere and bucket models. *J. Clim.*, 8:15–35, 1995.
- [21] R. Shaw and U. Schumann. Large-eddy simulation of turbulent flow above and within a forest. *Bound.-Layer Meteorol.*, 61:119–131, 1992.
- [22] S. Shen and M. Y. Leclerc. Modelling the turbulence structure in the canopy layer. *Agric. and For. Meteorol.*, 87:1–84, 1997.
- [23] E. Simon, F. X. Meixner, L. Ganzeveld, and J. Kesselmeier. Coupled carbon-water exchange of the amazon rain forest, i. model description, parameterization and sensitivity analysis. *Biogeosciences*, 2(3):231–253, 2005.
- [24] H. Sun, T. L. Clarka, R. B. Stulla, and Black T. A. Two-dimensional simulation of airflow and carbon dioxide transport over a forested mountain part i: Interactions between thermally-forced circulations. *Agric. and For. Meteorol.*, 140:338–351, 2006.

- [25] Z. Xinmin, Z. Ming, S. Bingkai, and W. Hanjie. Study on a boundary-layer numerical model with inclusion of heterogeneous multi-layer vegetation. *Adv. in Atmos. Sci.*, 16:431–442, 1999.

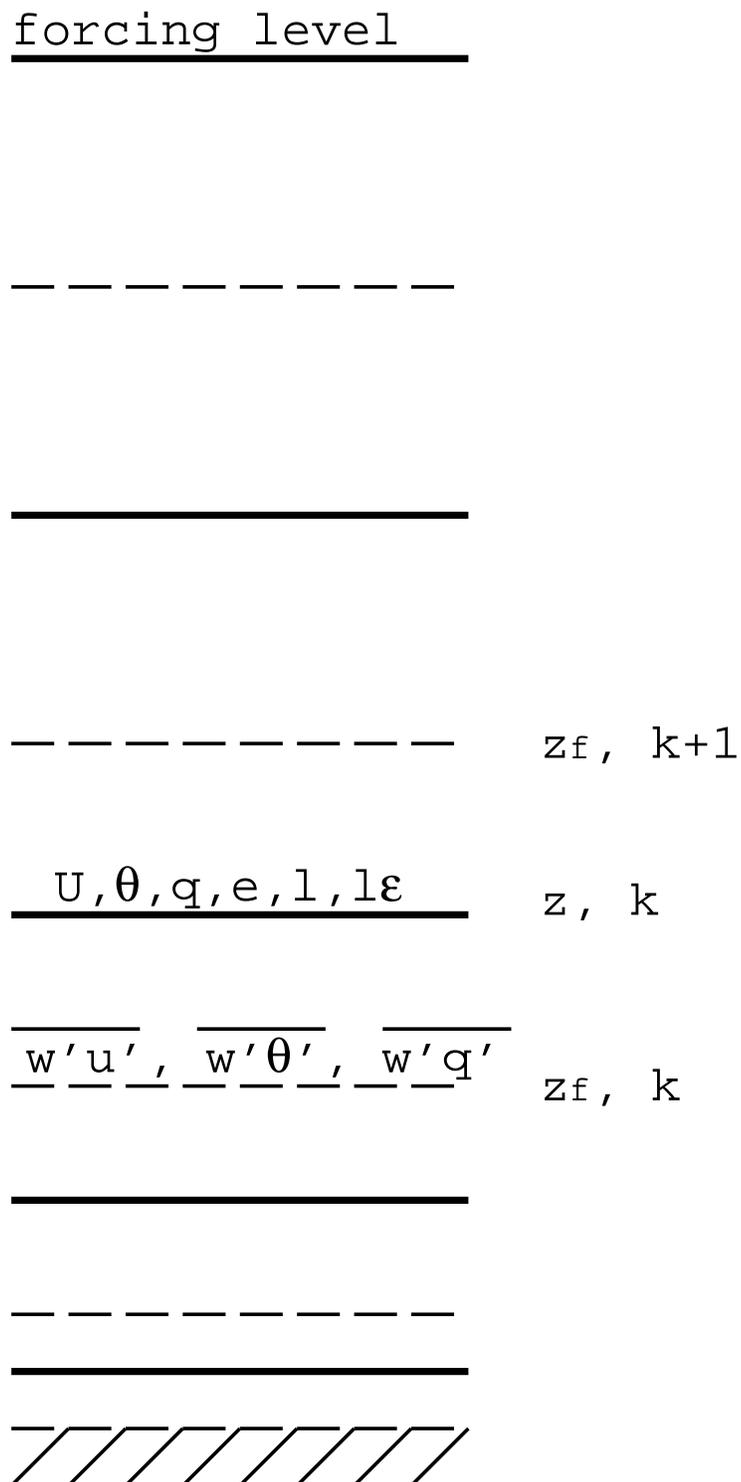


Figure 5.3: Schematic view of the vertical discretization for the SBL scheme. Plain lines are full levels. Dotted lines are flux levels.

# Chapter 6

## Chemistry and aerosols

### Contents

---

<b>6.1</b>	<b>Dust aerosols</b> . . . . .	<b>177</b>
6.1.1	Implementation in the Externalized surface . . . . .	178
6.1.2	Features of the model . . . . .	178
	Emission process . . . . .	178
	Parameterization of the friction velocity . . . . .	179
	Friction velocity threshold . . . . .	180
	Influence of soil moisture on friction velocity threshold . . . . .	180
	Aerodynamical roughness height . . . . .	181
	Surface flux . . . . .	181
	Mass flux repartition . . . . .	181
<b>6.2</b>	<b>Sea Salt emission</b> . . . . .	<b>182</b>
<b>6.3</b>	<b>Dry deposition of gaseous species</b> . . . . .	<b>182</b>
6.3.1	Resistances for dry deposition . . . . .	182
6.3.2	Dry deposition velocity formulation . . . . .	190
<b>6.4</b>	<b>Dry deposition of aerosols</b> . . . . .	<b>191</b>
<b>6.5</b>	<b>Biogenic VOC fluxes</b> . . . . .	<b>192</b>

---

### 6.1 Dust aerosols

Dust is mobilized from dry desert surfaces when the wind friction speed reaches a threshold wind friction speed of approximately 0.2 m/s. Dust is an important aerosol with annual global emissions ranging from 1000 to 3000  $Tg\ yr^{-1}$  and average global load around 10-30  $Tg$  (Zender *et al.* (2004)).

Dust is mobilized by two related processes called saltation and sandblasting. Saltation is the horizontal movement of soil grains in a turbulent near surface layer. Sandblasting is the release of fine dust when the saltating grains hit the surface. Several papers document these two processes. (Marticorena and Bergametti (1995) and references therein describe the physics of saltations, and Shao *et al.* (1993) describe the physics of sandblasting.

### 6.1.1 Implementation in the Externalized surface

The dust fluxes are calculated using the Dust Entrainment And Deposition (DEAD) model (Zender *et al.* (2003)). This model is based on Marticorena and Bergametti (1995). The dust fluxes are calculated consistently with the ISBA soil surface scheme. Table 6.1 gives an overview of the main input to the dust production model.

Table 6.1: ISBA variables used by the dust module

PARAMETER	EFFECT ON DUST EMISSION	REFERENCE
wind friction speed	Increase emissions	Marticorena and Bergametti (1995)
Soil moisture	Inhibit emissions	Fecan <i>et al.</i> (1999)
Vegetation fraction	Inhibit emissions	Marticorena and Bergametti (1995)
Surface roughness	Inhibit emissions	Laurent <i>et al.</i> (2005)
Surface texture	Soil sizes $> 50\mu m$ increase saltation flux	Iversen and White (1982)

### 6.1.2 Features of the model

#### Emission process

The production of desert aerosols follows in fact the sandblasting process following the bombing of the aggregates present at the surface by particles in saltation (Figure 6.1). These processes depend on both weather conditions and surface states. Indeed, the kinetic energy of the grains caused by saltation is used in shocks induced by these particles, when they fall to the ground to release and eject fine particles constituting aggregates (Gillette and Goodwin (1974), Gomes *et al.* (1990)). The resistance to wrenching, concerns soil properties like the gravity force and the inter-particle forces. Moreover, emission of aerosols is a threshold phenomenon: it occurs only when the wind friction force exerted on soil grains becomes greater than the forces that maintain them to the ground. When this threshold is exceeded, the soil grains start moving horizontally. The smallest particles can be suspended in the atmosphere and constitute the desert aerosol. The production intensity of fine particles thus depends on the ratio between the transferred kinetic energy flow and the cohesion forces of the particles forming the aggregates.

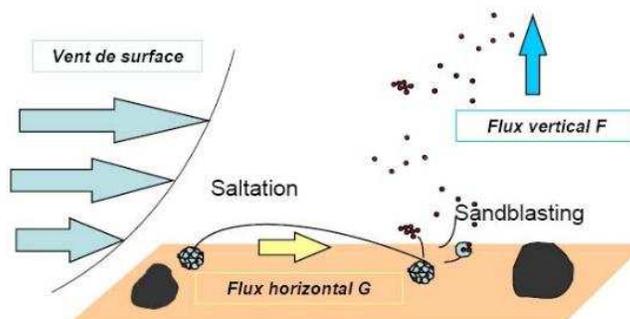


Figure 6.1: illustration of the two main processes involved in the emission of aerosols desert (saltation and sandblasting) when the erosion threshold is exceeded.

Once the particle is injected into the atmosphere, the forces to which it is subjected will control its suspension. It is generally accepted, given the balance of forces, that only particles with a diameter less than about  $20 \mu\text{m}$  can be transported (Nickling (1994)). Those fine particles, named aerosols, constitute the main part of the vertical flow of desert aerosol ( $F$ ). This vertical flow is defined as the mass of particles crossing per unit of time a unitary surface parallel to the surface.

### Parameterization of the friction velocity

Wind is the driving force in the aerosols desert generating process. The ground surface opposes the air flow and slows the air mass at its base. The surface wind is very sensitive to changes in surface characteristics at small scale. These changes may be due, for example, to the presence of vegetation or rocks. In the first few meters of the atmosphere, a surface boundary layer (CLS) develops, in which the horizontal component of the wind speed has a vertical gradient whose intensity depends on the ability of the soil surface to slow the flow (Figure 6.2). For a laminar flow over a horizontal surface, the shear constraint ( $\tau$ ) exerted by the wind on the surface is connected to the vertical gradient of the wind speed ( $U$ ) by:

$$\tau = \mu \frac{\partial U}{\partial Z} \quad (6.1)$$

Where  $\mu$  is the air dynamic viscosity coefficient and  $Z$  the height above the ground.

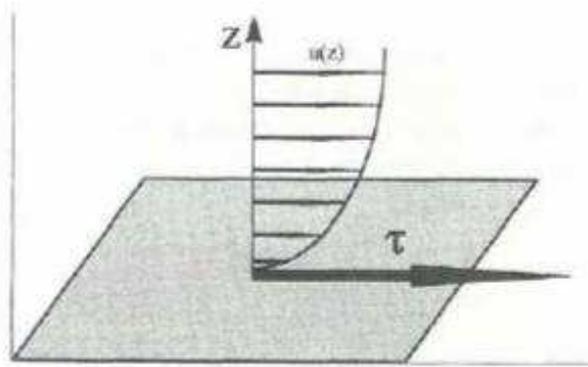


Figure 6.2: Representation of the effect of soil on the airflow and of the shear stress  $\tau$  exerted by the flow on the ground.

The shear constraint can also be expressed in terms of friction wind speed  $U_*$ , which is usually the physical quantity used to quantify friction forces exerted by wind on a surface:

$$\tau = \rho_a U_* \quad (6.2)$$

Where  $\rho_a$  is the air density. Under conditions of thermal neutrality,  $U_*$  can be determined from the wind speed  $U$  at a height  $z$  from the ground and the height of aerodynamic roughness ( $Z_0$ ) using a wind speed logarithmic profile (Priestley (1959)):

$$U(Z) = \frac{U_*}{\kappa} \ln\left(\frac{z}{Z_0}\right) \quad (6.3)$$

Where  $\kappa = 0.4$  is the Von Karman constant.

Physically,  $Z_0$  reflects the length scale of the sink of air momentum induced by the surface roughness. More specifically,  $Z_0$  represents quantitatively the effect of erodible elements (soil grains) or non-erodible ones (rocks or vegetation) on the transfer of wind energy to the surface.

### Friction velocity threshold

The resistance of the surface on the motion is represented by the friction velocity threshold  $U_{*t}$ . Indeed, the friction velocity threshold  $U_{*t}$  controls both the frequency and the intensity of emissions of aerosols desert, so it is important to parameterize carefully  $U_{*t}$  and give special attention to obtain the quantities it depends on. The erosion threshold is mainly computed from the soil grains diameter  $D_p$ , the surface roughness ( $Rug$ ) and the soil moisture ( $w$ ). The friction velocity threshold is expressed as:

$$U_{*t} = U_{*t}(D_p) \cdot F(Rug) \cdot F(w) \quad (6.4)$$

$U_{*t}(D_p)$ : depends on the friction speed with the diameter of soil grains.  $F(Rug)$  and  $F(w)$ : weighting functions of the influence of roughness and soil moisture. Under idealized conditions, ie for a smooth surface and a loose and dry soil, the friction velocity threshold  $U_{*t}(D_p)$  can be determined using the formulation of Marticorena and Bergametti (1995), which consists in adjusting an empirical expression as a function of the particle diameter. Under standard atmospheric conditions ( $\rho_a = 0.00123g \cdot cm^{-3}$ ,  $\rho_p = 2.65g \cdot cm^{-3}$ ), the friction velocity threshold  $U_{*t}(D_p)$  is given by:

$$U_{*t}(D_p) = \frac{0.129K}{(1.928Re_{*t}^{0.092})^{0.5}}, 0.03 \leq Re_{*t} \leq 10 \quad (6.5)$$

$$U_{*t}(D_p) = 0.129K [1 - 0.0858 \exp(-0.0617(Re_{*t} - 10))] , Re_{*t} > 10 \quad (6.6)$$

Where  $Re_{*t} = U_{*t}D_p/\nu$  is the Reynolds number threshold ( $\nu = 0.157 \text{ cm}^2\text{s}^{-1}$ : kinematic viscosity)

$$\text{and: } K = \left(\frac{\rho_p g D_p}{\rho_a}\right)^{0.5} \left(1 + \frac{0.006}{\rho_p g D_p^{2.5}}\right)^{0.5}$$

The optimal diameter of the particle is equal to 75  $\mu\text{m}$ .

### Influence of soil moisture on friction velocity threshold

The presence of interstitial water between soil grains has the effect of increasing the cohesion of the soil, thus increasing the friction velocity threshold. This increase is integrated in the module DEAD from the parameterization developed by Fecan *et al.* (1999). The proposed equation, expresses the threshold increase, under wet conditions  $U_{*tw}$  compared to that in dry conditions.

$$U_{*tw} = U_{*t} \quad \text{for } w < w' \quad (6.7)$$

$$U_{*tw} = U_{*t} [1 + 1.21(w - w')^{0.68}]^{0.5} \quad \text{for } w > w' \quad (6.8)$$

With:  $w$ : mass soil moisture (% mass water / mass dry soil). And soil moisture threshold is given by:

$$w' = 0.17(\%clay) + 0.14(\%clay)^2 \quad (6.9)$$

### Aerodynamical roughness height

The effects of the internal boundary layer (IBL) on friction velocity threshold, due to the presence of stones, is set in DEAD scheme by Marticorena and Bergametti (1995). The energy distribution is defined in this parameterization as the ratio between the IBL shear friction and the total shear friction of the surface boundary layer (SBL). This ration is given by:

$$f_{eff}(Z_0, Z_{0s}) = 1 - \left[ \ln(Z_0/Z_{0s}) / \ln(0.35(10/Z_{0s})^{0.8}) \right] \quad (6.10)$$

$Z_{0s} = 33.3 \times 10^{-6} m$ : roughness length of the smooth surface

$Z_0 = 100.0 \times 10^{-6} m$ : roughness length of the erodible surface

The friction velocity threshold is expressed as:

$$U_{*t}(D_p, Z_0, Z_{0s}) = \frac{U_{*t}(D_p)}{f_{eff}(Z_0, Z_{0s})} \quad (6.11)$$

### Surface flux

The horizontal saltation flux ( $G$ ) is calculated in module DEAD through the White (1979) relationship :

$$G = c \cdot \frac{\rho}{g} U_*^3 \left( 1 - \frac{U_{*t}}{U_*} \right) \left( 1 + \frac{U_{*t}}{U_*} \right) \quad (6.12)$$

With  $c = 2.61$ . The ratio between the vertical flux and the horizontal flux is a function of clay content. For contents between 0 and 20%, this ratio is :

$$\alpha = \frac{F}{G} = 100 \exp [(13.4(\%clay) - 6) \times \ln(10)] \quad (6.13)$$

In the DEAD module, the fraction of clay is considered constant and is equal to 20%. The final vertical flux is averaged by a pre-determined factor equals to 0.0021 and by the sand fraction.

### Mass flux repartition

Upon Alfaro and Gomes (2001) the mass flux is partitioning on the different modes upon the surface friction velocity. More the collision energy is strong more the dust aggregates can be separates into small particles. In surfex, two possibilities are offered. Users can fix the partitioning or the mass flux on the differents modes considered, or compute automatically this partitioning upon the ISBA friction velocity. In this latter case, Alfaro and Gomes (2001) gives the following partitionning:

- $u^*$  less than  $0.32 m.s^{-1}$ , all particles are emitted in the coarse mode.
- $u^*$  at  $0.42 m.s^{-1}$ , 63 % of the mass flux is in the bigger coarse mode ( $D=14.2 \mu m$ ) , 36 % in the lower coarse mode ( $D=6.7 \mu m$ ), and 1 % in the accumulation mode ( $D=1.5 \mu m$ )
- $u^*$  at  $0.50 m.s^{-1}$ , 49 % of the mass flux is in the bigger coarse mode ( $D=14.2 \mu m$ ) , 43 % in the lower coarse mode ( $D=6.7 \mu m$ ), and 8 % in the accumulation mode ( $D=1.5 \mu m$ )
- $u^*$  at  $0.66 m.s^{-1}$ , 9 % of the mass flux is in the bigger coarse mode ( $D=14.2 \mu m$ ) , 76 % in the lower coarse mode ( $D=6.7 \mu m$ ), and 15 % in the accumulation mode ( $D=1.5 \mu m$ )

Between these friction velocities values, the mass flux partitioning is linearly interpolated.

## 6.2 Sea Salt emission

Sea salt aerosols are produced as film and jet droplets when bubbles, entrained in the water by breaking waves, disrupt the sea surface (Blanchard, 1983), and at winds speeds exceeding about  $9 \text{ m.s}^{-1}$ , by direct disruption of the wave tops (spume droplets) (Monahan *et al.* (1983)).

Sea Salt emission are parameterized upon the formulation of Vignati *et al.* (2001) (effective source function) or upon a lookup table defined by Schulz *et al.* (2004). Vignati *et al.* (2001) gives a formulation of particles emission upon the wind at 10 meters as:

- $F(R = 0.2\mu\text{m}) = 10^{0.09U_{10m} + 0.283} \text{particles.cm}^{-2}.\text{s}^{-1}$
- $F(R = 2\mu\text{m}) = 10^{0.0422U_{10m} + 0.288} \text{particles.cm}^{-2}.\text{s}^{-1}$
- $F(R = 12\mu\text{m}) = 10^{0.069U_{10m} - 3.5} \text{particles.cm}^{-2}.\text{s}^{-1}$

## 6.3 Dry deposition of gaseous species

The removal of gases from the atmosphere by turbulent transfer and uptake at the surface is defined as dry deposition. This process enables some chemically reactive gases to be efficiently removed from the atmosphere. Dry deposition is usually parametrized through a deposition velocity  $v_d$ , defined by  $v_d = -\frac{F_c}{c(z)}$ , where  $F_c$  is the flux of the considered compound ( $F_c$  is assumed constant over the considered range of heights) and  $c(z)$  is the concentration at height  $z$  (molecules/cm<sup>3</sup>).  $v_d$  depends on many variables such as wind speed, temperature, radiation, the considered species and the surface conditions. It is commonly described through a resistance analogy often called "Big-Leaf" Model (e.g. Wesely and Hicks (1977)).

$$v_d(z) = \frac{1}{R_a + R_b + R_c}$$

where  $R_a$  is the aerodynamic resistance, which is a function of the turbulence in the boundary layer,  $R_b$  the quasi-laminar resistance partially controlled by molecular diffusion, and  $R_c$  the surface resistance, which combines all the transfer pathways playing a role in the uptake of trace gases by the surface.

### Meso-NH surface for dry deposition

As shown fig. 6.3, earth surface is divided into four major parts. On those surfaces calculation of specific parameters are done (friction velocities, surface resistances, ...). The earth splitting is done as follows : town horizontal fraction Masson (2000), inland water and sea surfaces (different because of their surface temperature) and nature fractions. Nature surface is cut into 9 cover type, which can be reorganized by 'patches' (1 to 9). One 'patch' contains one or several cover types (user choice). These cover types are connected with the Wesely classes of vegetation for the surface resistance data parameters (see table 6.2).

### 6.3.1 Resistances for dry deposition

#### Aerodynamic resistance $R_a$

$R_a$  determines the rate of transport of gases between a given level in the atmosphere and the height of the effective surface sink. It is usually calculated as the bulk aerodynamic resistance to the transfer of momentum :  $R_a(z_R) = \frac{1}{C_D V_A}$ , where  $C_D$  is the drag coefficient for momentum (see for example Wesely and Hicks (1977); Sheih *et al.* (1979); Walcek *et al.* (1996)) and  $V_A$  the wind speed (in the following,

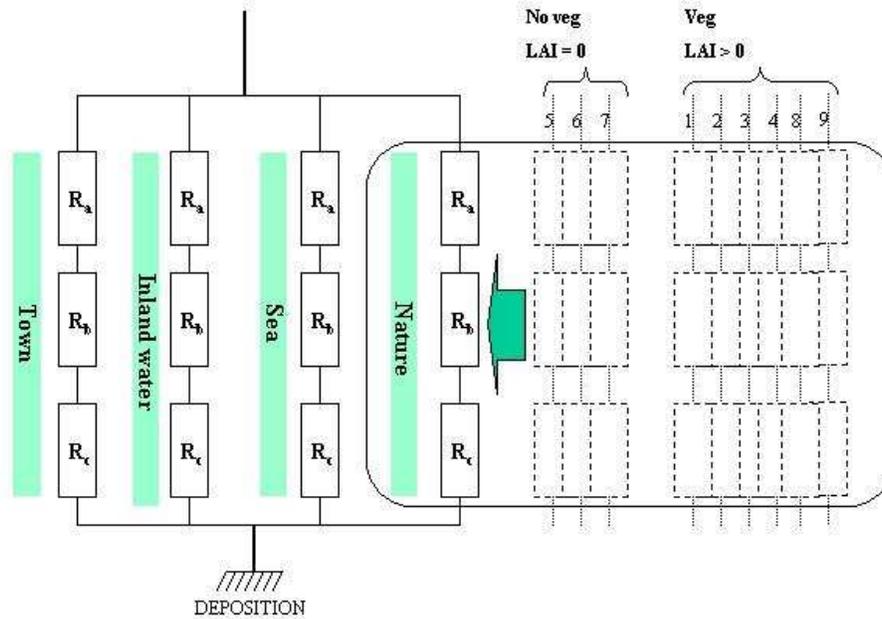


Figure 6.3: Schematic resistances for dry deposition module in accordance with the surface state.  $R_a$  represents the aerodynamic resistance,  $R_b$  the quasi-laminar resistance and  $R_c$  the surface resistance.

the parameters which are already used or calculated in the MESO-NH subroutines will be noted in bold characters). The reference height  $z_R$  is taken as the lowest atmospheric level in the ISBA scheme.

An alternate way is to use the ISBA calculation of  $R_a$ ,  $R_a(z_R) = \frac{1}{C_H V_A}$  which determines the transfer of water vapor.  $C_H$  is then the drag coefficient depending upon the thermal stability of the atmosphere. Heat drag coefficients are calculated in WATER\_FLUX for inland water and sea, in URBAN for artificial land (town) and in ISBA for the other nature cover types or patch. So there is one  $R_a$  different for each different coefficient.

This formulation of  $R_a$  requires an additional term to the quasi-laminar resistance described below.

### Quasi-laminar resistance $R_b$

The component  $R_b$  is associated with transfer through the quasi-laminar layer in contact with the surface.  $R_b$  quantifies the way in which pollutant or heat transfer differ from momentum transfer in the immediate vicinity of the surface (this is due to the effects of molecular diffusion and the difference of roughness lengths found for momentum and mass transfer).  $R_b$  depends on both turbulence characteristics and the molecular diffusion of the considered gas. Transport of a gas through the quasi-laminar layer by molecular diffusion depends on the thickness of the layer, the concentration gradient over the layer and on a diffusion constant, which in turn depends on the radius of the gas molecule and on the temperature. The complexity of vegetation generally limits the accuracy with which the magnitude of this mechanism can be estimated in

Meso-NH nature cover type	Wesely correspondence class
C3 cultures types(low)	(2) Agricultural land
C4 cultures types(hight)	(2) Agricultural land
forest and trees	(4) Deciduous and (5) coniferous forest
grassland	(3) Range land
no vegetation (smooth)	(8) Baren land, mostly desert
no vegetation (rocks)	(11) Rocky open areas with low-growing shrubs
permanent snow and ice	No correspondence
irrigated crops	(9) None forested wetland
irrigated parks gardens or peat bogs	(6) Mixed forest including weet land and (9) none forest wetland

Table 6.2: Meso-NH vegetative cover type and Wesely connected class for dry deposition calculation

the field. This resistance can be conveniently written as:

$$R_b = \frac{1}{ku^*} \log\left(\frac{z_0}{z_c}\right)$$

$k$  is the Von Karman constant and  $u^*$  the friction velocity.  $z_c$  is the roughness length for the pollutant under investigation (Baldocchi et al. (1987)).

According to Hicks *et al.* (1987), Garrat and Hicks (1973)  $R_b$  can be approximated for vegetation and fibrous roughness elements by :

$$R_b = \frac{2}{ku^*} \left(\frac{Sc}{Pr}\right)^{2/3}$$

$Sc$  and  $Pr$  are the Schmidt and Prandtl numbers respectively.  $Pr = 0.72$  and  $Sc = \frac{\nu}{D_i}$ , with  $\nu$  the kinematic viscosity of air ( $0.15 \text{ cm}^2\text{s}^{-1}$ ,  $20^\circ \text{ C}$ ,  $p = 1 \text{ atm}$ ) and  $D_i$  the molecular diffusivity of gas  $i$  (see table 6.3 for some of these constants). For snow, ice, water and bare soil,  $R_b$  can be calculated by (Ganzeveld and Lelieveld (1995)):

$$R_b = \frac{1}{ku^*} \left(\frac{Sc}{Pr}\right)^{2/3}$$

This formulation is used for all Meso-NH grid fraction cover with no vegetation (Leaf Area Index = 0), that include artificial land, water and sea.

Definition of friction velocity in MNH is given by :  $u^* = \sqrt[4]{\langle \mathbf{u}'\mathbf{w}' \rangle_{xx}^2 + \langle \mathbf{v}'\mathbf{w}' \rangle_{xx}^2}$ . Where  $\langle u'w' \rangle_{xx}$  and  $\langle v'w' \rangle_{xx}$  represents surface fluxes of horizontal momentum in x and y directions (xx for sea, water, town and nature patch). Molecular diffusivity species/air can be obtain by the knowledge of  $H_2O/air$  diffusivity. The coefficient of diffusivity is given by the general formula as:

$$D = vl/3 = \frac{0.376kT}{N(MC_{ste})^{0.5}}$$

with  $l$  mean free path,  $v$  mean molecular velocity,  $k$  Boltzmann constant,  $T$  temperature,  $N$  concentration,  $M$  molecular mass. So we use for computing molecular diffusivity:

$$D(gaz) = D(H_2O) \left(\frac{M(H_2O)}{M(gaz)}\right)^{0.5}$$

with

$$D(H_2O) = 2.22e - 5 + 1.2510^{-7}(T + 273) \text{ for } 193K < T < 300K$$

$$D(H_2O) = 2.22e - 5 + 1.4610^{-7}(T + 273) \text{ for } 273K < T < 323K$$

However, these formulations of  $R_b$  remain still controversial. Recent results from fields studies indicate that they are not in agreement with experimentally derived results, at least for the transfer of  $\text{HNO}_3$  over wheat (Muller *et al.* (1993)). At last, velocity dry deposition is not very sensitive of the choosen definition of  $R_b$  (Ganzeveld and Lelieveld (1995)).

### Surface Resistance $R_c$

The surface resistance is the most difficult of the three resistances to describe.  $R_c$  values can be obtained from theoretical considerations based for instance on solubility and equilibrium; calculations in combination with simulation of vegetation specific processes, such as accumulation, transfer process through stomata, mesophyll, cuticles, etc . . . (Baldocchi *et al.* (1987), Wesely (1989)). The values of  $R_c$  are based on measurements of  $V_d$ . By determining  $R_a$  and  $R_b$  from the meteorological measurements,  $R_c$  is calculated as the residual resistance. The calculated  $R_c$  are then related to surface conditions, time of day, etc . . . in order to obtain parametrizations of  $R_c$ .

#### Vegetative surface resistance

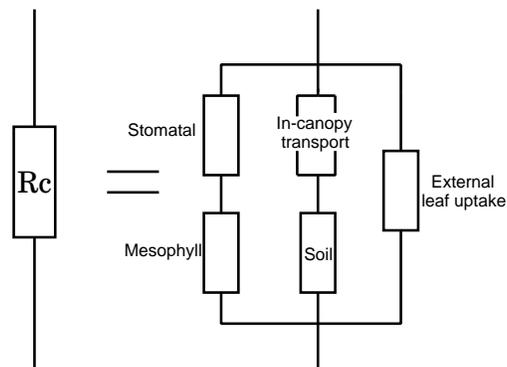


Figure 6.4: Surface resistance schematic for vegetation.

$R_c$  is a function of the canopy stomatal resistance  $R_{stom}$  and mesophyll resistance  $R_m$ , the canopy cuticle or external leaf resistance  $R_{ext}$ , the soil resistance  $R_{soil}$  and in-canopy resistance  $R_{inc}$ , and the resistance to surface waters or moorland pools,  $R_{wat}$ ,  $R_{sea}$  (Erisman and Baldocchi (1994)). In turn, these resistances are affected by leaf area index, stomatal physiology, soil and external leaf surface, pH presence and chemistry of liquid drops and films. In summary,  $R_c$  should be calculated as Erisman and Baldocchi (1994) :

- Vegetative surfaces :  $R_c = \left( \frac{1}{R_{stom} + R_m} + \frac{1}{R_{inc} + R_{soil}} + \frac{1}{R_{ext}} \right)^{-1}$
- Water surfaces :  $R_c = R_{wat}$
- Sea surfaces :  $R_c = R_{sea}$
- Bare soil (no vegetation) :  $R_c = R_{no}$
- Rock surfaces :  $R_c = R_{rock}$
- Snow/ice cover :  $R_c = R_{snow}$
- Artificial land :  $R_c = R_{town}$

### Stomatal and mesophyll resistance $R_{stom}$ and $R_m$

The stomatal resistance for water vapor is calculated in the ISBA subroutines as

$$\mathbf{R}_{stom} = \frac{\mathbf{R}_{smin}}{\mathbf{F}_1 \mathbf{F}_2 \mathbf{F}_3 \mathbf{F}_4 \mathbf{LAI}},$$

where  $\mathbf{LAI}$  is the leaf area index computed by patch, and  $F_1, F_2, F_3, F_4$  are limiting factors depending on radiation, wetness of soil and temperature. In order to describe the stomatal resistance for another gas, the ISBA  $\mathbf{R}_{stom}$  for water vapor should be corrected as followed :

$$R_{stom,x} = \mathbf{R}_{stom} \times \frac{D_{H_2O}}{D_x},$$

$D_{H_2O}$  and  $D_x$  are the diffusion coefficients of  $H_2O$  and  $x$  respectively (Wesely (1989)).

There is not much knowledge on the mesophyll resistance for different gases and the conditions which determine its value. For some gases, such as  $SO_2$ ,  $O_3$  and  $NH_3$ ,  $R_m$  is experimentally found near zero values (Erisman and Baldocchi (1994)). This is in agreement with the parametrization suggested by Wesely (1989) for the calculation of the mesophyll resistance :

$$R_{mx} = \left( \frac{H^*}{3000} + 100f_0 \right)^{-1}$$

In this expression,  $H^*$  is the Henry's law constant for the considered gas,  $f_0$  a reactivity factor which determines the rate of reduction of the substance. Two parallel pathways are thus assumed, one for highly reactive gases, the other one for soluble substances. Table 6.3 lists  $H^*$  and  $f_0$  for some species (Baer and Nester (1992)).

### External leaf uptake $R_{ext}$

The external leaf uptake can act as an effective sink, especially for soluble gases at wet surfaces. The resistance of the outer surfaces in the upper canopy (leaf cuticular resistance in healthy vegetation) is computed by Wesely (1989), for a dry surface to any gas (x), as :

$$R_{ext,x,dry} = R_{ext}(10^{-5}H^* + f_0)^{-1}$$

In this expression,  $R_{ext}$  is given by land category and season in table 6.4, the constants ( $H^*$ ,  $f_0$ ) can be found in table 6.3.

The following equation is supposed to give an analytic expression of  $\mathbf{R}_{ext}$  in accordance with Wesely table 6.4, and including seasonal variations through the leaf area index  $\mathbf{LAI}$  :

$$R_{ext} = 6000 - 4000 \tanh(1.6(\mathbf{LAI} - 1.6))$$

These results had been compared with Wesely table in accordance with Méso-NH (ISBA) data of LAI (see fig. 6.3.1 ).

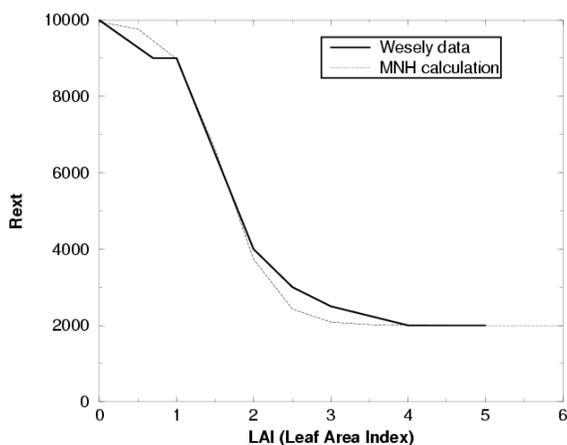
In case of dew or rain, and according to the same author and Walmsley and Wesely (1996), the equation should be replaced by :

$$R_{ext,x,wet} = [1/(3R_{ext,x,dry}) + (10^{-7}H^* + f_0/R_{extOzone})]^{-1}$$

with

Species	Reactivity factor	Henry's law (M/atm)
Sulfur dioxide	0	$1.6(1 + 2.1 \cdot 10^{-2}/H+)$
Nitric oxide	0	$1.9 \cdot 10^{-3}$
Nitrogen dioxide	0.1	$10^{-2}$
Nitric acid	0	$5.8 \cdot 10^6/H+$
Ozone	1.	$1.5 \cdot 10^{-2}$
Hydrogen peroxide	0	$1.8 \cdot 10^5$
Formaldehyde	0	$3.26 \cdot 10^{-4}$
Aldehydes	0	76
Organic acids	0	$1.45 \cdot 10^{-4}$
Organic peroxide	0.25	665
Peroxyacetic acid	0.5	1635
Peroxyacetyl nitrate	0.1	3.6
Other alkanes	0	$1. \cdot 10^{-3}$
Ethane	0	$1.9 \cdot 10^{-3}$
Ethene	0	$4.9 \cdot 10^{-3}$
Propene	0	$4.7 \cdot 10^{-3}$
Butene and other olefins	0	$1.3 \cdot 10^{-3}$
Toluene	0	0.15
Xylene	0	0.1

Table 6.3: Reactivity factor and Henry's law constants for different chemical species

Figure 6.5:  $R_{\text{ext}}$  fonction of LAI (from Wesely table)

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11
Midsummer with lush vegetation										
9999	2000	2000	2000	2000	2000	9999	9999	2500	2000	4000
Autumn with unharvested cropland										
9999	9000	9000	9000	4000	8000	9999	9999	9000	9000	9000
Late autumn after frost, no snow										
9999	9999	9000	9000	4000	8000	9999	9999	9000	9000	9000
Winter										
9999	9999	9999	9999	6000	9000	9999	9999	9000	9000	9000
Spring										
9999	4000	4000	4000	2000	3000	9999	9999	4000	4000	8000

Table 6.4: *Input resistances for calculation of external leaf resistance (Wesely,1989) : (1)urban land, (2)agricultural land, (3)range land, (4)deciduous forest, (5)coniferous forest, (6)mixed forest including wetland, (7)water, (8)barren land, mostly desert, (9)nonforested wetland, (10)mixed agricultural and range land, (11)rocky-open areas with low-growing shrubs*

- Rain :

$$R_{extOzone} = (1/(3R_{ext}) + 1/1000)^{-1}$$

- Dew :

$$R_{extOzone} = (1/(3R_{ext}) + 1/3000)^{-1}$$

To apply the same comput for each species we approximate in case of wet soil these formulas by using  $R_{extOzone}$  as 3000 s/m .

These formulas should be corrected when surface temperature decreases below  $-2^{\circ}\text{C}$  by adding the value  $1000 \exp(-T - 4)$ , in order to take into account the lesser uptake by surfaces when cold.

### **In-canopy transport $R_{inc}$**

Deposition to soils under vegetation can be relatively important. Meyers and Baldocchi (1988) found that 20% - 30% of  $\text{SO}_2$  was deposited in summer to the soil under a deciduous forest. This transport is due to large-scale intermittent eddies through the vegetation. The corresponding resistance has been parametrized by Erisman and Baldocchi (1994) using data of VanPul and Jacobs (1994) as :

$$R_{inc} = \frac{b \text{LAI} h}{\mathbf{u}^*}$$

$b$  is an empirical constant estimated at  $14 \text{ m}^{-1}$ .  $\text{LAI} = \text{LAI}_{\text{patch}}$  is the leaf area index given by patches computed in the GROUND\_PARAMn files and  $h$  is the vegetation height which can be calculated as four times the vegetation roughness length (formula of Kondo and Yamazawa (1986), assuming a dense vegetation canopy with similar height).

### Soil resistances for surfaces with no vegetation and those under vegetation

Table 6.5 presents a review of soil resistances for SO<sub>2</sub> and O<sub>3</sub> for clay, sand, snow and it is completed with table 6.6, Wesely value for all other vegetation types, town and rock.

For other gases, the resistance can be computed following Wesely (1989) :

$$R_{soilx} = \left( \frac{H^*}{10^5 R_{soilSO_2}} + \frac{f_0}{R_{soilO_3}} \right)^{-1}$$

According to the same author, this formula should be corrected when surface temperature decreases below -2°C by adding the value :

$$R_{soilx} = R_{soilx} + 1000 \exp(-T - 4)$$

For no vegetation cover soil surface composition (sand, clay) is considered. If it is covered by snow, this formulation will be update by using table 6.5.

$$R_{sandx} = \left( \frac{H^*}{10^5 R_{sandSO_2}} + \frac{f_0}{R_{sandO_3}} \right)^{-1}$$

$$R_{clayx} = \left( \frac{H^*}{10^5 R_{claySO_2}} + \frac{f_0}{R_{clayO_3}} \right)^{-1}$$

$$R_{snowx} = \left( \frac{H^*}{10^5 R_{snowSO_2}} + \frac{f_0}{R_{snowO_3}} \right)^{-1}$$

In this context  $R_{no.x}$  for bare ground (no veg.) without snow is the weighted average of  $R_{sandx}$  and  $R_{clayx}$  as:

$$R_{no.x} = \left( \frac{\alpha_{sand}}{R_{sandx}} + \frac{\alpha_{clay}}{R_{clayx}} \right)^{-1}$$

with

$\alpha_{sand}$  : percentage of sand in the ground

$\alpha_{clay}$  : percentage of clay in the ground

For all the other type of soil, resistance is calculated with table 6.6 as :

$$R_{rockx} = \left( \frac{H^*}{10^5 R_{rockSO_2}} + \frac{f_0}{R_{rockO_3}} \right)^{-1}$$

$$R_{townx} = \left( \frac{H^*}{10^5 R_{townSO_2}} + \frac{f_0}{R_{townO_3}} \right)^{-1}$$

$$R_{c3x} = \left( \frac{H^*}{10^5 R_{c3SO_2}} + \frac{f_0}{R_{c3O_3}} \right)^{-1}$$

$$R_{c4x} = \left( \frac{H^*}{10^5 R_{c4SO_2}} + \frac{f_0}{R_{c4O_3}} \right)^{-1}$$

$$R_{treex} = \left( \frac{H^*}{10^5 R_{treeSO_2}} + \frac{f_0}{R_{treeO_3}} \right)^{-1}$$

$$R_{grassx} = \left( \frac{H^*}{10^5 R_{grassSO_2}} + \frac{f_0}{R_{grassO_3}} \right)^{-1}$$

$$R_{irrx} = \left( \frac{H^*}{10^5 R_{irrSO_2}} + \frac{f_0}{R_{irrO_3}} \right)^{-1}$$

$$R_{parkx} = \left( \frac{H^*}{10^5 R_{parkSO_2}} + \frac{f_0}{R_{parkO_3}} \right)^{-1}$$

Type of soil	SO <sub>2</sub>	O <sub>3</sub>
snow	540 at T < -1°C 70(2-T) at -1 < T < 1	2000
sand	1000	200
clay	1000	100

Table 6.5: *Soil resistance*

MNH cover type									
c3	c4	tree	grass	no	rock	snow/ice	irr	park	town
Soil resistance for SO <sub>2</sub>									
150	150	500	350	1000	400	no data	0	100	400
Soil resistance for O <sub>3</sub>									
150	150	200	200	400	200	no data	1000	700	300

Table 6.6: *Soil resistance for MNH-C decomposition from Wesely table (quasi constant during the year). Values for “snow/ice” and “no” (no veg.) are not used see table 6.5.*

### Surfaces resistances for sea and water

For deposition over water surface bodies, the surface resistance can be calculated from the expression recommended by Sehmel (1980) that incorporates wind speed and air/water partitioning coefficient, rather than from Wesely’s tabulated values for water bodies. The surface resistance over water is:

$$R_{waterx} = \frac{2,54 \cdot 10^{-4}}{H^* \mathbf{T}_{water} \mathbf{u}_*} = R_{C_{waterx}}$$

$$R_{seax} = \frac{2,54 \cdot 10^{-4}}{H^* \mathbf{T}_{sea} \mathbf{u}_*} = R_{C_{seax}}$$

## 6.3.2 Dry deposition velocity formulation

### Artificial land resistance

$$R_{global}^{town} = R_a^{town} + R_b^{town} + R_c^{town}$$

### Sea and water resistance

$$R_{global}^{water} = R_a^{water} + R_b^{water} + R_c^{water}$$

$$R_{global}^{sea} = R_a^{sea} + R_b^{sea} + R_c^{sea}$$

### Nature final resistance

$$R_{global}^{nature} = \sum_{i=1}^{n_{vegtype}} \left( \frac{\alpha_i}{R_a^{j_{patch}} + R_b^{j_{patch}} + R_c^i} \right)^{-1}$$

with

$i \xrightarrow{f} f(i) = j_{patch}$  like  $i \in [1, nvegtype]$ ,  $f(i) = j_{patch} \in [1, npatch \leq nvegtype]$   
and  $\alpha_i$  fraction of cover type (9 types)

### Dry deposition velocity

Final dry deposition formulation:

$$v_{drydeposition} = \frac{\alpha_{water}}{R_{global}^{water}} + \frac{\alpha_{sea}}{R_{global}^{sea}} + \frac{\alpha_{townmax}}{R_{global}^{town}} + \frac{\alpha_{nature}}{R_{global}^{nature}}$$

where

$\alpha_{water}$  : fraction of water

$\alpha_{sea}$  : fraction of sea

$\alpha_{townmax}$  : fraction of town increased

$\alpha_{sea}$  : fraction of nature

Fraction of town has to be increased in order to take account of the non negligible dry deposition on vertical surfaces in artificial area. The increase is done as follows :

$\alpha_{townmax} = \alpha_{town} (1 + 2 \frac{H}{L} \alpha_{bld})$  with :

$\alpha_{town}$  horizontal fraction of town

$H$  building height

$L$  building characteristic width

$\alpha_{bld}$  fraction of buildings in artificial areas (only)

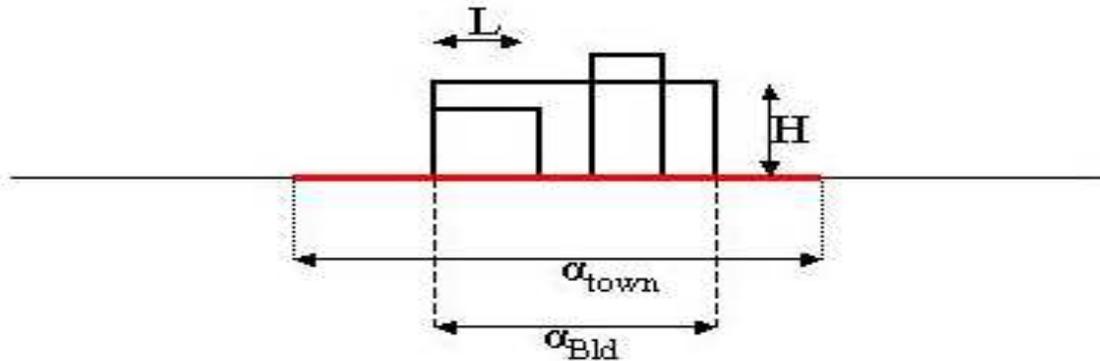


Figure 6.6: town parameters in MNH (*modd\_gr\_field*) to increase fraction of town

## 6.4 Dry deposition of aerosols

### Brownian diffusivity and sedimentation velocity

Dry deposition and sedimentation of aerosols are driven by the Brownian diffusivity:

$$D_p = \left( \frac{kT}{6\pi\nu\rho_{air}r_p} \right) C_c \quad (6.14)$$

and by the gravitational velocity:

$$V_g = \left( \frac{2g}{9\nu} \left( \frac{\rho_{p,i}}{\rho_{air}} \right) r_p^2 \right) C_c \quad (6.15)$$

where  $k$  is the Boltzmann constant,  $T$  the ambient temperature,  $\nu$  the air kinematic velocity,  $\rho_{air}$  the air density,  $g$  the gravitational acceleration,  $\rho_{p,i}$  the aerosol density of mode  $i$ , and  $C_c = 1 + 1.246 \frac{\lambda_{air}}{r_p}$  the gliding coefficient. These expressions need to be averaged on the  $k^{th}$  moment and mode  $i$  as:

$$\hat{X} = \frac{1}{M_{k,i}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X r_p^k n_i(\ln r_p) d(\ln r_p) \quad (6.16)$$

where  $X$  represents either  $D_p$  or  $v_g$ . After integration, we obtain for Brownian diffusivity:

$$\hat{D}_{p_{k,i}} = \tilde{D}_{p_{g,i}} \left[ \exp\left(\frac{-2k+1}{2} \ln^2 \sigma_{g,i}\right) + 1.246 K n_g \exp\left(\frac{-4k+4}{2} \ln^2 \sigma_{g,i}\right) \right] \quad (6.17)$$

with  $\tilde{D}_{p_{g,i}} = \left( \frac{kT}{6\pi\nu\rho_{air}R_{g,i}} \right)$   
and for gravitational velocity:

$$\hat{V}g_{p_{k,i}} = \tilde{V}g_{p_{g,i}} \left[ \exp\left(\frac{4k+4}{2} \ln^2 \sigma_{g,i}\right) + 1.246 K n_g \exp\left(\frac{2k+4}{2} \ln^2 \sigma_{g,i}\right) \right] \quad (6.18)$$

with  $\tilde{V}g_{p_{g,i}} = \left( \frac{2g\rho_{p,i}}{9\nu\rho_{air}} R_{g,i}^2 \right)$

## Dry deposition

According to Seinfeld and Pandis (1997) and using the resistance concept of Wesely (1989), aerosol dry deposition velocity for the  $k^{th}$  moment and mode  $i$  is:

$$\hat{v}_{d_{k,i}} = (r_a + \hat{r}_{d_{k,i}} + r_a \hat{r}_{d_{k,i}} \hat{V}g_{p_{k,i}})^{-1} + \hat{V}g_{p_{k,i}} \quad (6.19)$$

where surface resistance  $\hat{r}_{d_{k,i}}$  is given by

$$\hat{r}_{d_{k,i}} = \left[ (\hat{S}c_{k,i}^{-2/3} + 10^{-3}/\hat{S}t_{k,i}) \left( 1 + 0.24 \frac{w_*^2}{u_*^2} \right) u_* \right]^{-1} \quad (6.20)$$

Schmidt and Stokes number are respectively equal to  $\hat{S}c_{k,i} = \nu/\hat{D}_{p_{k,i}}$  and  $\hat{S}t_{k,i} = (u_*^2/g\nu)\hat{v}_{d_{k,i}}$ . One can observe that the friction velocity  $u_*$  and the convective velocity  $w_*$  depend on meteorological and surface conditions.

## 6.5 Biogenic VOC fluxes

Biogenic fluxes are parameterize on-line in the surfex code. For a model grid-cell, biogenic fluxes of isoprene and monoterpenes are calculated according to the classical Guenther's approach (Guenther *et al.* (1994, 1995)), using the general formulation :

$$F_x^{cell} = \sum_N \nu_n X.EP_{x,n} X.ECF_{x,n} \quad (6.21)$$

Where  $F_x^{cell}$  (in g.m<sup>-2</sup>.h<sup>-1</sup>) is the grid-cell averaged biogenic fluxes in which  $x$  refers either to isoprene or monoterpenes.  $\nu_n$  represents the surface fractions occupied by  $N$  sub-grid emitting ecosystems (forests,

shrublands, crops, etc). The related emission potential,  $EP_{x,n}$ , (in  $\mu g \cdot m^{-2} \cdot h^{-1}$ ), accounts for the emission capacity of the underlying  $n$ th ecosystem under fixed climatic conditions. According to Guenther's approach, EPiso is standardized to a surface vegetation temperature  $T_s$  of 303 K and a photosynthetically active radiation (par) of  $1000 \mu E \cdot m^{-2} \cdot s^{-1}$ , whereas EPmono is generally standardized only for  $T_s = 303$  K. The temporal evolution of fluxes is given by environmental correction factors ECF<sub>x,n</sub> calculated from the canopy micro-climates of the  $N$  underlying ecosystems. This formulation assumes a simple homogeneous vertical leaf distribution in ecosystem canopies. Over France, emission potential have been pre calculated by GIS treatment of land cover data base (Corine Land Cover), forest composition data for the main tree species (Inventaire forestier national) and species emission factors collected in the literature. The resulting emission potential maps are given at a resolution of 2km and are then interpolated on the MNH grid (during the prepPGD). The environmental correction factor, which accounts for radiation and vegetation temperature variation effects on emissions is calculated using the surface energy budget (calculated by ISBA) and a simple in canopy radiation transfer scheme (similar as ISBA-Ags) for each of the ecosystem (Forest, shrublands, etc) contained in the model grid cells (cf PATCH approach). More details on the method can be found in Solmon *et al.* (2004).

## Bibliography

- [1] S. Alfaro and L. Gomes. Modeling mineral aerosol production by wind erosion: Emission intensities and aerosol size distributions in source areas. *J. Geophys. Res.*, 106(D16):18075–18084, 2001.
- [2] Dennis D. Baldocchi, Bruce B. Hicks, and Pamela Camara. A canopy stomatal resistance model for gaseous deposition to vegetated surfaces. *Atmos. Environ.*, 21(1):91–101, 1987.
- [3] J. Erisman and D. Baldocchi. Modelling dry deposition of so<sub>2</sub>. *Tellus*, 46B:159–171, 1994.
- [4] B. Marticorena Fecan, F. and G. Bergametti. Parameterization due to the increase of the aeolian erosion threshold wind friction velocity due to soil moisture for arid and semi-arid areas. *Ann. Geophys.*, 17:149–157, 1999.
- [5] L. Ganzeveld and J. Lelieveld. Dry deposition parametrization in a chemistry general circulation model and its influence on the distribution of reactive trace gases. *J. Geophys. Res.*, 100:20999–21012, 1995.
- [6] J. Garrat and B. B. Hicks. Momentum, heat and water vapor transfer to and from natural and artificial surfaces. *Quart. J. Roy. Meteor. Soc.*, 99:680–687, 1973.
- [7] D. A. Gillette and P. A. Goodwin. Microscale transport of sand-sized soil aggregates eroded by wind. *J. Geophys. Res.*, 79:4080–4084, 1974.
- [8] L. Gomes, G. Bergametti, G. Coudé-Gaussen, and P. Rognon. Submicron desert dusts: A sandblasting process. *J. Geophys. Res.*, 95:13927–13935, 1990.
- [9] Alex Guenther, C. Nicholas Hewitt, David Erickson, Ray Fall, Chris Geron, Tom Graedel, Peter Harley, Lee Klinger, Manuel Lerdau, W. A. McKay, Tom Pierce, Bob Scholes, Rainer Steinbrecher, Raja Tallamraju, John Taylor, and Pat Zimmerman. A global model of natural volatile organic compound emissions. *J. Geophys. Res.*, 100(D5):8873–8892, 1995.
- [10] Wildermuth M. Guenther, A. Zimmerman P. Natural volatile organic-compound emission rate estimates for u.s. woodland landscapes. *Atmos. Environ.*, 28(6):1197–1210, 1994.

- [11] B. Hicks, D. Badolcchi, T. Meyers, R. Hoskers, and D. Matt. A preliminary multiple resistance routine for deriving dry deposition velocities from measured quantities. *Water Air Soil Pollu.*, 36:311–330, 1987.
- [12] J. Iversen and B. White. Saltation threshold on earth, mars and venus. *Sedimentol.*, 29:111–119, 1982.
- [13] J. Kondo and H. Yamazawa. Measurement of snow surface emissivity. *Bound. Layer Meteor.*, 34:415–416, 1986.
- [14] B. Laurent, B. Marticorena, G. Bergametti, P. Chazette, F. Maignan, and C. Schmechtig. Simulation of the mineral dust emission frequencies from desert areas of china and mongolia using an aerodynamic roughness length map derived from polder/adeos 1 surface products. *J. Geophys. Res.*, 110:D18S04, 2005.
- [15] B. Marticorena and G. Bergametti. Modeling the atmospheric dust cycle: 1. design of a soil-derived dust emission scheme. *J. Geophys. Res.*, 100(D8):16415–16430, 1995.
- [16] V. Masson. A physically-based scheme for the urban energy budget in atmospheric models. *Bound.-Layer Meteorol.*, 94(3):357–397, March 2000.
- [17] E. C. Monahan, C. W. Fairall, K. L. Davidson, and P. J. Boyle. Observed inter-relations between 10 m winds, ocean whitecaps and marine aerosols. *Q. J. R. Meteorol. Soc.*, 109:379–392, 1983.
- [18] H. Muller, F. Meixner, G. Kramm, D. Fowler, G. J. Dollard, and M. Possanzini. Determination of hno<sub>3</sub> deposition by modified bowen ratio and aerodynamic profile techniques. *Tellus*, 45B:346–367, 1993.
- [19] S.A. Nickling, W.G. & Wolfe. The morphology and origin of nabkhas, region of mopti, mali, west africa. *J. Arid Environ.*, 28:13–30, 1974.
- [20] C. H. B. Priestley. *Turbulent Transfer in the Lower Atmosphere*. The University of Chicago Press, Chicago, IL, 130 pp., 1959.
- [21] M. Schulz, G. de Leeuw, and Y. Balkanski. chapter Sea-salt aerosol source functions and emissions, pages 333–359. Kluwer Academic Publishers, 2004.
- [22] J. H. Seinfeld and S. N. Pandis. *Atmospheric Chemistry and Physics: Air Pollution to Climate*. Wiley, 1997.
- [23] Y. Shao, M. R. Raupach, and P. A. Findlater. Effect of saltation bombardment on the entrainment of dust by wind. *J. Geophys. Res.*, 98(D7):12719–12726, 1993.
- [24] M. Wesely Sheih, C. and B. Hicks. Estimated dry deposition velocities of sulfur over the eastern united states and surrounding regions. *Atmos. Environ.*, 13:1361–1368, 1979.
- [25] Fabien Solmon, Claire Sarrat, Dominique Sera, Pierre Tulet, and Robert Rosset. Isoprene and monoterpenes biogenic emissions in france: modeling and impact during a regional pollution episode. *Atmos. Environ.*, 38(23):3853–3865, July 2004.
- [26] W. A. J. Van Pul and A. F. G. Jacobs. The conductance of a maize crop and the underlying soil to ozone under various environmental conditions. *Bound.-Layer Meteorol.*, 63:83–99, 1994.

- [27] Elisabetta Vignati, Gerrit de Leeuw, and Ruwim Berkowicz. Modeling coastal aerosol transport and effects of surf-produced aerosols on processes in the marine atmospheric boundary layer. *J. Geophys. Res.*, 106(D17):20225–20238, 2001.
- [28] C. Walcek, R. Brost, J. Chang, and M. Wesely. So<sub>2</sub>, sulfate and hno<sub>3</sub> deposition velocities computed using regional landuse and meteorological data. *Atmos. Environ.*, 20:949–964, 1996.
- [29] J. Walmsley and M. Wesely. Modification of coded parametrizations of surface resistances to gaseous dry deposition. *Atmos. Environ.*, 30:1181–1188, 1996.
- [30] M. Wesely. Parametrizations of surface resistance to gaseous dry deposition in regional scale, numerical models. *Atmos. Environ.*, 23:1293–1304, 1989.
- [31] M. L. Wesely and B. B. Hicks. Some factors that affect the deposition rates of sulfur dioxide and similar gases on vegetation. *J. Air. Poll. Control Assoc.*, 27:1110–1116, 1977.
- [32] B. R. White. Soil transport by winds on mars. *J. Geophys. Res.*, 84:4643–4651, 1979.
- [33] C. S. Zender, R. L. Miller, and I. Tegen. Quantifying mineral dust mass budgets: Terminology, constraints, and current estimates. *Eos Trans. AGU*, 85(48):509–512, 2004.
- [34] H. Bian Zender, C. and D. Newman. The mineral dust entrainment and deposition (dead) model: Description and global dust distribution. *J. Geophys. Res.*, 108(D14):4416, 2003.



## **Part II**

# **LAND COVER: ECOCLIMAP**



# Chapter 7

## Introduction

Ecoclimap is a global database of land surface parameters at 1-km resolution. It is intended to be used to initialize the soil-vegetation-atmosphere transfer schemes (SVATs) in meteorological and climate models. A first version was developed in 2003 (Masson *et al.* (2003)). A second version was developed in 2008 on Europe and is implemented into Surfex. Ecoclimap is designed to satisfy both the Surfex "tile" approach: each grid box is made of four adjacent surfaces for nature (NAT), urban areas (TWN), sea or ocean (SEA) and lake (WAT), and the Isba "vegetation types" structure (see tab. 7.1).

<b>ISBA vegetation type (vegtype)</b>	<b>abbreviation</b>
bare soil	NO
bare rock	ROCK
permanent snow	SNOW
deciduous broadleaved	TREE
needleleaved	CONI
evergreen broadleaved	EVER
C3 crops	C3
C4 crops	C4
irrigated crops	IRR
temperate grassland	GRAS
tropical grassland	TROG
wetlands, parks and gardens	PARK

Table 7.1: The 12 ISBA vegetation types

It consists first of a global land cover map at 1/120° resolution that is directly read by Surfex. This map proposes a set of classes (or covers) which represent homogeneous ecosystems. Secondly, Surfex interprets these covers in terms of tiles and vegetation types. Land surface parameters (see tab. 7.2 and tab. 7.3 for the list of parameters) depend on tiles, vegetation types and on covers for some of them. A mechanism of aggregation is used to compute the surface parameters for each grid point, according to the horizontal resolution, by combining land covers defined over the 4 tiles and represented by a fraction of the 12 vegetation types (table 7.1) obtained from the 1km resolution land cover map.

In the first version of Ecoclimap, two hundred and fifteen ecosystems were obtained by combining existing

land cover and climate maps, in addition to using Advanced Very High Resolution Radiometer (AVHRR) satellite data. Then, all surface parameters were derived for each of these ecosystems using lookup tables with the annual cycle of the leaf area index (LAI) being constrained by the AVHRR information. The second version uses more recent existing land cover maps. Moreover, ecosystems are now built through an automatic classification process applied on normalized difference vegetation index (NDVI) seven-years time series from SPOT/VEGETATION satellite data, more precise than AVHRR. Existing land cover maps give starting classes which are split in clusters by the classification process. Then, surface parameters are still derived using lookup tables but the annual cycle of the LAI stems from MODIS satellite data. It's possible to run Surfex with LAI values averaged on available years or to choose one particular year.

<b>surface parameter</b>	<b>abbreviation</b>	associated tile
leaf area index	LAI	nature (monthly)
height of trees	HT	nature
first soil depth	DG1	nature
root depth	ROOT_DEPTH / DG2	nature
total soil depth	GROUND_DEPTH / DG3	nature
town roughness length	Z0_TOWN	town
albedo of roofs, roads, walls	ALB_ROOF, ALB_ROAD, ALB_WALL	town
emissivity of roofs, roads, walls	EMIS_ROOF, EMIS_ROAD, EMIS_WALL	town
heat capacity of roofs, roads, walls (*3 layers)	HC_ROOF*3, HC_ROAD*3, HC_WALL*3	town
thermal conductivity of roofs, roads, walls (*3 layers)	TC_ROOF*3, TC_ROAD*3, TC_WALL*3	town
width of roofs, roads, walls (*3 layers)	D_ROOF*3, D_ROAD*3, D_WALL*3	town
buildings height	BLD_HEIGHT	town
building shape	WALL_O_HOR	town
building fraction	BLD	town
canyons shape	CAN_HW_RATIO	town
anthropogenic sensible heat fluxes due to traffic, due to factory	H_TRAFFIC, H_INDUSTRY	town
anthropogenic latent heat fluxes due to traffic, due to factory	LE_TRAFFIC, LE_INDUSTRY	town
seeding date	SEED	nature
reaping date	REAP	nature
water supply quantity	WATSUP	nature
flag for irrigation	IRRIG	nature
vegetation fraction	VEG	nature (monthly)
dynamical vegetation roughness length	Z0	nature (monthly)
emissivity	EMIS	nature (monthly)
ratio of z0 for momentum and heat	Z0_O_Z0H	nature

Table 7.2: Surface parameters given by Ecoclimap (1/2)

surface parameter	abbreviation	associated tile
near infrared albedo	ALBNIR_VEG	nature
visible albedo	ALBVIS_VEG	nature
UV albedo	ALBUV_VEG	nature
minimum stomatal resistance	RSMIN	nature
coefficient for the calculation of the surface stomatal resistance	GAMMA	nature
coefficient for maximum water interception storage on capacity on the vegetation	WRMAX_CF	nature
maximum solar radiation usable in photosynthesis	RGL	nature
vegetation thermal inertia coefficient	CV	nature
mesophyll conductance	GMES, GMES_ST	nature (AGS)
ecosystem respiration parameter	RE25	nature (AGS)
cuticular conductance	GC, GC_ST	nature (AGS)
critical normalized soil water content for stress parameterisation	F2I	nature (AGS)
ratio d(biomass)/d(LAI)	BSLAI, BSLAI_ST	nature (AGS)
maximum air saturation deficit tolerated by vegetation	DMAX, DMAX_ST	nature (AGS)
vegetation response type to water stress (true: defensive false: offensive)	STRESS	nature (AGS)
e-folding time for senescence	SEFOLD, SEFOLD_ST	nature (AGS)
minimum LAI	LAIMIN	nature (AGS)
leaf area ratio sensitivity to nitrogen concentration	CE_NITRO	nature (AGS)
lethal minimum value of leaf area ratio	CF_NITRO	nature (AGS)
nitrogen concentration of active biomass	CNA_NITRO	nature (AGS)
root extinction	ROOT_EXTINCTION	nature
ponderation coefficient between root fractions formulations	ROOT_LIN	nature
coefficient for SO <sub>2</sub> deposition	SOILRC_SO2	nature
coefficient for O <sub>3</sub> deposition	SOILRC_O3	nature
cumulative root fraction	CUM_ROOT_FRAC	nature
biomass/LAI ratio from nitrogen declin theory	BSL_INIT_NITRO	nature

Table 7.3: Surface parameters given by Ecoclimap (2/2)

# Chapter 8

## Ecoclimap characteristics

### 8.1 Surface parameters definition

Parameters listed in tab. 7.2 and 7.3 are initialized:

- by cover and vegetation types for LAI, HT, DG (3 layers), SEED, REAP, WATSUP, IRRIG. Indeed, these parameters are not only a feature of a given vegetation type but also of regional considerations;
- by vegetation type for other natural parameters. They are thus viewed as depending on the vegetation type only and not on the location;
- by cover for town parameters: the "town" tile is not subdivided in types like the "nature" tile.

Some of the natural parameters receive immediate values whereas others are calculated from some of the former. Tab. 8.1 and tab. 8.2 give modes of obtaining of the natural parameters (lines), by vegetation type (columns). Report to tab. 7.1 to get the meaning of abbreviations of parameters names.

Tab 8.3 delivers values for urban parameters, by type of class. Types of Ecoclimap urban classes come from the Corine Land Cover (CLC) classification that is considered in the two versions of Ecoclimap (see tab. 8.4 for the correspondence).

All these values and formulas date from Ecoclimap-I and come from previous studies. Part of them are mentioned and detailed in Masson *et al.* (2003), other can be found in literature.

### 8.2 Aggregation method

The aggregation of parameters assumes two aspects:

- the aggregation in "patches" of several vegetation types;
- the geographic aggregation linked to the spatial resolution.

Indeed, the Surfex user can choose to work with a number of 1 to 12 patches of vegetation types. Tab. 8.5 gives the combinations of vegetation types according to the retained number of patches: numbers associated to vegetation types (columns) correspond to patches to which they are attached, depending on the total number of patches (lines and left column). The Surfex user also chooses his own spatial resolution whose maximum is this of Ecoclimap:  $1/120^\circ$ . When the chosen resolution is coarser, parameters by grid point take aggregated values from the 1-km ones.

The common method for these two kinds of aggregation is nearly linear, apart from the fact that some particular averages are applied to several parameters (see tab. 8.6 for more details) : contributions of every vegetation type to each gridpoint and each patch are weighted and added, next the total value in one point and one patch is brought back to the total number of contributions, that is the total weight, providing the wanted average value of the parameter. As seen in tab. 8.7, weights vary with parameters, depending on the surface on which they make sense.

### **8.3 Writing of parameters in a latex file**

Distribution of classes among tiles and vegetation types, also values of surface parameters are described in a tex file called *class\_cover\_data.tex*. It can be compiled to get a ps or pdf file that recapitulates all these values in different arrays.

parameter	NO	ROCK	SNOW	TREE	CONI	EVER
LAI	from satellite data by cover and vegetation type					
HT	by cover and vegetation type					
DG1	by cover and vegetation type					
DG2	by cover and vegetation type					
DG3	by cover and vegetation type					
SEED	by cover and vegetation type					
REAP	by cover and vegetation type					
WATSUP	by cover and vegetation type					
IRRIG	by cover and vegetation type					
VEG	0.			0.95	0.95	0.99
GREEN	0.			$MIN(1 - e^{-0.5*LAI}, 0.95)$		0.99
Z0	0.1	1.	0.01	HT	HT	HT
EMIS	$VEG * 0.97 + (1 - VEG) * 0.94$		1.	$VEG * 0.97 + (1 - VEG) * 0.94$		
Z0_O_Z0H	10.					
ALBNIR_VEG	0.3	0.3	0.3	0.25	0.15	0.21
ALBVIS_VEG	0.1	0.1	0.1	0.05	0.05	0.05
ALBUV_VEG	0.06	0.06	0.06	0.525	0.0425	0.038
RSMIN	40.	40.	40.	150.	150.	250.
GAMMA	0.	0.	0.	0.04	0.04	0.04
WRMAXCF	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.1	0.1	0.1
RGL	100.	100.	100.	30.	30.	30.
CV	$2E^{-5}$	$2E^{-5}$	$2E^{-5}$	$1E^{-5}$	$1E^{-5}$	$1E^{-5}$
GMES	0.02	0.02	0.02	0.001	0.001	0.001
GMES_ST	0.003	0.003	0.003	0.003	0.002	0.002
RE25	$3E^{-7}$	$3E^{-7}$	$3E^{-7}$	$3E^{-7}$	$1E^{-7}$	$3E^{-7}$
GC	0.00025	0.00025	0.00025	0.00015	0.	0.00015
GC_ST	0.00015	0.00015	0.00015	0.00015	0.	0.00015
F2I	0.3	0.3	0.3	0.3	0.3	0.3
BSLAI	0.36	0.36	0.36	0.25	0.25	0.25
BSLALST	0.08	0.08	0.08	0.125	0.50	0.25
DMAX	0.1	0.1	0.1	0.1	0.1	0.1
DMAX_ST	0.05	0.05	0.05	0.109	0.124	0.124
STRESS	1.	1.	1.	0.	1.	0.
SEFOLD	90.*XDAY			365.*XDAY		
SEFOLD_ST	150.*XDAY			230*XDAY	365.*XDAY	
LAIMIN	0.3	0.3	0.3	0.3	1.	1.
CE_NITRO	7.68	7.68	7.68	4.83	4.85	4.83
CF_NITRO	-4.33	-4.33	-4.33	2.53	-0.24	2.53
CNA_NITRO	1.3	1.3	1.3	2.	2.8	2.5
ROOT_EXTINCTION	0.961	0.961	0.961	0.966	0.943	0.962
ROOT_LIN	0.05	0.05	0.05	0.05	0.05	0.05
SOILRC_SO2	1000.	400.	100.	500.	500.	200.
SOILRC_O3	400.	200.	3500.	200.	200.	500.
CUM_ROOT_FRAC	$ROOT\_LIN * MIN(\frac{DG}{DG2}, 1.) + (1 - ROOT\_LIN) * \frac{(1 - ROOT\_EXT.)^{DG*100.}}{(1 - ROOT\_EXT.)^{DG2*100.}}$					
BSL_INIT_NITRO	$\frac{1}{SURFACE} * (CE\_NITRO + CNA\_NITRO + CF\_NITRO)$					

Table 8.1: Lookup tables for Ecoclimap natural parameters, by vegetation type (1/2)

parameter	C3	C4	IRR	GRAS	TROG	PARK
LAI	from satellite data by cover and vegetation type					
HT	by cover and vegetation type					
DG1	by cover and vegetation type					
DG2	by cover and vegetation type					
DG3	by cover and vegetation type					
SEED	by cover and vegetation type					
REAP	by cover and vegetation type					
WATSUP	by cover and vegetation type					
IRRIG	by cover and vegetation type					
VEG	$1 - e^{-0.6*LAI}$			0.95	0.95	0.95
GREEN	$1 - e^{-0.6*LAI}$			$MIN(1 - e^{-0.6*LAI}, 0.95)$		
Z0	$MIN(1., e^{(LAI-3.5)/1.3})$	$MIN(2.5, e^{(LAI-3.5)/1.3})$	LAI/6			
EMIS	$VEG * 0.97 + (1 - VEG) * 0.94$					
Z0_O_Z0H	10.					
ALBNIR_VEG	0.3	0.3	0.3	0.3	0.3	0.3
ALBVIS_VEG	0.1	0.1	0.1	0.1	0.1	0.1
ALBUV_VEG	0.06	0.06	0.045	0.08	0.125	0.045
RSMIN	40.	120.	40.	40.	120.	40.
GAMMA	0.	0.	0.	0.	0.	0.
WRMAXCF	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2
RGL	100.	100.	100.	100.	100.	100.
CV	$2E^{-5}$	$2E^{-5}$	$2E^{-5}$	$2E^{-5}$	$2E^{-5}$	$2E^{-5}$
GMES	0.003	0.003	0.003	0.02	0.02	0.02
GMES_ST	0.001	0.009	0.009	0.001	0.006	0.006
RE25	$3E^{-7}$	$2.5E^{-7}$	$3E^{-7}$	$3E^{-7}$	$3E^{-7}$	$3E^{-7}$
GC	0.00025	0.00025	0.00025	0.00025	0.00025	0.00025
GC_ST	0.00025	0.00015	0.00015	0.00025	0.00015	0.00025
F2I	0.3	0.3	0.3	0.3	0.3	0.3
BSLAI	0.06	0.06	0.06	0.36	0.36	0.36
BSLALST	0.06	0.06	0.06	0.08	0.08	0.08
DMAX	0.1	0.1	0.1	0.1	0.1	0.1
DMAX_ST	0.05	0.033	0.033	0.05	0.052	0.05
STRESS	1.	0.	1.	0.	0.	0.
SEFOLD	60.*XDAY			90.*XDAY		
SEFOLD_ST	150.*XDAY					
LAIMIN	0.3	0.3	0.3	0.3	0.3	0.3
CE_NITRO	3.79	7.68	7.68	5.56	7.68	5.56
CF_NITRO	9.84	-4.33	-4.33	6.73	-4.33	6.73
CNA_NITRO	1.3	1.9	1.9	1.3	1.3	1.3
ROOT_EXTINCTION	0.961	0.972	0.961	0.943	0.972	0.943
ROOT_LIN	0.05	0.05	0.05	0.05	0.5	0.5
SOILRC_SO2	150.	150.	0.001	350.	350.	100.
SOILRC_O3	150.	150.	1000.	200.	200.	700.
CUM_ROOT_FRAC	$ROOT\_LIN * MIN(\frac{DG}{DG2}, 1.) + (1 - ROOT\_LIN) * \frac{(1 - ROOT\_EXT.)^{DG*100.}}{(1 - ROOT\_EXT.)^{DG2*100.}}$					
BSL_INIT_NITRO	$\frac{1}{SURFEX} * (\frac{CE\_NITRO}{2} + CNA\_NITRO + CF\_NITRO)$					

Table 8.2: Lookup tables for Ecoclimap natural parameters, by vegetation type (2/2)

parameter	151	152	155	156	157	158	159	160	161
ALB_ROOF	0.15								
ALB_ROAD	0.25								
ALB_WALL	0.08								
EMIS_ROOF	0.90								
EMIS_ROAD	0.94								
EMIS_WALL	0.85								
HC_ROOF(1)	$2.11E^6$								
HC_ROOF(2)	$0.28E^6$								
HC_ROOF(3)	$0.29E^6$								
HC_ROAD(1)	$1.94E^6$								
HC_ROAD(2)	$1.28E^6$								
HC_ROAD(3)	$1.28E^6$								
HC_WALL(1)	$1.55E^6$								
HC_WALL(2)	$1.55E^6$								
HC_WALL(3)	$0.29E^6$								
TC_ROOF(1)	1.51								
TC_ROOF(2)	0.08								
TC_ROOF(3)	0.05								
TC_ROAD(1)	0.7454								
TC_ROAD(2)	0.2513								
TC_ROAD(3)	0.2513								
TC_WALL(1)	0.9338								
TC_WALL(2)	0.9338								
TC_WALL(3)	0.05								
D_ROOF(1)	0.05								
D_ROOF(2)	0.4								
D_ROOF(3)	0.1								
D_ROAD(1)	0.05								
D_ROAD(2)	0.1								
D_ROAD(3)	1.								
D_WALL(1)	0.02								
D_WALL(2)	0.125								
D_WALL(3)	0.05								
Z0_TOWN	3.	1.	2.	0.5	2.	0.01	0.1	0.5	1.
BLD_HEIGHT	30.	10.	20.	5.	20.	10.	5.	5.	10.
WALL_O_HOR	1.	0.5	0.5	0.5	1.	0.5	0.5	0.5	1.
BLD	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.1	0.5	0.1	0.1	0.1	0.5
CAN_HW_RATIO	$0.5 * \frac{WALL\_O\_HOR}{1-BLD}$								
H_TRAFFIC	20	10.	10.	30.	10.	10.	0.	0.	0.
H_INDUSTRY	10.	5.	20.	0.	20.	0.	0.	0.	0.
LE_TRAFFIC	0.	0.	0.	0.	0.	0.	0.	0.	0.
LE_INDUSTRY	0.	0.	0.	0.	0.	0.	0.	0.	0.

Table 8.3: Lookup tables for Ecoclimap urban parameters, by cover

cover name	cover(s) number(s)
dense urban	151
suburban	152,153,154,7
industries and commercial areas	155
road and rail networks	156
port facilities	157
airport	158
mineral extraction and construction sites	159
urban parks	160
sport facilities	161

Table 8.4: Ecoclimap covers numbers for urban classes

patches	NO	ROCK	SNOW	TREE	CONI	EVER	C3	C4	IRR	GRAS	TROG	PARK
<b>1</b>	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
<b>2</b>	1	1	1	2	2	2	1	1	1	1	1	1
<b>3</b>	1	1	1	2	2	2	3	3	3	3	3	3
<b>4</b>	1	1	1	2	2	2	3	3	3	4	4	4
<b>5</b>	1	1	1	2	2	2	3	3	4	5	5	4
<b>6</b>	1	1	1	2	2	2	3	3	4	5	5	6
<b>7</b>	1	1	2	3	3	3	4	4	5	6	6	7
<b>8</b>	1	1	2	3	3	3	4	5	6	7	7	8
<b>9</b>	1	1	2	3	4	3	5	6	7	8	8	9
<b>10</b>	1	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	9	10
<b>11</b>	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	10	11
<b>12</b>	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12

Table 8.5: Combinations of vegetation types according to the retained number of patches in Surfex

averaging type	name	added element	averaging	affected parameters
ARI	arithmetic	$X$	$\Sigma/\Gamma$	every but...
INV	inverse	$1./X$	$\Gamma/\Sigma$	RSMIN, CV, HC_ROOF, HC_ROAD, HC_WALL
CDN	inverse of square logarithm	$1./LN(DZ/X)^2$ with $DZ$ height of the first model mass level if available and 20m otherwise	$DZ * e^{-\sqrt{\Gamma/\Sigma}}$	Z0, Z0_TOWN
MAJ	dominant date	no addition: the most frequently occurrent date is selected	none	SEED, REAP

Table 8.6: Averaging types and associated parameters in Ecoclimap.  $X$  is a single value of the parameter to average;  $\Sigma$  represents the total of the added weighted elements;  $\Gamma$  represents the total weight of the added weighted elements.

type of weight	name	value	associated parameters
ALL	all	1.	fractions of tiles NAT,TWN,SEA,WAT
NAT	nature	fraction of tile "nature" (* fraction of added vegtype)	fractions of vegtypes, VEG, Z0, Z0_O_Z0H, EMIS, DG, CUM_ROOT_FRAC, RE25
TRE	tree	fraction of tile "nature" * (either) fraction of vegtype TREE *(or) fraction of vegtype CONI *(or) fraction of vegtype EVER (non-zero only for trees vegtypes)	HT, DMAX_ST, DMAX
LAI	LAI	fraction of tile "nature" * fraction of added vegtype * associated LAI value	RSMIN
VEG	fraction of vegetation	fraction of tile "nature" * fraction of added vegtype * associated VEG value	all remaining natural parameters
TWN	town	fraction of tile "town"	every town parameter but...
BLD	building	fraction of tile "town" * fraction of building BLD	ALB_ROOF, EMIS_ROOF, HC_ROOF, TC_ROOF, D_ROOF, ALB_WALL, EMIS_WALL, HC_WALL, TC_WALL, D_WALL, WALL_O_HOR
STR	street	fraction of tile "town" * (1.-fraction of building BLD)	ALB_ROAD, EMIS_ROAD, HC_ROAD, TC_ROAD, D_ROAD

Table 8.7: Weighting functions and associated parameters in Ecoclimap. Parenthesis indications in the "value" column refer to what happens in case of calculation defined by patch, ie for all natural parameters but neither for the fractions of tiles and vegetation types nor for the town parameters.



# Chapter 9

## Ecoclimap-II realization

Ecoclimap-II has been developed on a European field. Its limits are 11W and 62E in longitude and 25N and 75N in latitude.

### 9.1 The Ecoclimap-II map

#### 9.1.1 The initial map

Existing land cover maps taken into account in this development are:

- Global Land Cover 2000 (GLC2000)<sup>1</sup>;
- Corine Land Cover 2000 (CLC2000)<sup>2</sup>;

GLC2000 was built from daily SPOT/VEGETATION satellite data for year 2000 (dataset VEGA2000). The spatial resolution is  $1/112^\circ$  (corresponding to  $\sim 1.1\text{km}$ ) and the projection is latlon. Several regional maps and a global map of 23 classes exist. The latter global map is taken as a basis and classes from available regional maps are added when relevant.

Then, CLC2000 covers only a part of the domain (political Europe) and includes 44 classes. It was realized by photo-interpretation of SPOT and LANDSAT satellite images. The projection is Lambert's azimuthal equivalent and the resolution is 100m. In order to fit Ecoclimap, Corine data are reprojected and brought back to the same resolution. In these conditions, the Corine class number attributed to the pixel at 1-km resolution is this of the most numerous class into the pixel. It's decided to introduce majority classes at more than 70% in the map under construction. It happens that 55% of Corine pixels are kept by this way. So-obtained Corine pixels have priority on GLC information because their contents is better known and supposed to characterize more homogeneous ecosystems.

The resulting map comprises classes from several origins and potentially complementary: their headings and geographic distribution give indications to melt some of them. After a couple of such combinations, a 76-covers map (called **C76** from now on) is finally obtained on the considered area. This map is the reference used for the further classification process. It's thus a mix of GLC2000 and CLC2000.

---

<sup>1</sup><http://www-gvm.jrc.it/glc2000>

<sup>2</sup><http://www.ifen.fr>, <http://www.eea.eu.int>

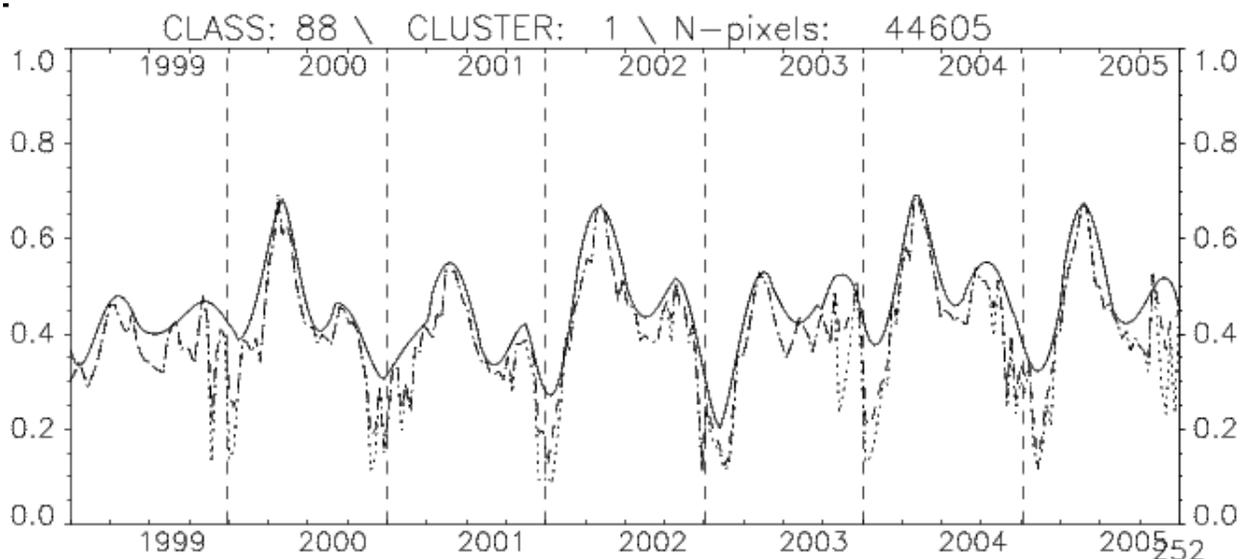


Figure 9.1: Example of NDVI profiles: rough (dotted), masked (dashed), smoothed (solid). (A technical error led to NDVI values overestimated of 0.09 but it has no impact on classification which is relative).

### 9.1.2 NDVI satellite data

NDVI is deduced from B2 (red) and B3 (near infrared) satellite normalized reflectances (ratios of the reflected over the incoming radiation in each spectral band) according to the formula:

$$NDVI = \frac{B3 - B2}{B3 + B2} \quad (1)$$

This rate usually ranges from 0 to 1. Negative values indicate the presence of snow. Works have shown a correlation between NDVI values and the vegetation photosynthesis activity. The LAI and NDVI annual cycles are supposed to be correlated. In Ecoclimap-I, LAI profiles by cover were obtained from NDVI through the formula:

$$LAI(t) = LAI_{min} + (LAI_{max} - LAI_{min}) * \frac{NDVI(t) - NDVI_{min}}{NDVI_{max} - NDVI_{min}} \quad (2)$$

$LAI_{min}$  and  $LAI_{max}$  being set from in-situ measurements or empirically following ISBA simulations. Then, LAI profiles by vegetation types (inside covers) are deduced from these LAI by cover thanks to simple rules, mostly by changing extreme values of the cycle ( $LAI_{min}$  and  $LAI_{max}$ ) depending on the vegetation height in the formula (2), sometimes looking for "pure" near "mixte" covers and giving "pure" LAI to vegetation types in mixte covers. Note that for the NO, ROCK and SNOW vegetation types LAI profiles are equal to zero.

In Ecoclimap-II, NDVI satellite data come from SPOT/VEGETATION<sup>3</sup>. They are decadal, at true 1-km resolution, that is to say that, contrary to AVHRR, one pixel signal is theoretically not contaminated by pixels around. Data range from 1999, january to 2005, december.

They are delivered with a mask encoded on 8 bits: 2 bits represent the situations: clear sky, shadow, uncertain, cloud; 1 bit for snow and ice, 1 bit for the land sea mask, and the 4 last bits for the quality of the 4

<sup>3</sup><http://free.vgt.vito.be/>, <http://www.spot.vegetation.com>

satellite radiometric bands. This mask is applied in order to keep clear sky pixels for which the quality of bands B2 (red) and B3 (near infrared) is good. The land/sea/snow distinction is set by to the classification. The plots of NDVI mean profiles for the covers of the C76 map show that data, even if cleared from aberrant values by the mask, remain noisy. That's why a smoothing is realized at the upper envelope of the rough curve because highest values are supposed better because atmospheric parameters (clouds, water vapor, aerosols) are likely to attenuate the signal reflected to the satellite. Anyway the work on NDVI time series is relative and the exact NDVI values don't matter. The smoothing is based on a 4-degree polynomial. The figure 9.1 shows effects of the mask and smoothing on the mean NDVI signal for a given class. The distance between the rough and the smoothed curves is relative to this mean: the smoothing is done pixel by pixel, filtering out low values entering the mean in the rough case.

### 9.1.3 The automatic classification process

The classification algorithm is **k-means**. It consists in reading the NDVI profiles of all pixels of one class, then of gathering closest profiles according to the Euclidian distance. Initial center-profiles of clusters are randomly defined and successive iterations are performed: each pixel is linked to the most like-looking center-profile; centers of clusters are recalculated; pixels are linked to the most like-looking center-profile again, and so on. It's thus necessary to fix from the beginning the number of wished clusters by class.

A first map is realized by setting high numbers of clusters by classes, then looking at NDVI profiles and geographic positions of the clusters, and setting new lower numbers of clusters, until a satisfying classification is obtained. This first map comprises 464 classes and is called **C464**.

However, for practical purposes, this method poses several problems:

- When each class of C76 is split into several clusters, the total number of classes increases very fast, rendering reading, interpretation and processing hard;
- it boils down to consider initial classes as frozen and separated each from one another, what can prove false, notably with various initial maps;
- the continuity of analysis is compromised and the quality of NDVI as classification criterion is hard to evaluate. Moreover, numbers of clusters have no option but being arbitrarily posed.

Owing to all these reasons, NDVI is no longer used as a secondary classification criterion: it's admitted that it can rival the initial C76 classes boundaries. Moreover, three quantities are now taken into account during the NDVI classification:

- the Euclidian distance between profiles (still);
- the correlation between profiles, focusing on the shapes of profiles;
- a criterion mixing the two precedents:  $\frac{\text{euclidian distance}}{\text{correlation}^2}$ , outlining the shapes of profiles without neglecting the distance between them.

The principle is to gather profiles using a threshold for one or the other of the latter criterions. Other conditions come then into the picture:

- the size of classes: for example, the threshold is looser for smaller classes, in order not to encourage the formation of low pixels number classes;
- the NDVI maximum: as NDVI is the expression of vegetation activity, it's not relevant with low-vegetated areas, also low NDVI maximum areas;

- the cover type: water, town and bare soil pixels can't be distinguished through the NDVI, they have to conform the initial nomenclature.

Lastly, comparisons are conducted:

- between profiles of clusters and classes they come from: if the cluster is closer to another class than the one it comes from, it can be linked to the former class;
- families of classes are formed, then splitted in a number of clusters equal to the number of classes constituting them, through the automatic classification. Clusters obtained by this totally automatic means are compared to initial classes, in order to verify the robustness of the first method through its consistency with the second one.

At each step, the geographic position, the contents of classes according to the initial nomenclature, NDVI profiles and standard deviations are observed. These operations allow a better approach of the NDVI time series, adapting to the different types of covers and ensuring more mixing and flexibility than if initial boundaries between classes were perfectly respected and if the strict k-means method was applied. At this point, the map under construction comprises 257 classes and is called **C257**.

#### 9.1.4 To the resulting map

Several means are added to complete the new map realization:

- C257 is compared with the map realized by purely respecting the classes boundaries, C464. Every class of each map is splitted into 5 clusters through the automatic classification. The distance, the correlation and the standard deviation between each cluster and its mother-class are calculated. Maximum, minimum and median of these quantities are compared for C257 and C464. Results are equivalent whereas the total numbers of classes clearly vary between the two maps.
- C257 is compared to C76. C76 covers are grouped into 14 general types, close to ISBA vegetation types. Then, each C257 class is divided in its contributions to the latter 14 types. Associated NDVI profiles are plotted; geographic distribution of so-obtained clusters is also examined. These operations aim at verifying that mixing of initial classes produce consistent and acceptable results. First, given the high resemblance of NDVI profiles of some classes, pixels from a class corresponding to a type (among the 14) that is neither its first nor its second prevailing are moved to a class where the considered type prevails, provided that the resemblance between the two classes is sufficient (on NDVI profiles). The  $\frac{distance}{correlation^2}$  criterion is used with a threshold: the moving occurs if the criterion is lower than 1., provided that the correlation is positive and higher than 0.9. This operation allows to considerably reduce the distance between C76 and C257 in terms of nomenclature. It's also verified that geographically gathered parts of land are not contradictory. Results are satisfying. Lastly, on a case by case basis, couple of last reshapings are done. The C257 map becomes at this point **C271** (with 271 classes).
- NDVI profiles are plotted for only part of the pixels of classes. They are plotted for french pixels and on several specialized classes coming from CLC2000: vineyards, orchards, rice fields, olive groves. The goal is to check that those pixels, often melted in larger classes, haven't a very particular behaviour that would have been flooded during the classification. This process leads to add still 2 classes of vineyards. The final resulting map comprises 273 classes and is called **C273**.

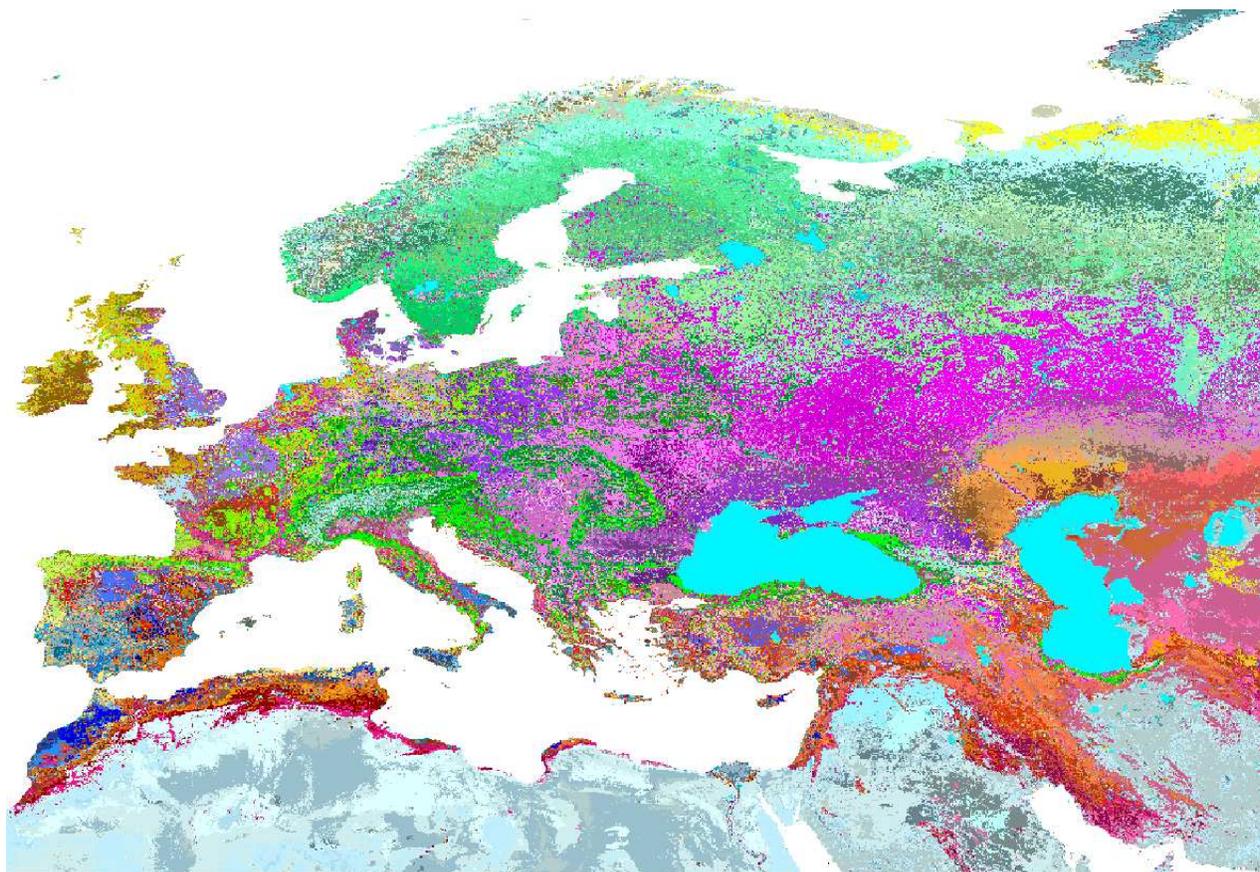


Figure 9.2: Ecoclimap-II C273 map on Europe (one color by class) (latlon projection)

To conclude, the Ecoclimap-II map comprises 273 classes (see fig. 9.2 for an illustration). The classification process combines both an automatic k-means algorithm on NDVI seven-years time series from SPOT/VGT and a more or less leaning constraint provided by an initial map built from existing land cover maps that are CLC2000 and GLC2000. The nomenclature of this map serves to contain the automatic classification and avoid the emergence of incoherent classes.

Note also that the use of seven-years time series data induces that the inter-annual variability is taken into account during the classification process.

### 9.1.5 Short description of covers

To summarize, it can be said that:

- Distribution of forests over the domain is quite linear and progressive, either on the geographic or on the NDVI profiles sides. The evolution follows a north-east to south-west axis.
- Crops are very regionalized, in areas with well-marked outlines; they doesn't seem to follow a strictly natural logic. Indeed, the human intervention plays a role for these kinds of covers.
- Distribution of shrubs and meadows is intermediate between forests and crops.
- Concerning bare land, snow, inland water and urban areas, resulting classes are very close to those of the initial map C76. Indeed, the NDVI classification doesn't allow to discriminate such types of

covers. However, the analysis of NDVI profiles is efficient to separate pure pixels from mixed ones, and to classify areas functions of the vegetation part of mixed ones. Nevertheless, maintaining such distinctions generates a very important amount of classes. That's why only few of these nuances are really integrated in C273, much with bare land and snow, just a little with inland water, not at all with urban areas. It could be interesting in the future to study the relevance of such distinctions.

Generally, ecosystems are rather homogeneous on large areas in the north continental, and very mixed in the mediterranean perimeter.

For practical purposes, it can be noted that classes are numbered from 301 to 573; sea and oceans present in the European domain take the number 1 from Ecoclimap-I.

## 9.2 Translation of covers in tiles and vegetation types

The next step is to define every new cover as a linear combination of the 4 tiles (types of surface) and the 12 vegetation types (inside the "nature" tile). The available sources are following:

- (a) Nomenclatures at 1-km resolution from CLC2000, GLC2000 (world, Europe, North Eurasia, Asia, Africa), Ecoclimap-I, C76 (initial map for the classification, see 9.1.1);
- (a)' The nomenclature at 100m resolution from CLC2000;
- (b) Agricultural statistics from Agreste on France, expressed in hectares, available department by department, since 1989. They comprise details about the types of crops;
- (c) a global map about the distribution of C4 vegetation, at 1-degree resolution, provided within the framework of ISLSCP2 and dating from 2003;
- (d) estimates of farm produce by european state, from the FAO;
- (e) data on the maize production by european country in 2003, available on website Maïsadour, in thousands of hectares.

The method is then the following:

- (a) each Ecoclimap-II cover is broken up among classes of considered other maps. Percentages of representation of the second in the first are listed and associated to the titles of the corresponding nomenclatures. The total percentage of the Ecoclimap-II cover in the considered map is indicated (in the case of Corine and GLC regional tiles, only a part of the domain is concerned).
- (b) For AGRESTE, department by department, quantities of forests, meadows, C3 crops, C4 crops, permanent crops and other types of covers are calculated. Values are averaged on the 1999-2006 spell of time. Resulting curves are plotted and overlain with the associated Ecoclimap-II curves, functions of the way of repartition of the covers in the 12 vegetation types.
- (c) The Ecoclimap-II C4 map is resampled at 1-degree resolution in order to compare with the ISLSCP2 map.
- (d) (e) The FAO and Maïsadour estimates haven't been exploited yet.

If the class is included in the CORINE area at more than 50%, the CORINE 100-m information is favoured, instead of 1-km nomenclatures. Amounts of C4, C3, meadows, forests, permanent crops are calibrated thanks to the AGRESTE curves, for well-represented classes on France. The ISLSCP2 map allows to give an idea about the C4 distribution outside France. Note that Agreste provides informations on irrigated surfaces that haven't been exploited yet.

### 9.3 Initialization of LAI profiles and other parameters

In Ecoclimap, as seen in tab. 8.1 and tab. 8.2, several parameters are initialized at the cover level.

#### 9.3.1 Initialization of heights of trees, ground depths, irrigation and town parameters

First of them, heights of trees are set by using Ecoclimap-I values and the compositions of Ecoclimap-II covers into other nomenclatures (GLC, CLC, Ecoclimap-I). Concerning shrubs classes, a distinction is done between meadows and low-level trees.

Then, the ground depths are set by using exclusively the Ecoclimap-I information, the only available.

These two last parameters would gain by benefiting from other sources of information.

Then, the vegetation type "irrigated crops" is arbitrarily considered as composed of C4 crops only. In Surfex, the modelling of irrigation passes by four parameters (cf tab. 7.2): SEED, REAP, WATSUP and IRRIG. In Ecoclimap-I, by default these variables take constant values that are respectively: 10/05, 01/08, 30 and 1. In Ecoclimap-II, these default values are kept and defined as soon as the "irrigated crops" fraction is not null. It would be worth leaning on these values and precise them according to the classes.

Lastly, town parameters don't change in Ecoclimap-II: Ecoclimap urban classes are the same in the two versions and come directly from the CLC nomenclature.

#### 9.3.2 Initialization of LAI

The LAI (Leaf Area Index) is defined as the ratio of total upper leaf (or needle) surface of vegetation divided by the surface area of the land on which the vegetation grows. The effective LAI seen by the satellite is not the same as the in-situ LAI used by ISBA: the latter is measured on the whole thickness of the vegetation whereas the satellite sees only the top of canopy and deduces the LAI by more or less performing algorithms. It notably often causes saturations for high LAI.

##### LAI by cover

Two satellite LAI have been examined for Ecoclimap-II: CYCLOPES (SPOT/VEGETATION) and MODIS. Algorithms leading from the satellite bands to the LAI are complex. Land cover maps are included, and the 7 satellite bands (in the case of SPOT) are used. CYCLOPES data range from 2000, January to 2004, December; MODIS data from 2000, March to 2006, December. As for the NDVI (see 9.1.2), a smoothing by pixel at the upper envelop of the LAI profiles is performed. This smoothing is debatable because it makes average LAI values by class very higher than these of rough LAI.

MODIS LAI, CYCLOPES LAI and SPOT/VGT NDVI are plotted by cover so as to be compared. The three products are quite correlated, but MODIS LAI values tend to be higher on forests. Given that MODIS LAI time series are longer and that higher values on forests seem more realistic, MODIS LAI are kept for Ecoclimap-II. Nonetheless, preconceptions relative to the smoothing could lead in the future to review this LAI and its range of values in particular, all the more because tests of smoothing with varying parameters give clearly different results.

Moreover, there is a mask with MODIS data that distinguishes not classed data, built areas, wetlands and marshes, permanent snow, ice and tundra, bare soil or sparse vegetation areas, inland water, missing data. These masked values can be interpolated in the time series, excluded or replaced by zero during the smoothing. It happens that missing data are very numerous at the end of 2000 and 2001, particularly for northern and continental classes. That's why, finally, LAI times series are kept only from 2002, January, in order not to damage average on all years. It appears necessary to replace masked values because of snow, bare soil or water by zero, since LAI are otherwise not realistic (what is seen during the disaggregation coming next). On the contrary, missing and not classed values are interpolated in the limit of 4 successive decades, but those which are not interpolated are ignored during the calculation of means by cover (acceptable insofar as they are not predominant).

### Disaggregation of LAI by vegtype inside covers

vegtype	fraction of vegetation type									
	90-100%	80-90%	70-80%	60-70%	50-60%	40-50%	30-40%	20-30%	10-20%	0-10%
CONI	0	6	3	1	3	2	4	4	13	65
TREE	0	2	0	0	1	2	3	6	26	60
EVER	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
GRAS	0	1	4	2	7	10	14	16	17	29
TROG	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	100
PARK	9	2	0	0	2	0	2	0	3	83
C3	0	1	5	9	9	5	9	5	13	45
C4	0	0	1	1	0	1	0	0	2	95
IRR	0	3	5	3	0	2	3	2	2	81
SNOW	50	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	50
NO	3	2	3	4	6	8	6	11	22	35
ROCK	2	0	0	0	0	0	1	5	7	85
total	1	2	3	2	4	4	6	7	15	57

Table 9.1: Percentages of classes (calculated functions of the total numbers of classes by vegetation type) concerned by the fraction (columns) of each of the 12 vegetation types (lines)

<b>nb of vegtypes or tiles n</b>	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
<b>nb of classes (vegtypes)</b>	13	6	19	44	45	72	44	23	6
<b>nb de classes (tiles)</b>	126	94	53	0	/	/	/	/	/

Table 9.2: Number of classes comprising n vegetation types (second line) or n tiles (third line)

Remains to determine LAI by vegtype inside covers from LAI by cover. Given the complexity of classes in terms of vegetation types composition (see tab. 9.1 and tab. 9.2), an automatic LAI disaggregation technique is welcome. The principle of the applied method is the following:

- LAI 5-years profiles by cover are averaged in order to obtain the annual mean cycles.
- LAI from vegetation types NO, ROCK and SNOW are supposed null and constant.

- In each class, the main vegetation type is put apart. For each of the minority vegetation types, the LAI profile the closest according to the  $\frac{distance}{correlation^2}$  criterion is searched, provided that it corresponds to a class where this vegetation type is majority.
- The profile found is taken from the profile of the initial class, weighted by its representation fraction into the class.
- One all minority vegetation types of the classes are thus processed, residual profiles of classes are obtained. Divided by the inverse of the fraction of the majority vegetation type, they are admitted to represent the pure majority profiles, in the classes.
- The whole operation is repeated, replacing initial classes profiles by the previously obtained pure profiles.
- A new set of pure profiles results, for majority vegetation types of classes. Plotting shows that the three profiles, initial (mixte), pure (first estimate), pure (second estimate) differ not much from one another.
- Lastly, 5-years LAI profiles are built by propagating the error between years and the average on the obtained pure profiles.

This method presents two problems:

- The seeking of approached classes only relies on profiles and not on the geographic localisation. Associations of classes coming from totally different climate areas are so expectable.
- The technique of subtracting the secondary profiles to deduce the main profile might produce negative LAI.

The first problem is corrected by introducing two climate maps (Firs on Europe, Koeppel et de Lond on the rest of the world). In the algorithm above, climate proximity is now favoured with the seeking beginning in the most represented climate area, next the second, etc. The second problem is solved by excluding a profile if its subtraction give negative values of LAI. If no suitable profile is found, this which gives the less negative values is linearly transformed in order to keep values just over zero.

This method presents the advantages that it relies only on the LAI profiles of covers, and doesn't create theoretical profiles. It's fast and simple (the longer step is to verify the spatial coherence of the origins of majority and minority profiles) and can be reprocessed in case of modifications of the distribution of classes among the 12 vegetation types. It ensures to diversify vegetation types profiles inside covers and guarantees the exact reconstitution of LAI covers profiles. However, it should be evaluated if the initial approximation between the cover profile and the main vegetation type profile doesn't produce too much bias in the definition of supposed pure profiles. But before, MODIS LAI also need to be validated.

## 9.4 Study of the discontinuity at the limits of the domain

For practical purposes, if the work area overflows the Ecoclimap-II domain, C273 is completed at its edges by Ecoclimap-I. First, north and major part of west of the domain, there is nearly only sea and ocean (apart from in New-Zemble, but the snow class Ecoclimap-II continues there in the snow class Ecoclimap-I). South and a little west, the boundary is located in the Sahara desert. Except from a possible discontinuity between

bare rock and bare soil, and between very sparse vegetated and desert areas, the impact is so minor. Remains the East to study: from northern Russian tundra to Central Asia deserts, by Russian forests, it's about quite homogeneous areas organized with latitude, what already dulls the discontinuity.

Classes, LAI by class and by vegetation type and vegetation types fractions on both sides are compared. Ecoclimap-II classes generally continue in Ecoclimap-I classes. LAI and fractions are often different, but these discrepancies are rarely enormous.

It's so chosen to begin tests with the straight discontinuity. Then, if the delimitation is too obvious, it will be possible to contemplate a version with a smoothed (but artificial) delimitation.

## Chapter 10

# Validation elements for Ecoclimap-II

Validation aspects relate to three fields:

- Ecoclimap-II new map has already been quite examined during the processing, through comparisons with other existing land cover maps (GLC, CLC, Ecoclimap-I - see 9.1.3 and 9.1.4). Other tests could be performed, for example a comparison with GlobCover, a global land cover map for the year 2005-2006 using ENVISAT MERIS fine resolution (300m) data, developed by ESA (European Spatial Agency) and distributed by Medias-France.
- Vegetation types fractions have been set in the light of existing land cover map nomenclatures. Other comparisons have been realized with AGRESTE and ISLSCP2 to calibrate values, but also a posteriori with Formosat on a square of 60km at the south-west of Toulouse, France. Formosat describes the land cover, year by year, on this area; the resolution is 20m. This map is produced by the CESBIO<sup>1</sup>. This last comparison gives encouraging results but also reveals the difficulty of different sources to agree: sources are sometimes contradictory, their characteristics and the geographic precision vary and are not necessarily easy to compare. However, the progressive use of more recent sources should allow to still refine this definition. Concerning specialized vegetation types that are C4 crops, tropical grassland, irrigated crops, a lack of homogeneity inside the covers doesn't allow to get precise fractions. It could be interesting to make a potential new map with covers built by introducing entering informations about such characteristics.
- Difficulties have been met to validate other parameters initialized at the cover level: heights of trees, ground depths, LAI profiles and irrigation parameters. Indeed, complete and reliable sources aren't available. A prospect for the following is thus to find means of validating these quantities. Note again that the organization by covers yields a constraint (especially for irrigation) whose reliance could also be interrogated in the light of such new validating data.

---

<sup>1</sup>Centre d'Etudes Spatiales de la Biosphere (spatial study of the biosphere center)



# Chapter 11

## Conclusion

Ecoclimap-II keeps the same general structure as Ecoclimap-I but several points have changed:

- The new covers rely on a k-means automatic classification process and on recent existing land cover maps (GLC2000, CLC2000);
- The vegetation types fractions and other cover-based parameters are consequently re-initialized, with help from several information sources (AGRESTE, ISLSCP2, land cover maps nomenclatures);
- The LAI profiles by cover come from MODIS satellite data, they are smoothed pixel by pixel;
- The LAI profiles by vegetation type inside covers are built through an original automatic disaggregation process in which only LAI profiles by cover step in;
- LAI profiles are available for the average of 5 years (2002-2006) or for each of these years.

Except from these discrepancies, other surface parameters are still likewise obtained. The geographic and by patch aggregation also remains. Several comparisons with other products have already been done but Ecoclimap-II now needs to be used in order to better qualify improvements and wastes in relation with the first version. Further evolution of the database is considered functions of users returns and of potential newly available validation data.

## Bibliography

- [1] Valry Masson, Jean-Louis Champeaux, Fabrice Chauvin, Christelle Meriguet, and Roselyne Lacaze. A global database of land surface parameters at 1-km resolution in meteorological and climate models. *J. Clim.*, 16(9):1261–1282, 2003.



## **Part III**

# **LAND SURFACE ANALYSIS**



# Chapter 12

## Extended Kalman Filter

### Contents

---

<b>12.1 Introduction</b>	<b>227</b>
<b>12.2 Source code - creation of the binary</b>	<b>227</b>
<b>12.3 The EKF scheme</b>	<b>228</b>
<b>12.4 The namelist</b>	<b>229</b>
<b>12.5 Link with EKF equations</b>	<b>230</b>
<b>12.6 Run script</b>	<b>231</b>
<b>12.7 Management of dates</b>	<b>232</b>
<b>12.8 Directory structure</b>	<b>232</b>
<b>12.9 Matrix inversion using Cholesky decomposition</b>	<b>233</b>
12.9.1 Introduction	236
12.9.2 Extended Kalman filter without patches	236
12.9.3 Extended Kalman Filter with patches	236
12.9.4 Conclusion	237

---

### 12.1 Introduction

The present description is based on the offline version of SURFEX v4.8 that runs on PC. One assumes that this version is currently running on your computer, if not, the first step is to install such version before trying to use the LDAS scheme.

### 12.2 Source code - creation of the binary

The source code has been provided to you in a tar file `SURFEX-EKF-SRC.tar`. You should untar the directories `VARASSIM` and `MYSRC` under the directory `$SURFEX_EXPORT/src`. Once it is done you will have in the directory `VARASSIM` the following files :

- `varassim.f90` : main program that performs the various steps of the assimilation : definition of initial perturbed states, reading of fields from SURFEX outputs, writing of fields necessary for the analysis, and finally the surface analysis.

- `choldc.f90` : Cholesky decomposition (part I)
- `cholsl.f90` : Cholesky decomposition (part II)
- `inverse_matrix.f90` : explicit computation of an inverse matrix after Cholesky decomposition.
- `trans_chaine.f90` : Transformation of an integer into a character .
- `get_file_name.f90` : gets the name of files for the current assimilation window.

In order to compile these routines and to get an executable VARASSIM, the file `Makefile.SURFEX.mk` (provided in the tar file) contains the following sequence of instructions :

```
#####
# Source VARASSIM #
#####
DIR_VARASSIM += VARASSIM
ifdef DIR_VARASSIM
DIR_SOURCE += $(DIR_VARASSIM)
endif
```

In the variable `PROG_LIST` defining the various main programs to be generated, VARASSIM has been added. You can then type `make` in order to generate the LDAS executable, to be located in the directory `$(SURFEX_EXPORT)/src/exe` (which is also where the other executables : PGD, PREP and OFFLINE are).

### 12.3 The EKF scheme

The tar file `SURFEX-EKF.tar.gz` contains a sample of all the required data and scripts to run the SURFEX-EKF LDAS. First, you need to have all the required data to run a "normal" SURFEX integration : a file of *initial conditions* (e.g. `PREP.lfi` if you work with the LFI format) as well as a set of *forcing data* (e.g. `Forc_TA_YYYYMMDD_r12.txt` and `Params_config_YYYYMMDD_r12.txt` if you work with an ASCII format). If you want to run the LDAS over a long period of time the forcing should be split according to the length of your assimilation window and not to the actual period duration. Therefore if you have already run an offline integration without data assimilation (called an "open loop" run), you should redo such exercise by splitting the forcing data set in a number of files corresponding to the duration of your integration divided by the length of the assimilation window (with the same unit for time). You should set the logical `LRESTART` to `TRUE` and copy the output file `SURFOUT.lfi` from a given SURFEX integration to the define the input file `PREP.lfi` of the next (see in the example of script `run_ekf.sh`).

In addition to the initial conditions and forcing files, you need *observation files*. Currently these files are written in ASCII and observations have been interpolated from the raw data on the model grid. There is one file per assimilation window that contains all types of observations that are located around the analysis time (end of the assimilation window<sup>1</sup>). The generation of this single file needs some preprocessing (this strategy could be revised in the future both in terms of data format and content). When an observation is missing at a given model grid point it is set to 999.0 (used to be the default of undefined values within SURFEX).

---

<sup>1</sup>Therefore for asynoptic data there is a mismatch between model and observation times. When considering short assimilation windows a simplified 2D-Var could appear more appropriate

## 12.4 The namelist

The standard namelist of SURFEX : OPTIONS . nam has to be complemented by options related to the LDAS EKF (done for you in the example provided):

```
&NAM_IO_VARASSIM
LPRT = F,
LSIM = F,
LBEV = F,
LBFIXED = F
/
&NAM_OBS
NOBSTYPE = 3 ,
YERROBS(1) = 1.0 ,
YERROBS(2) = 0.1 ,
YERROBS(3) = 0.4 ,
INCO(1) = 1 ,
INCO(2) = 1 ,
INCO(3) = 1
/
&NAM_VAR
IVAR = 1 ,
NVAR = 1 ,
XVAR_M(1) = 'WG2' ,
XVAR_M(2) = 'WG1' ,
XVAR_M(3) = 'TG2' ,
XVAR_M(4) = 'TG1' ,
PREFIX_M(1) = 'X_Y_WG2 (m3/m3) ' ,
PREFIX_M(2) = 'X_Y_WG1 (m3/m3) ' ,
PREFIX_M(3) = 'X_Y_TG2 (m3/m3) ' ,
PREFIX_M(4) = 'X_Y_TG1 (m3/m3) ' ,
XSIGMA_M(1) = 0.1 ,
XSIGMA_M(2) = 0.1 ,
XSIGMA_M(3) = 2.0 ,
XSIGMA_M(4) = 2.0 ,
TPRT_M(1) = 0.0001 ,
TPRT_M(2) = 0.0001 ,
TPRT_M(3) = 0.00001 ,
TPRT_M(4) = 0.00001 ,
INCV(1) = 1 ,
INCV(2) = 1 ,
INCV(3) = 0 ,
INCV(4) = 0 ,
SCALE_Q = 0.125 ,
/
```

Currently the EKF runs with the two-layer version of the ISBA scheme : it means that the control variables can be the four main prognostic variables of this scheme : the surface temperature  $T_s$  (TG1), the mean

surface temperature  $T_2$  (TG2), the superficial volumetric water content  $w_g$  (WG1), the mean volumetric water content in the root-zone  $w_2$  (WG2). The choice of the control variables is done by setting the corresponding element of the array INCV to one. The EKF should also run with the activation of the patches which means that in such circumstances the analysis of the prognostic variables will be done separately for each patch. Regarding the observations, three observation types are considered : screen level temperature and relative humidity, superficial soil moisture content. Like for the control variables, the elements of the array INCO control which type of observation one wants to assimilate.

## 12.5 Link with EKF equations

We consider a control vector  $\mathbf{x}$  (dimension  $N_x$ ) that represents the prognostic equations of the land surface scheme ISBA  $\mathcal{M}$  (OFFLINE) that evolves with time as:

$$\mathbf{x}^t = \mathcal{M}(\mathbf{x}^0) \quad (12.1)$$

Therefore  $N_x = 4$  and  $\mathbf{x} = (w_g, w_2, T_s, T_2)$

At a given time  $t$ , a vector of observations is available  $\mathbf{y}_o$  (with a dimension  $N_y$ ) characterized by an error covariance matrix  $\mathbf{R}$  (defined as  $\overline{(\mathbf{y}_o - \mathbf{y}_t)(\mathbf{y}_o - \mathbf{y}_t)^T}$  where  $\mathbf{y}_t$  is the true value of  $\mathbf{y}$ ).

The observation operator  $\mathcal{H}$  allows to get the model counterpart of the observations :

$$\mathbf{y}^t = \mathcal{H}(\mathbf{x}^t) \quad (12.2)$$

The operator  $\mathcal{H}$  can be a vertical interpolation scheme for  $T_{2m}$  and  $HU_{2m}$  or a projection on the superficial soil moisture content  $w_g$ . In the current SURFEX-EKF the maximum dimension of the observation vector is  $N_y = 3$ . The forecast  $\mathbf{x}$  at time  $t$  (written  $\mathbf{x}_f^t$ ) is characterized by an background error covariance matrix  $\mathbf{B}$  (defined as  $\overline{(\mathbf{x}_f - \mathbf{x}_t)(\mathbf{x}_f - \mathbf{x}_t)^T}$  where  $\mathbf{x}_t$  is the true value of  $\mathbf{x}$ ).

**Remark** : In the SURFEX-EKF the observation operator  $\mathcal{H}$  also includes the forward model propagation, that is :

$$\mathbf{y}^t = \mathcal{H}(\mathbf{x}^0)$$

A new value of  $\mathbf{x}$  written  $\mathbf{x}_a^t$  (the analysis), obtained by an optimal combination the observations and the background (short-range forecast), is given by :

$$\mathbf{x}_a^t = \mathbf{x}_f^t + \mathbf{B}\mathbf{H}^T(\mathbf{H}\mathbf{B}\mathbf{H}^T + \mathbf{R})^{-1}(\mathbf{y}_o^t - \mathcal{H}(\mathbf{x}_f^t)) \quad (12.3)$$

Since the observation operator can be non-linear, a new operator appears in this analysis equation :  $\mathbf{H}$  (together with its transpose  $\mathbf{H}^T$ ). It corresponds to the Jacobian matrix of  $\mathcal{H}$  defined as :

$$\mathbf{H}_{ij} = \frac{\partial y_i}{\partial x_j} \quad (12.4)$$

This matrix has  $N_x$  columns and  $N_y$  rows. We use a finite difference approach where the input vector  $\mathbf{x}$  is perturbed  $N_x$  times to get for each integration a column of the matrix  $\mathbf{H}$ , that is :

$$\mathbf{H}_{ij} \simeq \frac{y_i(\mathbf{x} + \delta x_j) - y_i(\mathbf{x})}{\delta x_j} \quad (12.5)$$

where  $\delta x_j$  is a small increment value added to the  $j$ -th component of the  $\mathbf{x}$  vector (defined in the block &NAM\_VAR of the OPTIONS.nam file by the values TPRT\_M(1) (for  $w_2$ ), TPRT\_M(2) (for  $w_g$ ),

TPRT\_M( 3 ) (for  $T_2$ ), TPRT\_M( 4 ) (for  $T_g$ )).

The analysis state is characterized by an analysis error covariance matrix:

$$\mathbf{A} = (\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{KH})\mathbf{B} \quad (12.6)$$

where  $\mathbf{K}$  is the gain matrix defined in the analysis equation by:

$$\mathbf{K} = \mathbf{BH}^T(\mathbf{HBH}^T + \mathbf{R})^{-1} \quad (12.7)$$

The analysis is cycled by propagating the time the two quantities  $\mathbf{x}_a$  et  $\mathbf{A}$  up to next time where observations are available :

$$\mathbf{x}_f^{t+1} = \mathcal{M}(\mathbf{x}_a^t) \quad (12.8)$$

$$\mathbf{B}^{t+1} = \mathbf{MA}^t\mathbf{M}^T + \mathbf{Q} \quad (12.9)$$

This equation requires the Jacobian matrix  $\mathbf{M}$  of the model  $\mathcal{M}$ , that is defined as (between time  $t$  and time  $t = 0$ ):

$$\mathbf{M}_{ij} = \frac{\partial x_i^t}{\partial x_j^0} \quad (12.10)$$

A new matrix  $\mathbf{Q}$  representing the model error covariance matrix needs to be defined.

## 12.6 Run script

You have a script `run_ekf.sh` (in `SURFEX-EKF/rundir` from the tar file `SURFEX-EKF.tar.gz`) that allows to run the EKF over a specified period. This script is the main driver of the assimilation, it does the looping over assimilation windows, gets the required data, stores outputs, creates temporary files, cleans directories, ... It operates in several steps (see flowchart in Figure 1):

- Step 0 : Calls VARASSIM in order to create perturbed initial conditions. This option is triggered by the logical LPRT=T in the namelist &NAM\_IO\_VARASSIM. A new perturbed file of initial conditions (`PREP.lfi`) is created. The initial background error covariance matrix  $\mathbf{B}$  is defined and stored in a file `BGROUNDin0`.
- Step 1 : Runs SURFEX (OFFLINE) with the perturbed initial conditions (eq. (8))
- Step 2 : Calls VARASSIM in order to store the perturbed simulated observations and the perturbed evolved prognostic variables in temporary ASCII files (`OBSIMU` and `MDSIMU`). These values are read from the output file generated during the previous step. This option is triggered by the logical LSIM=T in the namelist &NAM\_IO\_VARASSIM.
- Step 3 : Redo steps 0 to 2 for each of the control variables that have been activated (both in &NAM\_VAR with the array `INCV` and the script variable `vm` in `run_ekf.sh`). The integer `IVAR` in `$NAM_VAR` is defined in the script to know which the control variable is considered.
- Step 4 : Runs SURFEX (OFFLINE) with the reference initial conditions (eq. (8))
- Step 5 : Calls VARASSIM in order to store the reference simulated observations and the reference evolved prognostic variables in temporary ASCII files (`OBSIMU` and `MDSIMU`). These values are read from the output file generated during the previous step. This option is triggered by the logical LSIM=T in the namelist &NAM\_IO\_VARASSIM.

- Step 6 : Calls VARASSIM in order to evolve in time the **B** matrix (eq. (9)). This option is triggered by the logical LBEV=T in the namelist &NAM\_IO\_VARASSIM (done by the script). Store the evolved **B** matrix in an ASCII file BGROUNDout (for further use in analysis step). This step needs to read the various MDSIMU files generated during the previous steps (perturbed runs + reference run) and to compute in finite differences the Jacobian matrix **M** of the forward model (eq. (10)). This step is done even if LBFIXED=T, but in that case the results from this step are not used afterwards.
- Step 7 : Calls VARASSIM in order to perform the soil analysis : the corresponding switches are LSIM=F, LBEV=F and LPRT=F. Store the analysis for both the model state and the matrix of errors in the initial files for the next assimilation cycle - Go to step 0 until the maximum number of assimilation cycles is reached. During this step, the following instructions are done :
  - Read observations and perform a bias correction if required
  - Read simulated observations from reference and perturbed runs
  - Compute the covariance matrix **R** of observation errors
  - Compute the covariance matrix **Q** of model errors
  - Update the **B** matrix (eq. (9))
  - Compute the Jacobian of observation operator **H** in finite differences (eq. (5))
  - Compute the Kalman gain times the innovation vector (Cholesky decomposition) (eq. (3))
  - Perform the analysis and store the result in PREP.lfi file (for next cycle)
  - Get the Kalman gain in order to compute the covariance matrix **A** of analysis errors (eq. (6))
  - Store the matrix **A** in BGROUNDout file (for next cycle)

## 12.7 Management of dates

The dates defined as YYYYMMDDHH are evolved in time using the command `smsdate` that is a script that uses an executable `decdate` generated from the C program `decdate.c` using the command :

```
gcc -o decdate decdate.c
```

The script and the C program are available in the directory `UTILITY` of the tar file `SURFEX-EKF-SRC.tar`. If other tools are available in your computing environment you can use them accordingly.

## 12.8 Directory structure

A number of directories should be created and/provided :

- `repforcing` : Directory where the forcing data are stored (sample for one day provided in ASCII)
- `repreults` : Directory where the results will be stored
- `reprun` : Working directory (script `run_ekf.sh` provided)
- `reprobs` : Directory where the observations are stored (sample for one day provided in ASCII)
- `repname1` : Directory where the namelist is located (namelist `OPTIONS.nam` provided)

- `reanalyse` : Directory where the initial conditions are stored (`PREP.lfi` provided for the ALADIN-France domain on 01 July 2006 at 00Z)
- `repbin` : Directory where the binary files to execute SURFEX and the EKF are located

This structure has been created for you in the example provided in `SURFEX-EKF.tar.gz`. You will find in this tar file the script `run_ekf.sh` and a namelist `OPTIONS.nam`. Once you have created the executables `OFFLINE` and `VARASSIM`, the content of `SURFEX-EKF.tar.gz` should allow you to run one day of EKF assimilation of screen-level parameters every 6 hours over the ALADIN-France domain.

## 12.9 Matrix inversion using Cholesky decomposition

We want to find  $\mathbf{x}$  such as :

$$\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}$$

where  $\mathbf{A}$  is a symmetric positive definite matrix. It is decomposed as  $\mathbf{L}\mathbf{L}^T$  where  $\mathbf{L}$  is a lower triangular matrix. Once the  $\mathbf{L}$  matrix has been obtained, the vector  $\mathbf{z} = \mathbf{L}^{-1}\mathbf{y}$  is formed (output from `CHOLDC`), then using it as input in `CHOLSL` the vector  $\mathbf{x} = (\mathbf{L}^T)^{-1}\mathbf{z}$  is computed.

Namelist block	Variable	Type	Description
NAM_IO_VARASSIM	LPRT* LSIM* LBEV* LBFIXED	<b>F</b> T <b>F</b> T <b>F</b> T F T	to perform analysis to define $\delta x_i$ and store $\mathbf{x} + \delta x_i$ at $t=0$ to perform analysis to write the simulated observations $\mathcal{H}(\mathbf{x})$ and the evolved state vector $\mathbf{x}$ to perform analysis to evolve of the <b>B</b> matrix to evolve of the <b>B</b> matrix to keep the <b>B</b> matrix constant with time
NAM_OBS	NOBSTYPE YERROBS ( 1 ) YERROBS ( 2 ) YERROBS ( 3 ) INCO ( i )	integer real real real integer	Number of possible observation types <i>This value must be consistent with the obs file</i> Observation error for $T_{2m}$ in K Observation error for $RH_{2m}$ (no units) Observation error for $w_g$ (fraction of <i>SWI</i> ) 1 if observation type included 0 if observation type excluded
NAM_VAR	IVAR* NVAR* XVAR_M ( i ) PREFIX_M ( i ) XSIGMA_M ( 1 ) XSIGMA_M ( 2 ) XSIGMA_M ( 3 ) XSIGMA_M ( 4 ) TPRT_M ( 1 ) TPRT_M ( 2 ) TPRT_M ( 3 ) TPRT_M ( 4 ) INCV ( i ) SCALE_Q	<b>1</b> <b>1</b> character character real real real real real real real real real integer real	Control variable of interest Number of control variables (dimension of control vector) Control variable identifier in PREP file Control variable prefix in PREP.txt file (Initial) BG error for $w_2$ (fraction of <i>SWI</i> ) (Initial) BG error for $w_g$ (fraction of <i>SWI</i> ) (Initial) BG error for $T_s$ (K) (Initial) BG error for $T_2$ (K) Size of perturbation of $w_2$ for finite Jacobians The perturbation $\delta x$ writes $x \times TPRT\_M$ Size of perturbation of $w_g$ for finite Jacobians Size of perturbation of $T_s$ for finite Jacobians Size of perturbation of $T_2$ for finite Jacobians 1 if element of control vector included 0 if element of control vector excluded Definition of the matrix <b>Q</b> of model errors as fraction of the initial diagonal <b>B</b> matrix

Table 12.1: Description of each variable in the namelist OPTIONS.nam for the blocks relative to the Land Data Assimilation System. The elements with stars (\*) should be kept at their value in bold - their actual values are defined by the script run\_ekf.sh

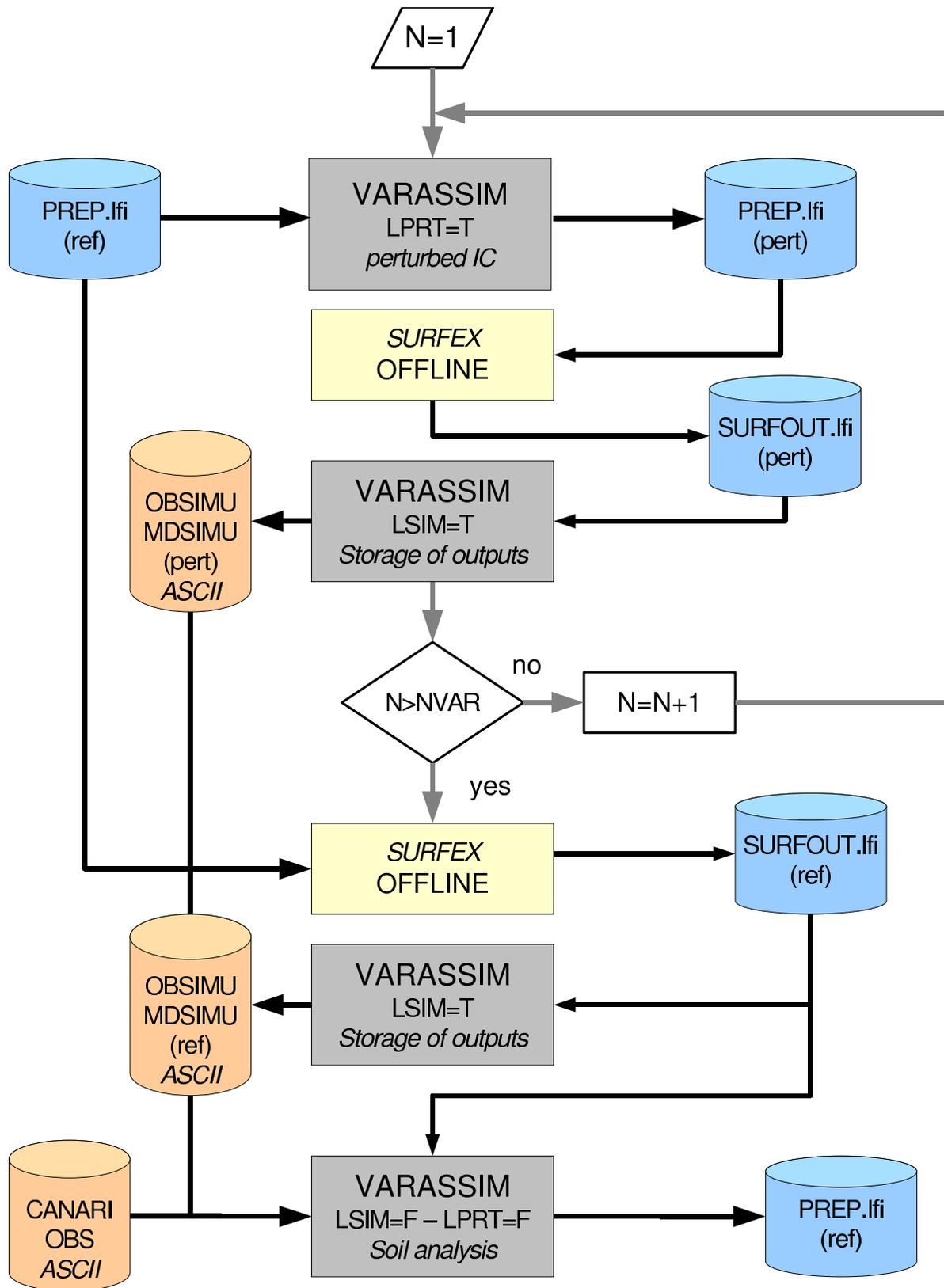


Figure 12.1: Flowchart of the EKF-SURFEX LDAS (corresponding to the various steps of the script `run_ekf.sh`) - `NVAR` corresponds to the dimension of the control vector.

## Appendix: On the use of the EKF with the SURFEX "patch" option

### 12.9.1 Introduction

An EKF surface analysis scheme has been coded within SURFEX. The first version was not designed for the "patch" approach of the ISBA scheme. It has been recently extended to include such option that is compulsory when considering the ISBA-Ags scheme. The "patch" approach is similar to the "mosaic" land surface model of Koster and Suarez (1996) where the NATURE tile within a grid box is divided in a number of independent patches each having its own set of prognostic variables and surface energy and water balances. On the other hand, the forcing level for the fluxes and the meteorological variables is assumed to be identical for each individual patch. When aggregated values are needed (in particular to be given to the atmospheric model) a simple weighted average of each tile parameter is done as:

$$\bar{x} = \sum_{k=1}^M \alpha^k x^k$$

where  $\alpha^k$  is the fraction occupied by the patch  $k$  within the NATURE tile and  $x^k$  the value of the parameter computed over this specific patch. Currently the number of patches  $M$  is set to 12.

### 12.9.2 Extended Kalman filter without patches

With only one patch, the dimension of the control vector  $\mathbf{x}$  is equal to the number of prognostic variables to be initialized ( $N_x$ ) (the analysis problem is solved independently for each individual model grid point). The observation operator  $\mathcal{H}$  projects this vector onto the observation space  $\mathbf{y}$ :

$$\mathbf{y} = \mathcal{H}(\mathbf{x})$$

This vector is then compared to the actual observation vector  $\mathbf{y}_o$  to produce the innovation vector :  $\mathbf{y}_o - \mathbf{y}$ . The dimension of the observation vector is equal to the number of independent observations to be assimilated ( $N_y$ ). The observations are interpolated on the model grid before analysis, which means that the observation operator does not include any spatial interpolation; this part is done in an independent pre-processing of the data.

The computation of Kalman gain requires the knowledge of the Jacobian matrix of the observation operator  $\mathbf{H}$  defined by :

$$\mathbf{H} = \frac{\partial \mathbf{y}}{\partial \mathbf{x}}$$

or in finite differences :

$$H_{ij} = \frac{\partial y_i}{\partial x_j} \simeq \frac{y_i(\mathbf{x} + \delta x_j) - y_i(\mathbf{x})}{\delta x_j}$$

### 12.9.3 Extended Kalman Filter with patches

With  $M$  patches, the dimension of the control vector  $\mathbf{x}$  is extended to  $N_x \times M$ . On the other hand the number of observations is still equal to  $N_y$ . The model counterpart of the observation  $\mathbf{y}_o$  is assumed to be the average of the corresponding value  $\mathbf{y}^k$  for each patch  $k$ :

$$\bar{\mathbf{y}} = \sum_{k=1}^M \alpha^k \mathbf{y}^k \quad (12.11)$$

Therefore, the innovation vector writes :  $\mathbf{y}_o - \bar{\mathbf{y}}$ .

For the computation of the Kalman gain, the dimension of the background error covariance matrix  $\mathbf{B}$  has to be increased to the size ( $N_x^2 \times M^2$ ) whereas the observation error covariance matrix  $\mathbf{R}$  keeps the same size  $N_y \times N_y$ . For each patch  $k$ , there is an observation operator  $\mathcal{H}$  providing the simulated observation  $\mathbf{y}^k$  from the control vector  $\mathbf{x}^k$ :

$$\mathbf{y}^k = \mathcal{H}(\mathbf{x}^k)$$

This relation states that the simulated observation over the patch  $k$  only depends upon the control vector over the same patch. This statement (independence of the patch columns) will greatly simplify the number of perturbed runs needed to compute the Jacobian matrix (which it is kept to  $N_x$ ).

The actual observation operator combines the above relation with the spatial averaging over the patches:

$$\bar{\mathbf{y}} = \sum_{k=1}^M \alpha^k \mathbf{y}^k = \sum_{k=1}^M \alpha^k \mathcal{H}(\mathbf{x}^k)$$

from which the Jacobian matrix element  $H_{ij}^m$  can be deduced for the patch  $m$  :

$$H_{ij}^m = \frac{\partial \bar{y}_i}{\partial x_j^m} = \alpha^m \frac{\partial y_i^m}{\partial x_j^m}$$

This comes from the fact that the patches are independent, thus :

$$\frac{\partial y_i^k}{\partial x_j^m} = 0 \quad \text{when } k \neq m$$

By perturbing the component  $j$  of the control vector for all the patches ( $k \in [1, N]$ ) by an amount :  $\delta x_j^k$ , the following Jacobian matrix column will be obtained:

$$H_{ij}^k = \alpha^k \frac{\partial y_i^k}{\partial x_j^k} \simeq \alpha^k \left[ \frac{y_i^k(\mathbf{x} + \delta x_j^k) - y_i^k(\mathbf{x})}{\delta x_j^k} \right] \quad (12.12)$$

The initial control vector can be perturbed simultaneously for each patch because for two distinct patches  $m$  and  $k$  :

$$y_i^k(\mathbf{x} + \delta x_j^m) = y_i^k(\mathbf{x})$$

## 12.9.4 Conclusion

In this appendix I have shown that it is possible to extend the EKF coded within SURFEX for one patch for a set of  $M$  patches. The analysis equation and the methodology for getting the Jacobian matrix in finite differences are kept unchanged. In particular the number of perturbed integrations to be performed remains equal to the number of the control variables  $N_x$  and not to  $N_x \times M$ . This comes from the fact that the simulated observation is a linear combination of independent results from each patch, therefore they can be perturbed simultaneously. In practice the control vector needs to be enlarged from  $N_x$  to  $N_x \times M$  (and accordingly the  $\mathbf{B}$ ,  $\mathbf{Q}$  and  $\mathbf{A}$  matrices to  $(N_x^2 \times M^2)$ ). The simulated observation needs to be computed from the weighted contribution of each patch (Equation 1) and the Jacobian matrix needs to be estimated in finite differences from Equation (2). These changes have been coded in the most recent version of the SURFEX-EKF and are available from the author.

## Bibliography

- [1] R. D. Koster and M. J. Suarez. Energy and water balance calculations in the mosaic lsm. Technical report, NASA Tech. Memo. 104606, Vol. 9., 58 pp, 1996.